

TRƯỜNG THÀNH

GIÁO TRÌNH BỒI DƯỠNG  
HỌC SINH GIỎI VÀ CHUYÊN

# Tiếng Anh

7

THCS

6

8

SACHHOC.COM

9



SACHHOC.COM

**TRẦN TRƯỜNG THÀNH**

**GIÁO TRÌNH BỒI DƯỠNG HỌC SINH GIỎI  
VÀ CHUYÊN TIẾNG ANH CẤP THCS**

**SACHHOC.COM**

## Lời nói đầu

### **Các bạn thân mến !**

Khi các bạn cầm trên tay tài liệu này tôi cảm thấy rất vui vì chúng ta đã tìm thấy nhau. Các bài thi Học sinh giỏi Tiếng Anh và các bài thi vào Trường chuyên, lớp chọn luôn luôn là các bài thi đầy khó khăn, thử thách nhưng cũng đầy hấp dẫn đối với các em có niềm đam mê học Tiếng Anh và muốn học Tiếng Anh giỏi để có thể sử dụng Tiếng Anh tốt trong công việc tương lai của mình.

Một số em có thể chưa đạt được kết quả cao trong các kỳ thi Học sinh giỏi có lẽ vì các em chưa được cung cấp các kiến thức nâng cao của chương trình học một cách đầy đủ, cũng có thể các em chưa có kỹ năng làm bài thi và cũng chưa quen các dạng bài thi. Chính vì thế, cuốn "**Giáo trình bồi dưỡng Học Sinh Giỏi và Chuyên Anh cấp THCS**" được biên soạn với mục đích giúp các em học sinh có thể tự mình đào sâu kiến thức trên nền tảng kiến thức sách giáo khoa, tự mở rộng kiến thức ngôn ngữ, tự ôn luyện các dạng bài thi phổ biến của các kỳ thi học sinh giỏi để có thể tham gia và đạt kết quả cao trong các kỳ thi Học sinh giỏi và các kỳ thi vào trường chuyên Anh, lớp chọn. Cuốn sách cũng sẽ giúp các em phổ thông cơ sở tự trang bị cho mình một vốn kiến thức nâng cao, để sau này có thể tham gia các kỳ thi vào Cao đẳng, Đại học hay tham gia các kỳ thi Tiếng Anh mang tầm quốc tế.

Cuốn sách bao gồm 7 chuyên đề chính được phân chia đúng cấu trúc của các bài thi học sinh giỏi mà các Trường, các Thành phố, các Sở GD (các Tỉnh) hay sử dụng trong các bài thi... Ngữ Pháp, Từ Vựng, Ngữ Âm, Kỹ năng Nghe, Nói, Đọc, Viết đặc biệt có tích hợp File nghe trong giáo trình đầy đủ giúp các em dễ dàng ôn luyện gặt hái nhiều thành công...

### **Tài liệu có sự tham khảo !**

Tham khảo kỹ năng viết luận thầy **Nguyễn Hải Việt** giáo viên THPT tại Thái Nguyên.

Trích 1 số phân nhỏ từ các đề (Đề xuất) Học Sinh Giỏi và Chuyên Anh các sở Giáo Dục.

Các giáo trình bậc đại học ...

## *Contents*

		Page
<b>CHAPTER I : VOCABULARY</b>		
<b>Part I</b>	<b>Word Formations</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>Part II</b>	<b>Confusing Words</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>Part III</b>	<b>Phrasal Verbs</b>	<b>24</b>
<b>Part IV</b>	<b>Collocations</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>Part V</b>	<b>Idioms</b>	<b>41</b>
<b>CHAPTER II : GRAMMARS</b>		
<b>Part I</b>	<b>Tenses and Sequence of Tenses</b>	<b>51</b>
<b>Part II</b>	<b>Subject and Verb Concord</b>	<b>59</b>
<b>Part III</b>	<b>Active voice and Passive voice in English</b>	<b>63</b>
<b>Part IV</b>	<b>Direct and Indirect Speech in English</b>	<b>70</b>
<b>Part V</b>	<b>Conditional Sentences</b>	<b>78</b>
<b>Part VI</b>	<b>Subjunctive</b>	<b>85</b>
<b>Part VII</b>	<b>Relative Clauses</b>	<b>91</b>
<b>Part VIII</b>	<b>Modal Verbs</b>	<b>98</b>
<b>Part IX</b>	<b>Inversion and Emphasis in English</b>	<b>106</b>
<b>Part X</b>	<b>Conectives</b>	<b>115</b>
<b>Part XI</b>	<b>Adjective, Adverb and Comparison</b>	<b>127</b>
<b>Part XII</b>	<b>Gerund and Infinitive Verbs</b>	<b>133</b>
<b>Part XIII</b>	<b>Mixed sentence writing exercises (Advanced)</b>	<b>147</b>
<b>CHAPTER III : PHONETICS</b>		
<b>Part I</b>	<b>Pronunciations</b>	<b>156</b>
<b>Part II</b>	<b>Stress</b>	<b>162</b>
<b>CHAPTER IV : COMMUNICATION SKILLS</b>		
<b>Theory and Practice</b>		<b>167</b>
<b>CHAPTER V : COMPREHENSIVE READING</b>		
<b>Skill/Theory/Practice</b>		<b>178</b>
<b>CHAPTER VI : WRITING SKILLS</b>		
<b>Part I</b>	<b>Overview of Letter</b>	<b>198</b>
<b>Part II</b>	<b>Overview of a Paragraph</b>	<b>211</b>
<b>Part III</b>	<b>Essay Writing Overview</b>	<b>223</b>
<b>CHAPTER VII : LISTENING SKILLS</b>		
<b>Part I</b>	<b>Overview of Listening Skills</b>	<b>235</b>
<b>Part II</b>	<b>Practices</b>	<b>238</b>

# CHAPTER I : VOCABULARY

## PART I : WORD FORMATIONS

### • THEORY

#### 1. Vị trí, chức năng và dấu hiệu nhận biết từ loại

DANH TỪ(NOUN)	
Vị trí của danh từ trong câu.	
1. Chủ ngữ của câu (đầu câu, đầu mệnh đề)	<u>Maths</u> is the subject I like best
2. Sau tính từ (good, beautiful..), Sau tính từ sở hữu (my, your, his, her,..) Cụm danh từ: a/ an the + (adv) + adj + N.	She is a good <u>teacher</u> . His <u>father</u> works in hospital.
3. Làm tân ngữ, sau động từ	I like <u>English</u> . We are <u>students</u> .
4. Sau "enough" (enough +N)	He didn't have enough <u>money</u> to buy that car.
5. Sau các mạo từ (a, an, the) Đại từ chỉ định (this, that, these, those); Lượng từ (each, no, any, a few, a little,..)	She is a <u>teacher</u> . This <u>book</u> is an interesting book. I have a little <u>money</u> to go to the movie.
6. Sau giới từ: in, on, of, with, under, at...	Thanh is good at <u>literature</u> .
Dấu hiệu nhận biết danh từ	
-ion (distribution), -ment (development), -er (teacher) , -or (actor), -ant (accountant), -age (marriage), -ship (friendship), -sm (enthusiasm), -ity (ability), -ness (happiness), -dom (freedom), -ist (terrorist), -ian (physician), -hood (childhood), -ance (importance), -ence (dependence), -ety (society), -ty (honesty)	
TÍNH TỪ(ADJECTIVE)	
Vị trí của tính từ trong câu	
1. Trước danh từ: (a/an/the) + (adv) + adj + N	My Tam is a <u>famous</u> singer.
2. Sau động từ liên kết: be/ seem/ appear/ feel/ taste/ look/ keep/get/ keep/ make (sb) + adj	Tom seems <u>tired</u> now The homework keeps me <u>busy</u> all the time
3. Sau "too": S+ be/ seem/look..+ too +adj..	Coffee seems too <u>hot</u> for me to drink.
4. Trước "enough": S + be + adj + enough..	She is <u>tall</u> enough to play volleyball.
5. Trong cấu trúc: so + adj + that	The weather was so <u>bad</u> that we decided to stay at home
6. Dùng dưới các dạng so sánh	Meat is more <u>expensive</u> than fish.
7. Dùng trong câu cảm thán: How + adj +S+V! What + (a/an) + adj +N!	How <u>intelligent</u> she is! What a <u>beautiful</u> girl!
Dấu hiệu nhận biết tính từ	
-ful (helpful), -less (homeless), -ly (friendly), -al (national), -ble (acceptable), -ive (active), -ous (famous), -ish (selfish), -y (foggy), -like (childlike), -ic (scientific), -ed (bored), -ing (interesting), -ary (necessary), -ant (important), -ent (different)	
TRẠNG TỪ	
Vị trí của trạng từ trong câu	
1. Trước động từ thường giữa trợ động từ và	They <u>seldom</u> get up early in the morning.

<b>động từ thường (đặc biệt là các trạng từ chỉ tần suất: always, usually,...)</b>	I have <u>recently</u> finished my homework. I don't <u>usually</u> go to school late.
<b>2. Trước tính từ: be/ feel/look.. + adv + adj</b>	She is <u>very</u> nice. He looks <u>extremely</u> unwell.
<b>3. Sau "too": V(thường) + too + adv !</b>	The teacher speaks too <u>quickly</u> .
<b>4. Trước "enough": V(thường) + adv + enough</b>	The teacher speaks <u>slowly</u> enough for us to understand.
<b>5. Trong cấu trúc : V(thường) + so + adv + that</b>	Jack drove so <u>fast</u> that he caused an accident.
<b>6. Đứng cuối câu (trạng từ thời gian)</b>	I finished my essay <u>last week</u> .
<b>7. Thường đứng 1 mình ở đầu câu/ giữa câu và cách các thành phần khác của câu bằng dấu “,”</b>	<u>Last summer</u> I came back my home country. Its raining <u>hard</u> . Tom, <u>however</u> , goes to school.
<b>Dấu hiệu nhận biết trạng từ:</b>	
<b>Adv = adj + ly</b> (beautifully, usefully, carefully, strongly, badly)	
<b>Ngoại lệ:</b> Một số từ có đuôi “ly” nhưng là tính từ: <b>daily:</b> hàng ngày, <b>early:</b> sớm; <b>elderly:</b> già, lớn tuổi; <b>friendly:</b> thân thiện, <b>likely:</b> có khả năng sẽ xảy ra; <b>costly</b> = đắt đỏ; <b>lively</b> = sinh động, <b>lonely</b> lẻ loi, <b>lovely</b> = đáng yêu, <b>manly</b> = nam tính; <b>silly</b> = ngớ ngẩn; <b>ugly</b> = xấu xí; <b>unlikely:</b> không có khả năng xảy ra; <b>monthly:</b> hàng tháng; <b>weekly:</b> hàng tuần, <b>brotherly</b> = như anh em; <b>comely</b> = duyên dáng; <b>goodly</b> = có duyên; <b>homely</b> = giản dị, <b>lowly</b> = hèn mọn, <b>masterly</b> = tài giỏi; <b>scholarly</b> uyên bác; <b>shapely</b> = dáng đẹp, <b>timely</b> = đúng lúc; <b>unseemly</b> = không phù hợp.	
<b>ĐỘNG TỪ</b>	
<b>Vị trí của trạng từ trong câu</b>	
<b>1. Thường đứng sau chủ ngữ</b>	Lam Anh <u>plays</u> volleyball everyday.
<b>2. Đứng sau trạng từ chỉ tần suất</b>	I usually <u>get up</u> late.
<b>Dấu hiệu nhận biết động từ</b>	
<b>-ate</b> (compensate), <b>-ain</b> (maintain); <b>-flect</b> (reflect), <b>-flict</b> (inflict); <b>-spect</b> (respect), <b>-scrib</b> (describe), <b>-ceive</b> (deceive), <b>-fy</b> (modify), <b>-isel-ize</b> (realize), <b>-ude</b> (include), <b>-ide</b> (devide), <b>dus</b> (evade), <b>-tend</b> (extend),...	

- PRACTICES**

- Dạng bài tập cơ bản**

*Use the correct form of the word in brackets to complete the following sentences.*

<b>1.</b> There are some _____ to every grammatical rule.	<b>EXCEPT</b>
<b>2.</b> The engineering sector achieved significant _____ last year.	<b>GROW</b>
<b>3.</b> I have a _____ of old records from my grandma.	<b>COLLECT</b>
<b>4.</b> He'll _____ be coming later.	<b>SURE</b>
<b>5.</b> Eric Clapton's guitar solos are _____.	<b>LEGEND</b>
<b>6.</b> It was one of the most _____ plays I've seen recently.	<b>ENJOY</b>
<b>7.</b> In her time, Marilyn Monroe was a very _____ actress.	<b>GLAMOUR</b>
<b>8.</b> It's _____ to tell whether he's lying or not.	<b>POSSIBLE</b>
<b>9.</b> He's no worldwide star, but he had very humble _____.	<b>BEGIN</b>
<b>10.</b> They took _____ of noise levels inside the building.	<b>MEASURE</b>
<b>11.</b> He's a really _____ person.	<b>RELY</b>
<b>12.</b> She made several excellent _____ in her essay on Charles Dickens.	<b>OBSERVE</b>
<b>13.</b> Watching TV shows in English is definitely very _____ to improve your listening skills.	<b>USE</b>

14. The Internet is probably one of the best _____ ever.	<b>INVENT</b>
15. The boat was 16 feet in _____.	<b>LONG</b>
16. Both _____ and fluency are important when speaking a foreign language.	<b>ACCURATE</b>
17. You shouldn't have said that! It was a totally _____ remark.	<b>APPROPRIATE</b>
18. Since the earliest times, civilisations have understood the _____ of time.	<b>IMPORTANT</b>
19. Doing puzzles keeps our brains fit and _____.	<b>HEALTH</b>
20. As well as gaining _____, by doing puzzles we give our brains a good workout.	<b>SATISFY</b>
21. The most _____ games have sold in the millions.	<b>SUCCESS</b>
22. People have _____ that doing puzzles is good for you.	<b>COVER</b>
23. It's easy to find a _____ to the problems posed.	<b>SOLVE</b>
24. There has been an _____ in the power of their brains.	<b>IMPROVE</b>
25. Some _____ argue that the brain gets better at a task the more it repeats it.	<b>SCIENCE</b>
26. The improvement in the _____ is something that happens naturally.	<b>PERFORM</b>
27. It remains _____ whether puzzles are actually helping to boost brainpower or not.	<b>CERTAIN</b>
28. According to _____, most people sleep less than 8 hours every day.	<b>SEARCH</b>
29. The advice passed down to our grandparents may contain some _____.	<b>TRUE</b>
30. A good example is the _____ between being cold and catching a cold.	<b>RELATION</b>
31. These high-heeled shoes are _____ for such rough terrain.	<b>SUIT</b>
32. Colds are caused by viruses, so in the _____ of a virus, you can't catch a cold.	<b>ABSENT</b>
33. You're too young. This film is _____ for children your age.	<b>APPROPRIATE</b>
34. _____ now think that we may have viruses in our bodies already.	<b>SCIENCE</b>
35. In cold weather, for example, blood vessels in the nose get smaller to stop heat escaping. _____, this also allows the cold virus to attack the nose or throat more easily.	<b>FORTUNATE</b>
36. Victoria Falls in Africa is one of the most _____ sights in the world.	<b>SPECTACLE</b>
37. It's also an _____ place for water sports.	<b>CREDIBLE</b>
38. We need you to provide an accurate _____ of the situation.	<b>DESCRIBE</b>
39. On arrival, it's the noise that makes the greatest _____.	<b>IMPRESS</b>
40. The _____ landscape is also well worth a visit.	<b>SURROUND</b>
41. There's a post office a bit _____ down the road.	<b>FAR</b>
42. Six months after the accident, he still has _____ walking.	<b>DIFFICULT</b>
43. I can't play tennis that well because I'm a _____.	<b>BEGIN</b>
44. Don't go there. It's _____.	<b>DANGER</b>
45. Read this. It'll be very _____ for your trip to Australia.	<b>USE</b>
46. I didn't find him that _____, but my friend did.	<b>ATTRACT</b>
47. The school has a _____ for being very up-to-date with technology.	<b>REPUTE</b>
48. These are _____ clothes and that's why they are very expensive.	<b>DESIGN</b>

49. I left the party because it was _____ noisy in there.	<b>EXTREME</b>
50. I had no _____ but to tell him.	<b>CHOOSE</b>
51. This cloth is made from _____ fibers.	<b>NATURE</b>
52. If you want to take care of the environment, it's important to _____.	<b>CYCLE</b>
53. In the next few years, _____ will hopefully have found a cure for malaria.	<b>SCIENCE</b>
54. According to the _____, the epidemic started in Kuala Lumpur.	<b>SEARCH</b>
55. _____ from family and friends can lead to feelings of anxiety.	<b>ISOLATE</b>
56. I was _____ to understand what the problem was.	<b>ABLE</b>
57. There will be a _____ of solo games and competitive games available.	<b>MIX</b>
58. Participants will later be asked for _____ on the event.	<b>FEED</b>
59. It was an _____ reunion and we were all really touched when we remembered how we had met.	<b>EMOTION</b>
60. I am writing to ask for further _____ on your Open Day.	<b>INFORM</b>
61. This took place at the end of the _____ century.	<b>TWENTY</b>
62. People really _____ the party.	<b>JOY</b>
63. Meditation is great as a means of _____.	<b>RELAX</b>
64. This method is a lot more _____ than the previous one.	<b>EFFECT</b>
65. Picasso was a Spanish _____ who also lived in France.	<b>ART</b>
66. There has been little _____ in the negotiations since January.	<b>MOVE</b>
67. _____ enough, I didn't know she already had four children.	<b>SURPRISE</b>
68. His voice was _____ recognizable.	<b>INSTANT</b>
69. The only cure for _____ is creativity.	<b>BORE</b>
70. This is a textile company _____ in denim.	<b>SPECIAL</b>
71. _____ is a part of life, but you have to be able to enjoy the others too.	<b>SAD</b>
72. Without that, I wouldn't be happy even if I was the _____ man in the world.	<b>RICH</b>
73. The music in the festival was so loud. It was _____!	<b>DEAF</b>
74. I don't think my marks can get _____ because I already study to the best of my abilities.	<b>HIGH</b>
75. The _____ river fish in Europe lives in Spain!	<b>LARGE</b>
76. Passeig de Gràcia is being _____ so there is more room for people to walk on the pavement.	<b>WIDE</b>
77. I can _____ that if you study you will have no problems passing this test.	<b>SURE</b>
78. Nowadays there are lots of _____ species of animals in the world, for example, the panda.	<b>DANGER</b>
79. I was _____ to take the driving test by my friends.	<b>COURAGE</b>
80. I see they've finally got round to _____ the Shoreham road.	<b>WIDE</b>
81. The teacher asked us to _____ the main ideas in the chapter we had read in class.	<b>SUMMARY</b>
82. The top manager of the shop told me that my credit card was not _____ to pay for the jeans which cost under 20€.	<b>VALIDATE</b>



83. Art in the 20th century is usually referred to as _____ art.	<b>MODERNIZE</b>
84. Everybody listens to David Guetta's music. It's so _____.	<b>COMMERCE</b>
85. Butterflies are thoroughly _____ by scientists.	<b>CLASS</b>
86. She _____ the qualities of a good leader.	<b>EXAMPLE</b>
87. Many people don't understand the _____ of life.	<b>SIMPLE</b>
88. It's impossible to tell those twins apart! They are _____.	<b>IDENTITY</b>
89. He made several wrong _____ about women.	<b>GENERAL</b>
90. It was hard to _____ between the two styles of music.	<b>DIFFERENCE</b>
91. He hasn't finished the preparation course, so he's not _____ for this job.	<b>QUALIFY</b>
92. She was _____ by the colour of the plant.	<b>CAPTIVE</b>
93. At the auction, Elton John's car was _____ at 1 million euros.	<b>VALUE</b>
94. The _____ took place next door at 2 am.	<b>ASSASSIN</b>
95. The main _____ of this painting are its bright colours and its sense of perspective.	<b>CHARACTER</b>
96. _____ is important in a relationship.	<b>STABLE</b>
97. Despite his _____ with that type of vehicle, he had an accident because a cat made him crash into a tree.	<b>FAMILIAR</b>
98. At the best moment of its empire, Rome had _____ over all the Mediterranean.	<b>DOMINANT</b>
99. Nowadays almost everything can be _____ thanks to the use of technology.	<b>COMPUTER</b>
100. I wish I had the _____ to do that.	<b>STRONG</b>

• **Dạng bài tập nâng cao**

*Complete the passage using the correct form of the words in the capital letters.*

**Exercise 1**

To neighbors, Mr Stewart is a dull man who speaks very _____(1)and whose only form _____(2)is his job. And to a certain extent it's true, since Mr Stewart finds his job very _____(3)He is an antique dealer and goes to work _____(4)every day. He handles some very _____(5)pieces sometimes, which can make his job _____(6)as there have recently been quite a few _____(7)at antique shops. So not _____(8), Mr Stewart decided that his own business needed some extra _____(9)After having an alarm system put in, Mr Stewart doesn't feel _____(10)secure but he does feel more protected.	(1) <b>POLITE</b> (2) <b>ENTERTAIN</b> (3) <b>INTEREST</b> (4) <b>HAPPY</b> (5) <b>EXPENSE</b> (6) <b>DANGER</b> (7) <b>ROB</b> (8) <b>SURPRISE</b> (9) <b>PROTECT</b> (10) <b>COMPLETE</b>
---	--

**Exercise 2**

You may know that Asian, Middle Eastern and Mediterranean cultures have _____(1)used garlic in their dishes. What you may not know is that garlic was also thought of as a _____(2)medicine by many ancient civilisations. Today, _____(3)in the field of nutrition have come up with new _____(4)which is indeed quite surprising. Apparently, not only is garlic good for you but it also helps overcome various _____(5)The main _____(6)to eating garlic is of course bad _____(7)Cooking it reduces the strong smell and eating parsley, which is a _____(8)deodoriser, also helps minimise the smell. So, it's time we took the benefits of g arlic _____(9)Why not add it to some of your _____(10)dishes!	(1) <b>TRADITION</b> (2) <b>VALUE</b> (3) <b>PROFESSION</b> (4) <b>INFORM</b> (5) <b>ILL</b> (6) <b>ADVANTAGE</b> (7) <b>BREATH</b> (8) <b>NATURE</b> (9) <b>SERIOUS</b> (10) <b>FAVOUR</b>
---	--

**Exercise 3**

Being a \_\_\_\_\_(1), I often have to go on strange assignments. So when my editor told me to do a story on one of the \_\_\_\_\_(2)health spas in Switzerland, I was only too happy to go and take it easy for a week or two. However, when I got there and saw the programme, I began to panic. I had to go on a diet and participate in a \_\_\_\_\_(3)of exercise classes. My \_\_\_\_\_(4)turned to rage when they insisted I go to bed very early so as to get up at 6:00 a. m. and eat breakfast in a \_\_\_\_\_(5)which looked like a greenhouse. I must admit that they ran an excellent \_\_\_\_\_(6)Anyway, you can imagine how happy I was to see my familiar \_\_\_\_\_(7)when I finally arrived home. A few months later, I received an \_\_\_\_\_(8)rom the same clinic for a week's worth of free treatment. My family thought it rather \_\_\_\_\_(9)when they saw the \_\_\_\_\_(10)look on my face.

- (1) JOURNAL
- (2) FAME
- (3) VARY
- (4) ANGRY
- (5) BUILD
- (6) ORGANIZE
- (7) NEIGHBOUR
- (8) INVITE
- (9) AMUSE
- (10) FRIGHT

#### Exercise 4

My father was a police \_\_\_\_\_(1), my mother a \_\_\_\_\_(2)Their \_\_\_\_\_(3)to move to a small town when I was a child changed my life. It was a very \_\_\_\_\_(4)place and of course living there meant that I had much more \_\_\_\_\_(5)to go wherever I pleased. The people were \_\_\_\_\_(6)but I missed my close friends, my school and the \_\_\_\_\_(7)city I had lived in. As I grew up, I realized that there wasn't much for a young person to do there, except rush into \_\_\_\_\_(8). When I left, my parents were sad, but they realized that staying there would only make me \_\_\_\_\_(9)The big city I live in now is not very far away, so I can visit my parents \_\_\_\_\_(10)and have the best of both worlds.

- (1) INSPECT
- (2) TEACH
- (3) DECIDE
- (4) PEACE
- (5) FREE
- (6) FRIEND
- (7) NOISE
- (8) MARRY
- (9) MISERY
- (10) FREQUENT

#### Exercise 5

The economic crisis facing many countries today, has created serious \_\_\_\_\_(1)problems. \_\_\_\_\_(2)young people, willing to work, are confronted by many \_\_\_\_\_(3)when trying to find a job. Filling in countless \_\_\_\_\_(4)forms and hearing that they are \_\_\_\_\_(5)for the job because they don't have the right \_\_\_\_\_(6)can be disheartening. Finding a job seems just \_\_\_\_\_(7)However, their \_\_\_\_\_(8)shouldn't affect them nor make them give up. There is no straightforward \_\_\_\_\_(9)other than \_\_\_\_\_(10)and persistence.

- (1) EMPLOY
- (2) ENERGY
- (3) DIFFICULT
- (4) APPLY
- (5) SUIT
- (6) QUALIFY
- (7) POSSIBLE
- (8) DISAPPOINT
- (9) SOLVE
- (10) PATIENT

#### Exercise 6

There are a myriad of lifestyle issues affecting the youth of today. Such is the pressure heaped on many school-goers to achieve academic excellence by their parents that these \_\_\_\_\_ (1) expectations are causing children to become hopelessly depressed. Indeed, some, in their \_\_\_\_\_ (2) to escape and their sense of guilt at being unable reach the levels of success demanded of them by their \_\_\_\_\_ (3) parents, either rebel in what is \_\_\_\_\_ (4) to a cry for help, or, worse still, engage in \_\_\_\_\_ (5). It is no coincidence that suicide rates, especially amongst young males, have been rising steadily for some time now. These are tough times to be a teen.

Then there are those who get hooked on the internet; the \_\_\_\_\_ (6) world becomes their reality. For these teens, their social circle shrinks \_\_\_\_\_ (7) until, at last, their friendship sphere is limited solely to their online \_\_\_\_\_ (8). Not alone do they commonly suffer from sleep \_\_\_\_\_ (9) on account of their destructive addiction to game play and net-surfing, their behaviour may become so \_\_\_\_\_ (10) and peculiar over time as to be considered \_\_\_\_\_ (11) . And while they sit at their computer screens hidden away in splendid isolation from the real world, such is the lack of exercise they get that their calorie intake far exceeds what is necessary for them to maintain a stable weight. In essence, due to their sedentary lifestyle, their weight \_\_\_\_\_ (12) until such time as they become morbidly obese.

- (1) REAL
- (2) DESPAIR
- (3) PUSH
- (4) AMOUNT
- (5) HARM
- (6) VIRTUE
- (7) DRAMA
- (8) BUD
- (9) PRIVATE
- (10) ERR
- (11) SOCIAL
- (12) ROCKET

#### Exercise 7

The standard of television programming produced in this country is in terminal decline. The \_\_\_\_\_ (1) has become a meaningless term confined in its \_\_\_\_\_ (2) to \_\_\_\_\_ (3) days when adult content felt the full force of censorship and was not allowed to appear on the box until after 9:00 p.m. Nowadays, however, it seems anything goes any time. And, truth told, whatever anything is, it seldom 'goes' for much longer than a half hour or so at any rate before it is interrupted by a commercial break. And don't even get me started on those appalling \_\_\_\_\_ (4) most of the networks run right the way through the night, one after another, for up to thirty minutes at a time. It is truly painful. Terrestrial television is now, as far as I am concerned, a laughing stock. All the quality has been bought up by the satellite networks, with their big-money weight behind them, but even here \_\_\_\_\_ (5) are slim. In protest at the dire state of things, I have become a converted \_\_\_\_\_ (6). I look to the web now to find good content. There, I can find just enough \_\_\_\_\_ (7) of quality programmes to prevent myself from falling into utter despair and pining for the good old days of \_\_\_\_\_ (8).

- (1) SHED
- (2) APPLY
- (3) GO
- (4) INFORM
- (5) PICK
- (6) NET
- (7) RUN
- (8) YEAR

### Exercise 8

In January 2001, the \_\_\_\_\_ (1) Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) issued its latest report on climate change. Climate models worked out by giant super-computers had become far more reliable since the previous report in 1995 and allowed them to \_\_\_\_\_ (2) the earlier projections for global warming. Their conclusions were that something very serious is happening and that it cannot be a natural process. The 1990s was the hottest decade for 1,000 years and the Earth is warming faster than at any time in the last 10,000 years. According to the report, human activities are \_\_\_\_\_ (3) to blame for the temperature rise. The burning of fossil fuels releases carbon dioxide and, due to deforestation, there are fewer trees to absorb this gas and recycle it back into oxygen. Methane \_\_\_\_\_ (4) have also gone up dramatically because of increases in rice culture and \_\_\_\_\_ (5), both of which generate methane from \_\_\_\_\_ (6) vegetation. These greenhouses gases trap heat in the Earth's atmosphere and cause the temperature to rise. In the worst case, the resulting melting of ice-caps and glaciers would cause sea levels to rise by up to 88 cm, endangering the homes and \_\_\_\_\_ (7) of tens of millions of people who live in low-lying regions. Unfortunately, there is far greater \_\_\_\_\_ (8) among the world's scientists over the issue than among politicians. As long ago as 1990, the IPCC recommended a 60% reduction in carbon dioxide \_\_\_\_\_ (9), as the basic level required to return the planet's climate to a healthy level. Governments globally failed to \_\_\_\_\_ (10) these proposals. Now that the dangers have been reaffirmed by the latest report, it is high time that governments took an active interest in exploring alternative, renewable energy sources.

- (1) GOVERN
- (2) PRAISE
- (3) EQUIVOCATE
- (4) CONCENTRATE
- (5) CATTLE
- (6) COMPOSE
- (7) LIVELY
- (8) UNANIMOUS
- (9) EMIT
- (10) ACT

### Exercise 9

People intuitively recognize the importance of self-esteem to their psychological health, so it isn't particularly remarkable that most of us try to protect and enhance it in ourselves whenever possible. What is remarkable is that attention to self-esteem has become a(n) \_\_\_\_\_(1) concern, at least for Americans, who see a favorable opinion of oneself as the central psychological source from which all manner of positive outcomes spring. The corollary, that low self-esteem lies at the root of individual and thus \_\_\_\_\_(2) problems and \_\_\_\_\_(3), has sustained an ambitious social agenda for decades. Indeed, campaigns to raise people's sense of self-worth abound. Consider what transpired in California in the late 1980s. Prodded by State Assemblyman John Vasconcellos, Governor George Deukmejian set up a task force on self-esteem and personal and social responsibility. Vasconcellos argued that raising self-esteem in young people would reduce crime, teen pregnancy, drug abuse, school \_\_\_\_\_(4) and pollution. At one point, he even expressed the hope that these efforts would one day help balance the state budget, a prospect predicated on the observation that people with high \_\_\_\_\_(5) earn more than others and thus pay more in taxes. Along with its other activities, the task force assembled a team of scholars to survey the relevant literature. The results appeared in a 1989 volume \_\_\_\_\_(6) The Social Importance of Self-Esteem, which stated that "many, if not most, of

- (1) COMMUNE
- (2) SOCIETY
- (3) FUNCTION
- (4) ACHIEVE
- (5) REGARD
- (6) TITLE

the major problems plaguing society have roots in the low self-esteem of many of the people who make up society." In reality, the report contained little to support that assertion.

### Exercise 10

Pop art was a(n) \_\_\_\_\_(1) art style in which \_\_\_\_\_(2) objects such as comic strips, soup cans and road signs were used as subject matter, and were often incorporated into the work. The pop art movement was largely a British and American cultural phenomenon of the late 1950s and '60s. Art critic Lawrence Alloway, referring to the prosaic \_\_\_\_\_(3) of its painting and sculpture, named the movement pop art. It represented an attempt to return to a more objective and \_\_\_\_\_(4) accepted form of art after the dominance in both the United States and Europe of the highly personal abstract \_\_\_\_\_(5). The art form was iconoclastic, rejecting the \_\_\_\_\_(6) of the 'high art' of the past and the \_\_\_\_\_(7) of other contemporary avant-garde art. Pop art became a cultural institution because of its close reflection of a particular social situation and because its easily \_\_\_\_\_(8) images were immediately exploited by the mass media. Although the critics of pop art describe it as sensational and non-aesthetic, its proponents saw it as an art that was democratic and not \_\_\_\_\_(9), bringing together both connoisseurs and untrained inexperienced viewers. Even though public reaction to pop art was \_\_\_\_\_(10), it found critical acceptance as a form of art suited to the highly technological, mass media-oriented society of western countries.

- (1) CONVENTION
- (2) COMMON
- (3) ICON
- (4) UNIVERSE
- (5) EXPRESS
- (6) SUPREME
- (7) PRETEND
- (8) COMPREHEND
- (9) DISCRIMINATE
- (10) FAVOUR

## PART II : CONFUSING WORDS

• THEORY

### BẢNG PHÂN BIỆT CÁC TỪ GÂY NHẦM LẪN THƯỜNG GẶP.

STT	TỪ DỄ NHẦM	NGHĨA
1	Uninterested /ʌn'ɪntərestɪd/(a)	Lãnh đạm, thờ ơ, không quan tâm, không chú ý, không để ý
	Disinterested /dɪ'sɪntrəstɪd/(a)	Vô tư, không vụ lợi, không cầu lợi
2	Formally /'fɔ:məli/(adv)	(một cách) chính thức
	Formerly /'fɔ:məli/(adv)	Trước đây
3	Considerable /kən'sɪdərəbl/(a)	Rất lớn, to tát, đáng kể
	Considerate /kən'sɪdərət/(a)	Ân cần, chu đáo; cẩn thận, thận trọng
4	Appreciable /ə'pri:ʃəbl/(a)	Có thể đánh giá, thấy rõ được; đáng kể
	Appreciative /ə'pri:ʃətɪv/(a)	Biết thưởng thức, biết ơn
5	Forgettable /fə'getəbl/(a)	Có thể quên được
	Forgetful /fə'getfl/(a)	Hay quên
6	Expectation /,ekspek'teɪʃn/(n)	Sự trông chờ, sự hy vọng (của một người)
	Expectancy /ɪk'spektənsɪ/(n)	Sự chờ mong, hy vọng (thường liên quan đến khoảng thời gian được dự kiến để điều gì diễn ra)
7	Respectable /rɪ'spektəbl/(a)	Đáng kính trọng; đứng đắn, đàng hoàng; khá lớn, đáng kể
	Respective /rɪ'spektɪv/(a)	Riêng của mỗi người/vật; tương ứng
	Respectful /rɪ'spektfl/(a)	Thể hiện sự tôn trọng, tôn kính, lễ phép
8	Comprehensible /,kɒmprɪ'hensəbl/(a)	Có thể hiểu được, có thể lĩnh ngộ
	Comprehensive /,kɒmprɪ'hensɪv/(a)	Bao quát, toàn diện
9	Beneficent /bə'nefɪsənt/(a)	Hay làm phúc, hay làm việc thiện
	Beneficial /,benɪ'fɪʃl/(a)	Có ích, có lợi
10	Complimentary /,kɒmplɪ'mentəri/(a)	Ca ngợi, mời, biếu
	Complementary /,kɒmplɪ'mentəri/(a)	Bổ sung, bù
11	Farther /'fɑ:ðə(r)/ (a)	Xa hơn (thường để chỉ khoảng cách vật lý)
	Further /'fɜ:ðə(r)/ (a)	Xa hơn (dùng để chỉ khoảng cách vật lý cũng như khoảng cách khác như không gian, thời gian; có thể chỉ mức độ); thêm vào đó
12	Sensible /'sensəbl/(a)	Biết điều, hợp lý, nhận thấy
	Sensitive /'sensɪtɪv/(a)	Nhạy cảm, dễ bị tổn thương, truyền cảm, thông cảm
13	Responsible /rɪ'spɒnsəbl/(a)	Chịu trách nhiệm; đáng tin cậy

	Responsive /rɪˈspɒnsɪv/(a)	Đáp lại, phản ứng nhanh nhẹn
14	Successful /səkˈsesfl/(a)	Thành công
	Successive /səkˈsesɪv/(a)	Liên tiếp, kế tiếp
15	Classical /ˈklæsɪkl/(a)	Cổ điển, thuộc về truyền thống lâu đời
	Classic /ˈklæsɪk/(a)	Kinh điển
16	Deadly /ˈdedli/(a)	Chết người; cực kỳ, hết sức
	Deathly /ˈdeθli/(a)	Như chết
17	Continual /kənˈtɪnjuəl/(a)	Liên tục nhưng có ngắt quãng
	Continuous /kənˈtɪnjuəs/(a)	Liên tục, không ngừng
18	Economical /,i:kəˈnɒmɪkl/(a)	Tiết kiệm (thời gian, tiền,...)
	Economic /,i:kəˈnɒmɪk/(a)	Thuộc về kinh tế
19	Specifically /spəˈsɪfɪkli/(adv)	Đặc biệt (dùng để chỉ một việc gì đó được thực hiện vì một mục đích đặc biệt nào đó)
	Especially /ɪˈspeʃəli/(adv)	Đặc biệt (dùng để chỉ một điều gì đó mà bạn nói đến có sự đặc biệt nhiều hơn thứ khác)
20	Terrible /ˈterəbl/(a)	Khủng khiếp, rất tồi, rất chán, không ra gì
	Terrific /təˈrɪfɪk/(a)	Tuyệt vời
21	Favourite /ˈfeɪvərɪt/(a)	Được yêu thích, yêu thích nhất
	Favourable /ˈfeɪvərəbl/(a)	Thuận lợi, tỏ ý tán thành
22	Awful /ˈɔːfʊl/(a)	Đáng sợ, khủng khiếp, mang tính tiêu cực
	Awesome /ˈɔːsəm/(a)	Đáng kính sợ (miêu tả sự ngạc nhiên, thú vị, mang tính tích cực)
23	Historical /hɪˈstɒrɪkl/(a)	Thuộc lịch sử (thường mô tả cái gì đó liên quan đến quá khứ hoặc việc nghiên cứu lịch sử hay cái gì đó được thực hiện ở quá khứ)
	Historic /hɪˈstɒrɪk/(a)	Có tính chất lịch sử (thường được dùng để miêu tả cái gì đó rất quan trọng đến độ người ta phải ghi nhớ nó)
24	Imaginary /ɪˈmædʒɪnəri/(a)	Tưởng tượng
	Imaginative /ɪˈmædʒɪnətɪv/(a)	Giàu trí tưởng tượng
	Imaginable /ɪˈmædʒɪnəbl/(a)	Có thể tưởng tượng được
25	Restful /ˈrestfl/(a)	Tạo không khí nghỉ ngơi thoải mái, yên tĩnh
	Restless /ˈrestləs/(a)	Luôn luôn động đậy, không yên, bồn chồn
26	Industrial /ɪnˈdʌstriəl/(a)	Thuộc công nghiệp
	Industrious /ɪnˈdʌstriəs/(a)	Cần cù, siêng năng
27	Dependent /dɪˈpendənt/(a)	Dựa vào, ỷ lại, phụ thuộc
	Dependable /dɪˈpendəbl/(a)	Có thể tin cậy được
28	Every day(adv)	Mỗi ngày (trong một thời kỳ, giai đoạn), rất

		thường xuyên
	Everyday(a)	Thông thường, lệ thường, hằng ngày
29	Effective /ɪ'fektɪv/(a)	Có hiệu quả (được dùng để nói về việc tạo ra/đạt được kết quả như mong muốn)
	Efficient /ɪ'fɪʃnt/(a)	Có hiệu suất cao (máy móc cao), năng suất cao (con người), dùng để chỉ cách làm việc tốt mà không phí thời gian, công sức, tiền bạc
30	Principle /'prɪnsəpl/(a)	Nguyên lý, nguyên tắc
	Principal /'prɪnsəpl/(a)	Chính, chủ yếu
31	Later /'leɪtər/(adv)	Sau này, một thời điểm ở tương lai
	Latter /'lætər/(n)	Cái sau, người sau (trong số 2 người)
32	Illicit /ɪ'lɪsɪt/(a)	Trái phép, lậu, vụng trộm
	Elicit /ɪ'lɪsɪt/(v)	Moi ra
33	Entrance /'entrəns/(n)	Lối vào, cửa vào; quyền, khả năng của ai để đi vào nơi nào
	Entry /'entri/(n)	Sự đi vào; quá trình người/vật trở thành một phần của cái gì đó
34	Drastically /'dræstɪkli/(adv)	Một cách mạnh mẽ, quyết liệt
	Dramatically /drə'mætɪkli/(adv)	Đột ngột
35	Package /'pækɪdʒ/(n)	Gói đồ, kiện hàng, hộp để đóng hàng
	Packaging /'pækɪdʒɪŋ/(n)	Bao bì
36	Percent /pə'sent/(n)	Phần trăm
	Percentage /pə'sentɪdʒ/(n)	Tỷ lệ phần trăm
37	Desert /'dezət/(n)	Rời đi, bỏ đi; sa mạc
	Dessert /dɪ'zɜ:t/(n)	Món tráng miệng
38	Felicitate /fə'lɪsɪteɪt/(v)	Khen ngợi, chúc mừng
	Facilitate /fə'sɪlɪteɪt/(v)	Tạo điều kiện dễ dàng
39	Heroin /'herəʊɪn/(n)	Heroin, thuốc phiện
	Heroine /'herəʊɪn/(n)	Nữ anh hùng
40	Compliment /'kɒmplɪmənt/(n)	Lời khen ngợi, lời chúc mừng
	Complement /'kɒmplɪmənt/(n)	Phần bổ sung, số lượng cần thiết
41	Intensive /ɪn'tensɪv/(a)	Tập trung, sâu, nhấn mạnh, cực kỳ kỹ lưỡng
	Extensive /ɪk'stensɪv/(a)	Rộng, rộng lớn
42	Foul /faʊl/(n)	Hôi, bẩn
	Error /'erə[r]/(n)	Sai sót, sai lầm
43	Sometime /'sʌmtaɪm/(adv)	Trước kia, nguyên
	Sometimes /'sʌmtaɪmz/(adv)	Đôi khi, đôi lúc

44	Beside /br'saɪd/(prep)	Bên cạnh
	Besides /br'saɪdz/(adv)	Ngoài ra, hơn nữa, vả lại
45	Advisory /əd'vaɪzəri/(n)	Tư vấn
	Advisable /əd'vaɪzəbl/(n)	Nên, đáng theo; khôn ngoan
46	Suggested /sə'dʒestɪd/(a)	Được gợi ý
	Suggestible /sə'dʒestəbl/(a)	Dễ bị ảnh hưởng
47	Ingredient /m'gri:diənt/(n)	Thành phần (thường trong đồ ăn)
	Component /kəm'pəʊnənt/(n)	Nhân tố cấu thành (thường dùng trong máy móc)
48	Wound /wu:nd/(v)	bị thương trong 1 cuộc chiến, đánh nhau (bị thương bởi súng, dao, hoặc vật gì đó)
	Injure /'ɪndʒə(r)/(v)	Bị thương vì tai nạn
49	Confident /'kɒnfɪdənt/(a)	Tin tưởng, tin, tự tin
	Confidential /,kɒnfɪ'denʃl/(a)	Kín, mật
50	Invent /m'vent/(v)	Phát minh, sáng chế
	Discover /dɪs'kʌvə(r)/(v)	Phát hiện, tìm ra, khám phá
51	Ignore /ɪg'nɔ:r/(v)	Làm ngo, bỏ qua, không chú ý tới
	Neglect /nɪ'glekt/(v)	Không quan tâm, lơ là
52	Found /faʊnd/(v)	Thành lập, sáng lập
	Found /faʊnd/(v)	Quá khứ đơn và quá khứ phân từ của động từ "find"
53	Lie - lied - lied(v)	Nói dối (động từ nguyên mẫu và quá khứ, quá khứ phân từ)
	Lie - lay - lain(v)	Nằm xuống (động từ nguyên mẫu và quá khứ, quá khứ phân từ)
	Lay - laid - laid(v)	Để, đặt cái gì (động từ nguyên mẫu và quá khứ, quá khứ phân từ)
54	Prolong /prə'lɒŋ/(v)	Kéo dài (ngoại động từ)
	Last /lɑ:st/(v)	Kéo dài (nội động từ)
55	Drop /drɒp/(v)	Rơi, nháy xuống, giảm xuống (nhiệt độ, gió, mực nước,...)
	Reduce /rɪ'dju:s/ (v)	Giảm, hạ (ngoại động từ)
56	Rise /raɪz/(v)	Gia tăng về số lượng (là nội động từ)
	Raise /reɪz/(v)	Gia tăng, nâng một cái gì từ vị trí thấp lên vị trí cao hơn (là ngoại động từ)
57	Finally /'faməli/(adv)	Cuối cùng, để kết luận( được dùng để giới thiệu một điểm, một mục cuối cùng hay hỏi một câu sau cùng)



	Eventually /ɪ'ventʃʊəli/(adv)	Rốt cuộc, cuối cùng (để nói về những gì xảy ra trong giai đoạn cuối của một loạt sự kiện, và thường là kết quả của chúng)
58	A while	Một khoảng thời gian (cụm danh từ)
	Awhile /ə'waɪl/	Một lát, một chốc (phó từ)
59	Reward /rɪ'wɔ:d/(n)	Phần thưởng, thưởng (dùng để đền bù hay công nhận sự nỗ lực, sự đóng góp, sự vất vả của một cá nhân; dưới hình thức tiền hay được thăng chức)
	Award /ə'wɔ:d/(n)	Trao thưởng, giải thưởng (dùng để trao trong những dịp quan trọng, một minh chứng thành tích, sự xuất sắc của một cá nhân và được hội đồng thông qua, thường dưới hình thức huy chương, giấy chứng nhận, danh hiệu, cúp,...)
60	Forget /fə'get/(v)	Quên, bỏ quên
	Leave /li:v/(v)	Bỏ lại, để lại, bỏ quên (ở một nơi nào đó, có địa điểm cụ thể)
61	Persuade /pə'sweɪd/(v)	Thuyết phục ai đó làm gì vì hợp lý
	Convince /kən'vɪns/(v)	Thuyết phục ai tin vào điều gì đó
62	Expand /ɪk'spænd/(v)	(Làm cho) trở nên lớn hơn về kích cỡ, số lượng, hoặc tầm quan trọng
	Extend /ɪk'stend/(v)	Làm cho cái gì đó dài ra hơn, thêm rộng hơn, lớn hơn. (thường là nghĩa đen, như cái nhà, cái hàng rào, con đường, hay một khu vực,...); kéo dài hiệu lực
63	Assurance /ə'ʃʊ:rəns/(n)	Được dùng để chỉ "bảo hiểm nhân mạng" (life assurance). Khi tham gia hệ thống bảo hiểm này, bạn đều đặn nộp tiền cho công ty bảo hiểm. Khi bạn qua đời, thân nhân của bạn sẽ lĩnh được một số tiền.
	Insurance /ɪn'ʃʊ:rəns/(n)	Hợp đồng do một công ty hoặc tổ chức xã hội, hoặc nhà nước làm để đảm bảo đền bù, mất mát, thiệt hại, ốm đau,... bằng việc bạn đóng tiền thường kỳ.
64	Stationary /'steɪʃənri/(a)	Đứng yên, để một chỗ, không thay đổi
	Stationery /'steɪʃənri/(n)	Văn phòng phẩm
65	Immigrate /'ɪmɪgrənt/(v)	Nhập cư
	Migrate /maɪ'greɪt/(v)	Di trú (người, chim)
66	Poster /'pəʊstə(r)/(n)	Áp phích lớn, tờ quảng cáo lớn

	Porter /'pɔ:tə(r)/(n)	Công nhân khuôn vác, người trực ở cổng
67	Drought /draʊt/(n)	Hạn hán
	Draught /dra:ft/(n)	Gió lùa
68	Unnecessary /ʌn'nesəsri/(a)	Không cần thiết (thừa), không có lý do, vô có
	Needless /'ni:dləs/(a)	Không cần thiết
69	Shadow /'ʃædəʊ/(n)	Bóng của người hay vật
	Shade /ʃeɪd/(n)	Bóng mát, bóng râm
70	Sink /sɪŋk/(v)	Chìm (áp dụng cho cả người, động vật và đồ vật)
	Drown /draʊn/(v)	Chết đuối, chết chìm ( dùng khi nói về sinh vật).
71	Lend /lend/(v)	Cho mượn, cho vay
	Borrow /'bɒrəʊ/(v)	Vay, mượn từ ai
72	Mend /mend/(v)	Thường được sử dụng để diễn tả sự sửa chữa trên những chất liệu mềm, những vật liệu hữu cơ để sửa chữa hoặc những sự vật hiện tượng mang tính tinh thần
	Repair /rɪ'peər/(v)	Dùng khi một phần nào đó của một vật hoặc hệ thống cần được sửa chữa
73	Disuse /dɪs'ju:s/(v)	Sự bỏ không dùng đến
	Misuse /mɪs'ju:z/(v)	Dùng sai
74	Recognize /'rekəɡnaɪz/(v)	Nhận diện (bằng việc nhìn bằng mắt), phân biệt, nhận ra ai đó
	Realize /'rɪəlaɪz/(v)	Cảm nhận, nhận biết, nhận thức được, hiểu ra
75	Climate /'klaɪmət/ (n)	Khí hậu, miền khí hậu
	Climax /'klaɪməks/ (n)	Cực điểm, tột đỉnh
76	Satisfying /'sætɪsfaɪɪŋ/ (a)	Làm hài lòng, làm thoả mãn (nói về một việc/đồ vật nào đó đáp ứng được nhu cầu và yêu cầu của bạn và quan trọng nhất là cảm giác của bạn khi làm việc/dùng vật đó. Bạn thấy hoàn toàn thỏa mãn/hài lòng).
	Satisfactory /,sætɪs'fæktəri/ (a)	Vừa lòng, vừa ý; thoả mãn (chỉ một việc/vật nào đó khi mức độ hài lòng của người nói đối với việc/đồ vật đó chỉ dừng ở mức tạm chấp nhận được, họ không có gì để than phiền nhưng cũng không thích thú gì với việc/vật đó).
77	Sacred /'seɪkrɪd/ (a)	Thần thánh, thiêng liêng
	Scared /skeəd/ (a)	Bị hoảng sợ

78	Doggy /'dɒgi/ (n)	Chó má, khốn nạn
	Dogged /'dɒɡɪd/ (a)	Bền bỉ, ngoan cường
79	Application /,æplɪ'keɪʃən/ (n)	Lời xin, đơn xin, sự áp dụng
	Applicant /'æplɪkənt/ (n)	Người xin việc
80	Employer /ɪm'plɔɪər/ (n)	Ông chủ
	Employee /ɪm'plɔɪi:/ (n)	Người làm công
81	Ingenious /ɪn'dʒi:niəs/ (a)	Tài tình, khéo léo
	Ingenuous /ɪn'dʒenjuəs/ (a)	Chân thật, ngây thơ
82	Enquiry /'ɪnkwəri/ (n)	Sự đặt câu hỏi, sự thẩm vấn (một yêu cầu đối với sự thật, sự hiểu biết, thông tin)
	Inquiry /ɪn'kwɪəri/ (n)	Điều tra về một cái gì đó
83	Direction /daɪ'rekʃən/ (n)	Chỉ dẫn (dùng cho việc tìm hướng)
	Instruction /ɪn'strʌkʃən/ (n)	Chỉ dẫn (thông tin về cách làm việc gì đó)
84	Magic /'mædʒɪk/ (n) (a)	Ma thuật, phép thần thông, sức lôi cuốn, khi là tính từ "magic" dùng trong vai trò làm thuộc ngữ, đứng trước danh từ mà nó bổ nghĩa "magic" thường dùng nghĩa đen và một số cụm từ nhất định
	Magical /'mædʒɪkəl/ (a)	Kỳ diệu, liên quan đến phép thuật, ma thuật, được dùng trong cả vai trò vị ngữ và bổ ngữ
85	Permissive /pə'mɪsɪv/ (a)	Dễ dãi (nhất là với trẻ em)
	Permissible /pə'mɪsəbəl/ (a)	Được cho phép, chấp nhận được
86	Humble /'hʌmbəl/ (a)	Khiêm tốn (vì cảm thấy mình thấp kém)
	Modest /'mɒdɪst/ (a)	Khiêm tốn (chỉ con người, cách cư xử không muốn khoe khoang)
87	Sociable /'səʊʃəbəl/ (a)	Hòa đồng, dễ gần gũi
	Social /'səʊʃəl/ (a)	Thuộc xã hội
88	Angle /'æŋɡəl/ (n)	Góc độ, góc cạnh
	Angel /'eɪndʒəl/ (n)	Thiên thần, thiên sứ
89	Dairy /'deəri/ (n)	Nơi làm bơ sữa, cửa hàng bơ sữa
	Diary /'daɪəri/ (n)	Nhật ký
90	Devise /dɪ'vaɪz/ (v)	Nghĩ ra, dặt ra, sáng chế
	Device /dɪ'vaɪs/ (n)	Thiết bị, dụng cụ
91	Noisy /'nɔɪzi/ (a)	Ồn ào, làm ồn, âm ỉ
	Noisome /'nɔɪsəm/ (a)	Khó chịu, hôi thối, ghê tởm
92	Prosecute /'prɒsɪkjʊ:t/ (v)	Truy tố, tiếp tục, theo đuổi
	Persecute /'pɜ:sɪkjʊ:t/ (v)	Làm khổ, quấy rối
93	Practicable /'præktɪkəbəl/ (a)	Làm được, khả thi

	Practical /'præktɪkəl/ (a)	Thực tế; thiết thực, có ích
94	Reality /ri'æləti/ (n)	Sự thực, thực tế
	Realty /'riəlti/ (n)	Bất động sản
95	Residence /'rezɪdəns/ (n)	Sự ở, sự cư trú, nhà ở
	Resident /'rezɪdənt/ (n)	Cư dân
96	Moral /'mɔrəl/ (a)	Thuộc đạo đức, thuộc luân lý, có đạo đức
	Morale /mə'ra:l/ (n)	Tinh thần, chí khí; nhuệ khí
97	Morning /'mɔ:rnɪŋ/ (n)	Buổi sáng, sáng
	Mourning /'mɔ:rnɪŋ/ (n)	Sự đau buồn, tang, đồ tang
98	Pretty /'prɪti/ (a)	Xinh xắn, hay, tốt
	Petty /'peti/ (a)	Nhỏ, vặt, không quan trọng
99	Marital /'merɪtəl/ (a)	Thuộc chồng, thuộc vợ, thuộc hôn nhân
	Martial /'mɑ:riəl/ (a)	Thuộc quân sự, thuộc chiến tranh
100	Access /'ækses/ (n)	Lối vào, cửa vào, sự đến gần
	Excess /'ekses/ (n)	Sự quá mức, sự thái quá
101	Affect /ə'fekt/ (v)	Ảnh hưởng đến, tác động đến
	Effect /ɪ'fekt/ (n)	Tác động, ảnh hưởng
102	Adopt /ə'dɒpt/ (v)	Chấp nhận, nhận làm con nuôi
	Adapt /ə'dæpt/ (v)	Thích nghi với
103	Proceed /prə'si:d/ (v)	Tiến lên, tiếp tục làm; hành động
	Precede /pri'si:d/ (v)	Đi trước, đến trước
104	Diploma /di'plɒmə/ (n)	<b>Chứng chỉ</b> do các trường đại học, cao đẳng và trường kỹ thuật cấp. Thời gian học khoảng hai năm, hệ trung cấp. Có thời gian ngắn hơn vì chỉ tập trung vào học một môn/ngành nghề.
	Degree /di'ɡri:/ (n)	<b>Bằng đại học</b> và các loại bằng sau đại học (bằng cử nhân, thạc sĩ, tiến sĩ)
	Certificate /sə'tɪfəkət/ (n)	<b>Giấy chứng nhận</b> do các trường cao đẳng và trường kỹ thuật cấp. Thời gian học từng ngành nghề (từng khoá học riêng lẻ) khoảng vài tháng đến dưới 1 năm. Ngoài ra, giấy chứng nhận "certificate" còn là một chứng từ chính thức cho biết thông tin trên đó là đúng/thật, như: a birth certificate (giấy khai sinh), a marriage certificate (giấy kết hôn), a death certificate (giấy báo tử), etc.
105	Exhaustive /ɪg'zɔ:stɪv/ (a)	Thấu đáo, toàn diện
	Exhausted /ɪg'zɔ:stɪd/ (a)	Kiệt sức, mệt lử

106	Neglected /nɪ'glektɪd/ (a)	Cẩu thả, xuềnh xoàng, bỏ bê
	Neglectful /nɪ'glektfəl/ (a)	Sao lãng, lơ là
	Negligible /'neglɪdʒəbəl/ (a)	Không đáng kể
107	Litter /'lɪtər/ (n)	Rác thải mà mọi người vứt bừa bãi, không đúng nơi quy định.
	Sewage /'suːɪdʒ/ (n)	Nước thải, chất thải
	Garbage /'gɑːrɪdʒ/ (n)	Rác trong nhà bếp, thường là "wet wastes", ví dụ như đồ ăn đã bị hỏng hoặc bỏ đi.
108	Patient /'peɪʃənt/ (a) (n)	Kiên nhẫn, nhẫn nại; bệnh nhân
	Patience /'peɪʃəns/ (n)	Tính kiên nhẫn, tính nhẫn nại
109	Action /'æksjən/ (n)	Hành động, động tác (chỉ những chuyển động vật lý (physical movement) của cơ thể con người, chứ không phải là 'speak' không, mà đã chuyển thành 'action', action thường không phải dưới một hoàn cảnh nào như behaviour mà nó nhấn mạnh vào sự thực hiện hành động)
	Activity /æk'tɪvəti/ (n)	Hoạt động (chỉ những tình huống mà có nhiều người cùng tham gia vào làm gì đó hoặc một nhóm các hoạt động chung; Chỉ những hoạt động nhằm hướng vào mục đích nào đó, đem lại niềm vui, giải trí)
110	Recreation /,rekri'eɪʃən/ (n)	Sự giải lao, trò giải lao, tiêu khiển
	Creation /kri'eɪʃən/ (n)	Sự sáng tạo, tạo ra
111	Advertisement /əd'vɜːtɪsmənt/ (n)	Sự quảng cáo, mục quảng cáo
	Advertising /'ædvətaɪzɪŋ/ (n)	Nghề quảng cáo, công việc quảng cáo
112	Conservation /,kɒnsə'veɪʃən/ (n)	Sự bảo tồn, giữ gìn
	Conversation /,kɒnvə'seɪʃən/ (n)	Cuộc nói chuyện
113	Solve /sɒlv/ (v)	Giải quyết vấn đề, tình huống khó khăn (bằng cách tìm ra giải pháp)
	Resolve /rɪ'zɒlv/ (v)	Giải quyết vấn đề quan trọng, xung đột có liên quan đến nhiều người (bằng cách kết thúc vấn đề đó)
114	Fee /fiː/ (n)	Phí trả (cho việc sử dụng một dịch vụ đặc thù như học phí, phí đăng ký xe máy, các loại dịch vụ pháp lý như phí thuê luật sư,...)
	Fare /feər/ (n)	Phí trả (cho việc di chuyển, sử dụng phương tiện giao thông như tàu xe)
115	Salary /'sæləri/ (n)	Tiền lương (là số tiền cố định được nhận hàng tháng, hàng năm, không thay đổi dựa

		trên số giờ làm việc)
	Wage /weɪdʒ/ (n)	Tiền công (là số tiền được trả hàng tuần hoặc theo từng ngày dựa vào số tiền làm theo giờ, ngày hoặc tuần hoặc thỏa thuận dựa trên dịch vụ nào đó)
116	Celebration /,selə'breɪʃən/ (n)	Sự kỷ niệm, lễ kỷ niệm
	Celebrity /sə'leɪbrəti/ (n)	Người nổi tiếng
117	Numerate /'nju:mərət/ (a)	Có kiến thức toán học
	Numerous /'nju:mərəs/ (a)	Rất nhiều, rất đông
118	Reliant /rɪ'laɪənt/ (a)	Phụ thuộc vào, dựa dẫm vào ai
	Reliable /rɪ'laɪəbəl/ (a)	Đáng tin cậy
119	Relation /rɪ'leɪʃən/ (n)	Mối quan hệ, mối tương quan; giao thiệp (giữa hai người, hai nước,...)
	Relationship /rɪ'leɪʃənʃɪp/ (n)	Mối quan hệ (thân thiết giữa những người cụ thể như trong gia đình, cặp đôi, hàng xóm,...)
120	Initiative /ɪ'nɪʃətɪv/ (n)	Sáng kiến; sự khởi xướng
	Initial /ɪ'nɪʃəl/ (a)	Đầu, đầu tiên
121	Live /lɪv/ (v) (a)	Sống, hoạt động
	Lively /'laɪvli/ (a)	Sinh động; hoạt bát hăng hái
122	Addicted /ə'dɪktɪd/ (a)	Say mê, nghiện
	Addictive /ə'dɪktɪv/ (a)	Có tính gây nghiện
123	Hard /hɑ:d/ (a)	Cứng rắn; gian khổ; nghiêm khắc
	Hardly /'hɑ:dlɪ/ (adv)	Hầu như không

• **PRACTICES**

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.*

- He wasn't aware that only one mistake could \_\_\_\_\_ his chances of getting the job.  
A. destroy    B. damage    C. ruin    D. devastate
- The committee \_\_\_\_\_ and censured him for his uncooperative attitude.  
A. reprimanded    B. scolded    C. reproached    D. rebuked
- There were 79 killed and 230 \_\_\_\_\_ in a bomb explosion at the embassy.  
A. injured    B. wounded    C. hurt    D. ached
- This wine comes \_\_\_\_\_ recommended. You should try it!  
A. high    B. highly    C. heighten    D. height
- The police have every good \_\_\_\_\_ to believe that he is guilty.  
A. excuse    B. cause    C. reason    D. ground
- You should be \_\_\_\_\_ of yourself for telling such lies.  
A. shy    B. bashful    C. inhibited    D. ashamed
- His new car is the \_\_\_\_\_ of all his friends.  
A. envy    B. jealousy    C. grudge    D. grievance

8. \_\_\_\_\_ is a strong, dangerous wind that forms itself into an upside-down spinning cone and is able to destroy buildings as it moves across the ground.  
A. Typhoon B. Hurricane C. Cyclone D. Tornado
9. A \_\_\_\_\_ of \$10,000 has been offered for the capture of his murderer.  
A. prize B. gift C. bounty D. award
10. Big supermarkets can undercut all \_\_\_\_\_, especially small high- street shops.  
A. rivals B. opponents C. contenders D. challenger
11. The rain has been \_\_\_\_\_ since this morning, which makes me feel bored.  
A. continuous B. continual C. continuation D. continuity
12. A system of checks and balances exists to ensure that our government is \_\_\_\_\_ democratic.  
A. positively B. genuinely C. actually D. truly
13. You can't complain of being \_\_\_\_\_ when you don't make any effort to meet people.  
A. alone B. lonely C. solitary D. loneliness
14. It is reported that the building was completely \_\_\_\_\_ by fire.  
A. spoilt B. ruined C. damaged D. destroyed
15. He never raised his voice or \_\_\_\_\_ his children unfairly.  
A. chided B. scolded C. reproached D. reprimanded
16. Can the sales team meet its financial \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. purposes B. aims C. goals D. objectives
17. They had to wait ten minutes for the anesthetic to take \_\_\_\_\_ before they stitched up the cut.  
A. effect B. impact C. influence D. affect
18. The bank will insist you produce a driving \_\_\_\_\_ or passport as a form of ID.  
A. diploma B. certificate C. degree D. licence
19. Please \_\_\_\_\_ me from the rest of the meeting - I've just received a phone call that requires my immediate attention.  
A. excuse B. apologize C. forgiven D. sorry
20. She values her job \_\_\_\_\_ her family.  
A. over B. above C. behind D. before
21. The killer \_\_\_\_\_ that he often drugged his victims before he killed them.  
A. confessed B. admitted C. acknowledged D. recognized
22. Whenever a camera was pointed at her, Marilyn would instantly \_\_\_\_\_ herself into a radiant star.  
A. transmit B. transform C. convert D. transfer
23. He directed "The Wizard of Oz" and "Gone with the Wind," receiving an Oscar for the \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. lately B. latest C. later D. latter
24. The process of \_\_\_\_\_ Jackson from a talented teenager into a franchise player began in training camp.  
A. exchanging B. transforming C. altering D. converting
25. The \_\_\_\_\_ lay with the organizers, who failed to make the necessary arrangements for dealing with so many people.  
A. mistake B. foul C. fault D. error
26. The two people \_\_\_\_\_ badminton seemed to be at it quite intensely.  
A. going B. playing C. doing D. practicing
27. \_\_\_\_\_ I said, I'm not interested in buying insurance at the moment.

- A. Like    B. As    C. Similar    D. Alike
28. He put on a large hat and glasses as a disguise and hoped no one would\_\_\_\_\_him.  
A. see    B. recognize    C. realize    D. watch
29. You could always\_\_\_\_\_a dress for the ball if you can't afford to buy one.  
A. hire    B. rent    C. employ    D. lease
30. I'm having lunch with an old friend\_\_\_\_\_next week.  
A. sometimes    B. occasionally    C. sometime    D. often
31. Some musicians don't like to\_\_\_\_\_rings when they're playing.  
A. wear    B. dress    C. put on    D. clothe
32. Customs officers have seized\_\_\_\_\_a ton of heroin destined for New York.  
A. mostly    B. nearby    C. near    D. nearly
33. Do you think these two colours\_\_\_\_\_?  
A. match    B. fit    C. go with    D. suit
34. This was my first trip on the ocean and my first\_\_\_\_\_in a steamboat.  
A. voyage    B. journey    C. expedition    D. excursion
35. When you've pinned the pattern onto the\_\_\_\_\_, you can start cutting out all the pieces.  
A. clothing    B. cloth    C. clothes    D. costume
36. I could\_\_\_\_\_someone calling my name.  
A. hear    B. listen to    C. overhear    D. feel
37. The building was demolished before a crowd of nearly 200\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. onlookers    B. audiences    C. viewers    D. spectators
38. To them, acid rain and urban\_\_\_\_\_are more immediate and urgent concerns than global warming.  
A. haze    B. fog    C. smog    D. mist
39. Untreated\_\_\_\_\_is being pumped into the sea, from where it pollutes our beaches.  
A. sewage    B. litter    C. rubbish    D. garbage
40. Mexican farm workers\_\_\_\_\_into the US each year to find work at harvest time and then return to their hometown.  
A. emigrate    B. migrate    C. drift    D. move
41. A crowd had gathered\_\_\_\_\_the scene of the accident.  
A. center    B. surrounding    C. around    D. round
42. The\_\_\_\_\_for the disaster was engine failure, not human error.  
A. origin    B. excuse    C. cause    D. reason
43. The hounds had lost the\_\_\_\_\_of the fox near the river.  
A. scent    B. odor    C. savour    D. flavor
44. She\_\_\_\_\_herself for being so impatient with the children.  
A. reprimanded    B. scolded    C. chided    D. rebuked
45. Mr Harvey, unable for once to do exactly as he wanted, sulked just like a\_\_\_\_\_child.  
A. damaged    B. spoiled    C. destroyed    D. ruined
46. The government has\_\_\_\_\_that homelessness is a problem but it has failed to grasp the scale of the problem.  
A. admitted    B. confessed    C. acknowledged    D. approved
47. I'm sorry, I\_\_\_\_\_my notebook at home.  
A. left    B. forgot    C. erased    D. put
48. What's the formula for\_\_\_\_\_pounds into kilograms?



- A. converting    B. transferring    C. transmitting    D. transforming
49. Profits have declined\_\_\_\_\_the recent drop in sales.  
A. as a result    B. as a result of    C. resulting in    D. resulting from
50. The train slowed down and then stopped\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. all together    B. together    C. altogether    D. all are correct
51. Because of international treaty obligations, the Government is legally\_\_\_\_\_to consider every asylum claim.  
A. about    B. due    C. just    D. bound
52. It is announced that the film festival\_\_\_\_\_in October.  
A. happens    B. occurs    C. comes up    D. takes place
53. One by one the old buildings in the city have been\_\_\_\_\_and replaced with modern tower blocks.  
A. demolished    B. damaged    C. ruined    D. devastated
54. I'm not familiar \_\_\_\_\_current research in the field.  
A. to    B. with    C. about    D. at
55. Her job is only concerned\_\_\_\_\_costs and fees.  
A. to    B. with    C. about    D. at
56. We\_\_\_\_\_the victims to talk freely about their experiences.  
A. encourage    B. stimulate    C. motivate    D. all are correct
57. The project should be completed by next March, six months \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. therefore    B. consequently    C. as a result    D. hence
58. Huong: "Are you going to be at church on Sunday morning?"  
Hoa: " \_\_\_\_\_ - it depends how late we get back on Saturday."  
A. probably    B. likely    C. possibly    D. maybe
59. Until the constitution is\_\_\_\_\_, the power to appoint ministers will remain with the president.  
A. mended    B. repaired    C. corrected    D. amended
60. I had to\_\_\_\_\_my voice to make myself heard over the noise.  
A. raise    B. rise    C. arise    D. elevate

## PART III : PHRASAL VERBS

### • THEORY

Cụm động từ (Phrasal verbs) là một động từ kết hợp với giới từ, trạng từ hoặc đôi khi cả hai để tạo thành một động từ mới thường có nghĩa khác với động từ chính.

#### 1. **Type 1** = verb + adverb (no object)

The verb and adverb cannot be separated and there is no passive form in this type.

EX: break down = stop working

The car *broke down* and we had to walk.

#### 2. **Type 2** = verb + adverb + object

or: verb + object + adverb

EX: Put off = postpone

We must **put off** the meeting for another week.

We must **put** the meeting **off** for another week

If the object is a pronoun the adverb must come after the object

We must **put it off** for another week

But not:

~~We must put off it for another week.~~ (wrong sentence)

#### 3. **Type 3** = verb + preposition + object

The preposition cannot be separated from the verb.

EX: take after = be similar to older relative (resemble)

He *takes after* his mother.

He *takes after* her.

But not:

~~He takes his mother after.~~

~~He takes her after.~~

#### 4. **Type 4** = verb + adverb + preposition + object

EX: put up with = tolerate

I can't *put up with* his behaviour any more

I can't *put up with* it any more

### MỘT SỐ CỤM ĐỘNG TỪ THÔNG DỤNG

STT	Cấu trúc	Nghĩa
1	<b>Act out</b>	Đóng vai, đóng kịch
2	<b>Account for</b>	Chiếm bao nhiêu %, giải thích
3	<b>Ask for st</b>	Xin cái gì
	<b>Ask after</b>	Hỏi thăm
	<b>Ask sb out</b>	Mời ai đó đi ăn/đi xem phim để hẹn hò
4	<b>Break down</b>	Chia nhỏ ra, hỏng hóc, ngắt xỉu
	<b>Break into</b>	Đột nhập vào

	<b>Break out</b>	Nổ ra
	<b>Break up</b>	Chia tay
5	<b>Bring sb up</b>	Nuôi nấng ai
	<b>Bring out</b>	Làm nổi bật
	<b>Bring about</b>	Gây ra, mang lại
	<b>Bring back</b>	Mang lại, gọi nhớ
6	<b>Blow out</b>	Thổi tắt
7	<b>Build up</b>	Tăng lên, ca ngợi
8	<b>Breathe in = take in = inhale</b>	Hít vào
9	<b>Calm down</b>	Bình tĩnh
10	<b>Clear out</b>	Cuốn xéo, dọn sạch
11	<b>Care for</b>	Chăm sóc, thích
	<b>Care about</b>	Quan tâm
12	<b>Clean up</b>	Dọn dẹp
13	<b>Call for</b>	Cần, đòi hỏi, yêu cầu
	<b>Call out</b>	Gọi to, hét to
	<b>Call off</b>	Hủy
	<b>Call up</b>	Gọi cho ai/gọi đi lính
	<b>Carry on</b>	Tiếp tục
	<b>Carry out</b>	Tiến hành, thực hiện
	<b>Carry away</b>	Phấn khích, kích động
<b>Carry over</b>	Chuyển vào, đi vào	
14	<b>Cut down</b>	chặt/ đốn
	<b>Cut off</b>	cắt, cúp, ngừng cung cấp (điện, gas...)
	<b>Cut in</b>	xen vào, ngắt lời
	<b>Cut down on</b>	cắt giảm
15	<b>Crop up = happen or appear unexpectedly</b>	Xảy ra một cách bất ngờ
16	<b>Come up with</b>	Nảy ra ý tưởng
	<b>Come into</b>	Thừa kế
	<b>Come up</b>	Xảy ra
	<b>Come out</b>	Lộ ra, lộ ra, tung ra, phát hành
	<b>Come on</b>	Thôi nào, tiếp tục nào
	<b>Come off</b>	Thành công
	<b>Come across</b>	Tình cờ gặp
	<b>Come in</b>	Bước vào
	<b>Come in for</b>	Chuốc lấy, nhận lấy
	<b>Come around</b>	Tỉnh lại
	<b>Come up to</b>	Đạt tới
17	<b>Dip into</b>	Đọc lướt
18	<b>Die out</b>	Tuyệt chủng
	<b>Die of</b>	Chết vì bệnh gì
19	<b>Dress up</b>	Cải trang, đóng giả

20	<b>Drop out of</b> <b>Drop in on = pay a short visit</b>	Bỏ cuộc Tạt qua, ghé qua
21	<b>Fall over</b>	Đổ sụp xuống, ngã, phá sản
	<b>Fall for</b>	Mê tít, yêu ai
	<b>Fall behind</b>	Tụt lại, chậm lại
	<b>Fall back on</b>	Phải cần tới, phải dùng tới
	<b>Fall out with</b>	Cãi cọ với
22	<b>Fill in</b> <b>Fill up</b> <b>Fill out</b>	Điền vào mẫu đơn Đổ đầy, làm đầy Mập ra, béo ra
23	<b>Grow up</b>	Lớn lên
24	<b>Jot down = note down</b>	Ghi tóm tắt
25	<b>Go through</b>	Trải qua
	<b>Go ahead</b>	Tiến hành
	<b>Go on with st = continue with st</b>	Tiếp tục với cái gì
	<b>Go out</b>	Mất điện, ra ngoài, đi chơi
	<b>Go on = continue</b>	Tiếp tục
	<b>Go away</b>	Đi xa, đi đi, cắt đi
	<b>Go back</b>	Quay lại
	<b>Go back on</b>	Thất hứa
	<b>Go beyond</b>	Vượt quá
	<b>Go off</b>	Đổ chuông, nổ tung, thiu thối, mất hứng
	<b>Go over</b>	Xem lại, ôn lại
	<b>Go by</b>	Trôi qua, tuột mất
	<b>Go up &gt; go down</b>	Tăng lên > giảm xuống
	<b>Go down with</b>	Mắc bệnh
	<b>Go in for</b>	Thích thú, tham gia
<b>Go into</b>	Điều tra, xem xét	
26	<b>Get around = travel</b> <b>Get over = recover from</b> <b>Get through</b> <b>Get into</b> <b>Get by</b> <b>Get off</b> <b>Get on</b>	Đi lại Vượt qua cú sốc/bệnh tật Vượt qua kì thi, hoàn thành Quan tâm, hứng thú với cái gì Xoay sở để sống qua khó khăn Xuống xe/tàu/máy bay lên xe/tàu/máy bay
27	<b>Give up = stop = quit</b> <b>Give off</b> <b>Give in</b> <b>Give out</b> <b>Give away</b>	Từ bỏ Tỏa ra, nhả ra, thải ra Nhân nhượng Cạn kiệt Tiết lộ, phân phát
28	<b>Hold up = delay</b>	Đình trệ, trì hoãn

	<b>Hold back</b>	Ngăn lại
	<b>Hold on</b>	Chờ; giữ chắc; cầm
	<b>Hold over</b>	Hoãn
29	<b>Hurry up</b>	Nhanh lên
30	<b>Hand out</b>	Phân phát
	<b>Hand in</b>	Nộp
31	<b>Keep up/pace with = catch up with</b>	Theo kịp, đuổi kịp
	<b>Keep on</b>	Tiếp tục
	<b>Keep away</b>	Tránh xa
	<b>Keep in with</b>	Duy trì mối quan hệ tốt đẹp với ai
32	<b>Look up</b>	Tra cứu
	<b>Look after = take care of</b>	Chăm sóc
	<b>Look around</b>	Ngó nghiêng, thăm thú
	<b>Look down on</b>	Coi thường
	<b>Look up to</b>	Kính trọng
	<b>Look at</b>	Ngắm nhìn
	<b>Look for</b>	Tìm kiếm
	<b>Look forward to</b>	Mong chờ
	<b>Look into</b>	Điều tra, xem xét
	<b>Look out (for)</b>	Coi chừng, trông chừng
	<b>Look over</b>	Xem qua
33	<b>Lie down</b>	Nằm nghỉ
34	<b>Lay down</b>	Đề ra
35	<b>Mull over</b>	Suy nghĩ kỹ
36	<b>Make up for</b>	Bù đắp cho
	<b>Make up</b>	Trang điểm, bịa đặt, dựng chuyện, quyết định, làm hòa, chiếm (tỉ lệ, %)
	<b>Be made up of</b>	Tạo nên bởi
	<b>Make away with</b>	Cuốn đi
	<b>Make for</b>	Tiến về hướng
	<b>Make out</b>	Nhìn, nhận ra, hiểu
37	<b>Pick up</b>	Nhặt; đón
38	<b>Point at</b>	Chỉ vào
39	<b>Pray for</b>	Câu nguyện
40	<b>Pass away = die</b>	Qua đời/ chết
	<b>Pass down</b>	Lưu truyền, truyền lại
	<b>Pass over</b>	Lờ đi, né tránh
41	<b>Put up with = tolerate</b>	Chịu đựng
	<b>Put across</b>	Trình bày, giải thích
	<b>Put on</b>	Mặc, đội; biểu diễn

	<b>Put off</b>	Trì hoãn; khiến cho ai không còn thích nữa
	<b>Put aside</b>	Để dành
	<b>Put away</b>	Dọn đi, cất đi, để dành
	<b>Put back</b>	Trả lại (đưa về đúng vị trí)
	<b>Put through</b>	Kết nối điện thoại
	<b>Put up</b>	Dựng lên
	<b>Put sb up</b>	Cho ai đó ở nhờ
	<b>Put out</b>	Dập tắt
42	<b>Pull down</b>	ủi đổ, phá bỏ
43	<b>Result in</b>	Dẫn đến
44	<b>Run on st</b>	Chạy bằng cái gì
	<b>Run off</b>	Bỏ đi, rửa trôi
	<b>Run out of st</b>	Hết sạch, hết nhãn cái gì
	<b>Run out</b>	Cạn kiệt
	<b>Slow down</b>	Làm giảm
	<b>Speed up</b>	Tăng tốc
45	<b>Settle down</b>	ổn định, định cư
46	<b>Start up</b>	Khởi nghiệp
47	<b>Save up</b>	Tiết kiệm
48	<b>Set out</b>	Bắt đầu thực hiện một kế hoạch/ hành động
	<b>Set up</b>	Thành lập
	<b>Set off</b>	Khởi hành
49	<b>Stand in for sb</b>	Làm thay cho ai
	<b>Stand up</b>	Đứng lên
	<b>Stand for</b>	Viết tắt, tượng trưng cho
	<b>Stand out</b>	Nổi bật
	<b>Stand up for</b>	ủng hộ
50	<b>Ponder on/upon/over</b>	Suy nghĩ về, cân nhắc về; trầm tư
51	<b>Show off</b>	Khoe khoang
	<b>Show up = turn up = arrive</b>	Đến
52	<b>Stay up</b>	Thức
53	<b>Spread over</b>	Kéo dài
54	<b>Think back on = recall</b>	Hồi tưởng lại, nhớ lại
55	<b>Talk back to sb</b>	Cãi lại, nói lại
56	<b>Take after</b>	Giống
	<b>Take off</b>	Cởi, cất cánh, thành công
	<b>Take in</b>	Hấp thụ, hít vào, hiểu
	<b>Take out</b>	Nhổ, đổ
	<b>Take away</b>	Mang đi, kéo theo
	<b>Take on</b>	Đảm nhiệm, thuê mượn
	<b>Take over</b>	Tiếp quản, chiếm đoạt

	<b>Take up</b>	<i>Bắt đầu một thói quen/sở thích</i>
57	<b>Turn on &gt;&lt; turn off</b>	<i>Bật &gt;&lt; tắt</i>
	<b>Turn up = show up = arrive</b>	<i>Đến</i>
	<b>Turn into</b>	<i>Biến thành</i>
	<b>Turn out</b>	<i>Hóa ra</i>
	<b>Turn down</b>	<i>Từ chối, vạ nhỏ</i>
58	<b>Try out = test</b>	<i>Kiểm tra</i>
	<b>Try on</b>	<i>Thử đồ</i>
59	<b>Throw away</b>	<i>Vứt đi</i>
60	<b>Wipe out</b>	<i>Xóa sổ</i>
61	<b>Wake up</b>	<i>Thức giấc</i>
62	<b>Wind down = relax</b>	<i>Thư giãn</i>
63	<b>Wait for sb/st</b>	<i>Đợi ai/đợi cái gì</i>
64	<b>Wash away</b>	<i>Cuốn trôi</i>
	<b>Wash up</b>	<i>Giặt, rửa</i>
65	<b>Use up = run out</b>	<i>Dùng hết, cạn kiệt</i>

• PRACTICES

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.*

- It is very important for a firm or a company to keep \_\_\_\_\_ the changes in the market.  
A. pace of    B. track about    C. touch with    D. up with
- The forecast has revealed that the world's reserves of fossil fuel will have \_\_\_\_\_ by 2015.  
A. taken over    B. caught up    C. used off    D. run out
- We intend to \_\_\_\_\_ with the old system as soon as we have developed a better one.  
A. do up    B. do in    C. do away    D. do down
- Put your shoes on properly or you'll \_\_\_\_\_ over.  
A. get    B. turn    C. fall    D. bend
- The teacher made a difficult question, but at last, Joe \_\_\_\_\_ a good answer.  
A. came up with    B. came up to    C. came up against    D. came up for
- Unexpectedly the lights \_\_\_\_\_ and we were left in darkness.  
A. turned down    B. went out    C. put off    D. gave away
- The train to the center of the city was \_\_\_\_\_ by a heavy snowfall.  
A. held up    B. took back    C. put off    D. given out
- My hat has just \_\_\_\_\_ behind the sofa although I thought I had lost it.  
A. turned up    B. gone away    C. run into    D. come across
- Jim's \_\_\_\_\_ flu again. That's the third time this year.  
A. gone down with    B. put up with    C. led up to    D. come up with
- Considering how little they have got in common, it's surprising how well they \_\_\_\_\_ together.  
A. get through    B. get on    C. get down    D. get up
- Her brother was offered the manager's job, but he \_\_\_\_\_. He said he didn't want the responsibilities.  
A. turned it off    B. turned it down    C. threw it away    D. put it off
- Roger Federer couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ the possibility of withdrawing from the championship because of injury.  
A. rule out    B. pass over    C. come off    D. do without

13. He is disappointed at not being offered the job, but I think he will\_\_\_\_\_it.  
A. turn off B. fill in C. get over D. take after
14. Lucy was late for school this morning because the alarm didn't \_\_\_\_\_as usual.  
A. ring off B. go off C. get off D. take off
15. His son\_\_\_\_\_him so much that we can't see any differences between them.  
A. takes after B. looks up C. takes in D. looks over
16. My sister-in-law is beloved by all my relatives for she can\_\_\_\_\_all right after getting married.  
A. get on well with B. get up C. get over D. get out of
17. I know we had an argument, but now I'd quite like to\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. look down B. make up C. fall out D. bring up
18. Don't worry about trying to catch last train home, as we can easily\_\_\_\_\_you\_\_\_\_\_for the night.  
A. keep/off B. put/up C. take/out D. set/off
19. The thieves ran away when the burglar alarm\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. went out B. went on C. went off D. went
20. Boys! Put your toys\_\_\_\_\_. It is time to go to bed. Don't stay\_\_\_\_\_late.  
A. around/for B. away/up C. down/off D. off/to
21. At present, we are\_\_\_\_\_an anti-drug campaign.  
A. setting up for B. taking part C. joining with D. carrying out
22. You should have\_\_\_\_\_those shares when they were cheap.  
A. taken out B. sold off C. bought up D. taken over
23. I'll\_\_\_\_\_you\_\_\_\_\_to our research department. Please hold on.  
A. put - away B. put - out C. put - through D. put - up
24. Jane's very modest, always\_\_\_\_\_her success.  
A. playing down B. turning around C. keeping down D. pushing back
25. Those companies were\_\_\_\_\_due to some seriously financial problems.  
A. taken off B. set up C. wiped out D. gone over
26. Deborah is going to take extra lessons to\_\_\_\_\_what she missed while she was away.  
A. catch up on B. cut down on C. put up with D. take up with
27. Mrs. Moore waited for the class to\_\_\_\_\_before she continued.  
A. bring up B. pass away C. settle down D. bring on
28. I haven't\_\_\_\_\_my mind where to go for our holiday this year. I am quite busy at work.  
A. turn up B. made up C. break up D. changed
29. Since Carl was unable to pay his bill, after a couple of months, his telephone was  
A. cut off B. broken up C. dropped off D. rung up
30. I can\_\_\_\_\_the house being messy, but I hate it if it's not clean.  
A. lead up to B. come up with C. go down with D. put up with
31. Belinda Harrell\_\_\_\_\_taking her driving test until she finally passed it on her twenty-first attempt.  
A. kept on B. cleared off C. used up D. wore out
32. James is now too old to live on his own, so he is being\_\_\_\_\_by his daughter.  
A. found out B. brought up C. moved on D. looked after
33. We arranged to meet at the station, but she didn't\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. get through B. turn up C. walk out D. wait on
34. Don't worry we'll have to wait a little longer because I'm sure he will\_\_\_\_\_.



- A. turn down    B. turn in    C. turn into    D. turn up
35. When they \_\_\_\_\_ for the beach the sun was shining, but by the time they arrived it had clouded over.  
A. went out    B. went off    C. set off    D. left out
36. When Mr. Spendthrift ran out of money, he \_\_\_\_\_ his mother for help.  
A. fell back on    B. fell upon    C. fell behind    D. fell in with
37. If you can't remember his phone number, you can always \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ in the phone book.  
A. take/down    B. look/up    C. find/out    D. bring/about?"
38. If a machine stops moving or working normally, you can say that it has \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. cut off    B. wiped out    C. seized up    D. go off
39. Many people \_\_\_\_\_ television as their main source of information and entertainment.  
A. rely on    B. try on    C. put on    D. hold
40. It was so foggy that the driver couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ the traffic signs.  
A. make out    B. break out    C. keep out    D. take out
41. It took me 10 years to \_\_\_\_\_ enough money to travel around the country.  
A. set out    B. put away    C. put by    D. save aside
42. I think I should have \_\_\_\_\_ your mother while I was passing.  
A. dropped in on    B. come up with    C. got on with    D. run into
43. They thought they could deceive me but they were wrong. I could \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. see them off    B. see off them    C. see through them    D. see them through
44. I'm sorry I offended you. I \_\_\_\_\_ what I said.  
A. take back    B. get back    C. come back    D. get away
45. I hope I can \_\_\_\_\_ you to be there if I need any help.  
A. let know    B. make out    C. get through    D. count on
46. I don't know what we are going to \_\_\_\_\_ if I lose this job.  
A. get by    B. live on    C. give away    D. grow up
47. He is disappointed at not winning the competition, but he will soon \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
A. take after    B. get over    C. look after    D. go over
48. Though considered the king sport in many parts of the world, soccer has never really  
A. caught on    B. carried out    C. taken off    D. put through
49. When the manager of our company retires, the deputy manager will \_\_\_\_\_ that position.  
A. stand for    B. take over    C. catch on    D. hold on
50. The company management decided to \_\_\_\_\_ more workers to meet the production schedule.  
A. take on    B. make out    C. take over    D. make up

*Complete each sentence with the most appropriate word from the box.*

<i>put him out</i>	<i>keep up with</i>	<i>brought in</i>	<i>go back</i>	<i>take up</i>
<i>left out</i>	<i>wear off</i>	<i>looked up</i>	<i>look after</i>	<i>hung up</i>

- I won't \_\_\_\_\_ any more of your time.
- She \_\_\_\_\_ from her book as I entered the room.
- He hadn't been asked to the party and was feeling very \_\_\_\_\_.
- She doesn't want to \_\_\_\_\_ to her husband
- Two men were \_\_\_\_\_ for questioning.
- Who's going to \_\_\_\_\_ the children while you're away?
- These pills should \_\_\_\_\_ for a few hours.
- The novelty of married life was beginning to \_\_\_\_\_.

9. After I \_\_\_\_\_ I remembered what I'd wanted to say.  
 10. If you do not \_\_\_\_\_ the payments you could lose your home.

*Complete each sentence with the most appropriate word from the box.*

<i>fell out with</i>	<i>fell for</i>	<i>brings back</i>	<i>fallen behind</i>	<i>comes up</i>
<i>came into</i>	<i>fall back on</i>	<i>over</i>	<i>come up with</i>	<i>dealing with</i>

- The manager is good at \_\_\_\_\_ difficult customers.
- That song \_\_\_\_\_ such fond memories of my childhood.
- I don't know what happened-one minute, she was talking to me, and the next minute, she just fell \_\_\_\_\_!
- The moment I met my wife, I \_\_\_\_\_ her completely.
- I've \_\_\_\_\_ with that show-can you tell me what happened in the latest episode?
- With all of these medical bills, I just don't have any more money to \_\_\_\_\_.
- Apparently, Gina \_\_\_\_\_ Dave last week, and now they're not talking to each other at all.
- The board must \_\_\_\_\_ a plan to put the city back on its financial feet.
- I think she \_\_\_\_\_ all of that money when her grandmother died.
- There are job vacancies from time to time. I'll let you know if anything \_\_\_\_\_.

*Complete each sentence with the most appropriate word from the box.*

<i>get over</i>	<i>back</i>	<i>in for</i>	<i>come down with</i>	<i>get away with</i>
<i>broke out</i>	<i>coming up</i>	<i>bringing in</i>	<i>bring up</i>	<i>broke down</i>

- By Friday night Lucy had \_\_\_\_\_ a terrible illness that kept her feverishly in bed on Saturday, Sunday and Monday.
- The plan to demolish the old theatre came \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of criticism.
- The new contracts system we're \_\_\_\_\_ the autumn will make a huge difference to the way we deal with our clients.
- It's not our policy to let kidnapers \_\_\_\_\_ their crimes.
- Looking through those old photographs brought \_\_\_\_\_ all my memories of the wonderful summers I spent in Cornwall.
- This issue just keeps \_\_\_\_\_ again and again.
- Don't \_\_\_\_\_ that topic with Sarah or she'll get annoyed.
- Police were called after fighting \_\_\_\_\_ among a group of around 40 men.
- When I almost reached the destination, the car suddenly \_\_\_\_\_.
- She is currently seeing a psychiatrist to \_\_\_\_\_ her fear of answering the door.

*Complete each sentence with the most appropriate word from the box.*

<i>makes up</i>	<i>went down with</i>	<i>go in for</i>	<i>make fun of</i>	<i>look into</i>
<i>looked back on</i>	<i>looking after</i>	<i>went through</i>	<i>keep up with</i>	<i>make out</i>

- Schoolchildren shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ those who are intellectually inferior to them.
- George \_\_\_\_\_ his career in government with a great deal of satisfaction.
- She walks so fast that I can never \_\_\_\_\_ her.
- His school had suggested he \_\_\_\_\_ the Young Musician of the Year competition.
- Health experts from the WHO have been striving to \_\_\_\_\_ the origin of the coronavirus.
- People in the central Vietnam \_\_\_\_\_ a deluge of natural disasters in 2020.
- Instead of reading stories from books, Michelle's father usually \_\_\_\_\_ stories to lull her to sleep.
- It's hard work \_\_\_\_\_ three children all day.
- I need glasses! I can't \_\_\_\_\_ what's written on the board.

10. Three people in my neighborhood \_\_\_\_\_ with the deadly disease in just 3 days.

Complete each sentence with the most appropriate word from the box.

made	look to	made up for	for	away with
keep pace with	go over	away	down on	over

- In China's largest psychiatric facility, there is a serious lack of resources but the staffs try hard to \_\_\_\_\_ this in their treatment of the patients.
- Come here next week because the boss has gone \_\_\_\_\_.
- She says she has kissed and \_\_\_\_\_ up with Nigel, and the reunion was a fun night.
- You should go \_\_\_\_\_ the report before you submit it to the director of the company.
- Certainly, man must \_\_\_\_\_ the future, and find ways of providing for his needs.
- The dog went \_\_\_\_\_ him and knocked him down.
- He smashed the window and made \_\_\_\_\_ a number of items of jewellery.
- Check for spellings, \_\_\_\_\_ your analysis in your own minds just to ensure that you have not made a monumentally large mistake.
- My mother had social pretensions and looked \_\_\_\_\_ most of our neighbours.
- They say the law needs to \_\_\_\_\_ two big changes in the marketplace.

## PART IV : COLLOCATIONS

### • THEORY

**Collocation** là một cụm gồm 2 hay nhiều từ thường hay đi cùng với nhau, và theo một trật tự nhất định. Chúng không có quy tắc hay một công thức cụ thể.

Để có được cách diễn đạt tự nhiên như người bản ngữ thì chúng ta phải học các cụm collocations đi với nhau. Điều này giúp chúng ta có được cách diễn đạt phong phú hơn. Vì vậy mỗi học sinh nên có trong tay một quyển từ điển về collocations.

### Các loại Collocations

Có một vài hình thức khác nhau được tạo thành từ sự kết hợp giữa động từ (Verb), danh từ (Noun) và tính từ (Adjective). Có một số hình thức như: Adv + Adj; Adj + N; N + N; N + V; V + N; V + Prepositional phrase; V + Adv

### Sự kết hợp từ với các động từ thông dụng

1	A detailed action plan	Bản chi tiết kế hoạch hành động
2	A pat on the back	Khen ngợi, ca tụng
3	A wide range/variety of	Nhiều, đa dạng
4	Accidentally come up with= hit on/upon	Vô tình nảy ra ý tưởng
5	Against one's will	Trái với mong muốn của ai
6	At stake = at risk = in danger	Gặp nguy hiểm, bị đe dọa
7	Be in two minds about st	Lưỡng lự, chưa quyết định được
8	Be quick/slow on the uptake	Nhanh/chậm tiếp thu
9	Be under misapprehension that + clause	Hiểu lầm rằng
10	Bumper/good crops	Vụ mùa bội thu
11	By leaps and bounds	Tiến bộ nhanh chóng
12	Cash crops	Cây thương phẩm
13	Chance upon sb/st	Vô tình thấy/tìm thấy ai/cái gì
14	Change your tune	Thay đổi ý kiến hoàn toàn
15	Close to the bone	Xúc phạm

16	<b>Come to an end</b>	<i>Kết thúc</i>
17	<b>Conquer one's nerves to do st</b>	<i>Chế ngự nỗi sợ hãi để làm gì</i>
18	<b>Contribute to st/doing st</b> <b>= make a contribution to st/doing st</b>	<i>Đóng góp, cống hiến vào cái gì/làm gì</i>
19	<b>Dispose of = get rid of</b>	<i>Loại bỏ, xử lí</i>
20	<b>Do a degree in st</b>	<i>Học để lấy bằng (lĩnh vực gì)</i>
21	<b>Do a project on st</b>	<i>Làm dự án về vấn đề gì</i>
22	<b>Do damage to sb/st</b>	<i>Gây tổn hại tới ai/cái gì</i>
23	<b>Do harm to Do good to</b>	<i>Gây hại Có lợi</i>
24	<b>Do harm to sb/st</b>	<i>Gây hại cho ai/cái gì</i>
25	<b>Do/cause damage to sb/st</b>	<i>Gây ra thiệt hại cho ai/cái gì</i>
26	<b>Domestic violence</b>	<i>Bạo lực gia đình</i>
27	<b>Earn/make money</b>	<i>Kiểm tiền</i>
28	<b>Fall asleep = doze off</b>	<i>Ngủ thiếp đi</i>
29	<b>Fall in love with sb</b>	<i>Yêu ai</i>
30	<b>Fight/struggle for st</b> <b>Fight/struggle against st</b>	<i>Đấu tranh cho cái gì</i> <i>Đấu tranh chống lại cái gì</i>
31	<b>From scratch = from the beginning</b>	<i>Ngay từ đầu</i>
32	<b>From time to time For the time being</b>	<i>Thỉnh thoảng Trong thời gian này</i>
33	<b>Gain a victory over sb/st</b>	<i>Giành chiến thắng trước ai/cái gì</i>
34	<b>Gain experience in st</b>	<i>Đạt được kinh nghiệm trong lĩnh vực gì</i>
35	<b>Gestation period</b>	<i>Thời kỳ thai nghén</i>
36	<b>Get a discount</b>	<i>Giảm giá, bớt giá, chiết khấu</i>
37	<b>get access to st</b>	<i>Truy cập vào cái gì</i>
38	<b>Get one's permission</b>	<i>Xin phép ai</i>
39	<b>Get/be exposed to</b>	<i>Tiếp xúc với</i>
40	<b>Give birth to sb</b>	<i>Sinh ra ai</i>
41	<b>Give one's love/regard to sb</b>	<i>Gửi lời hỏi thăm tới ai</i>
42	<b>Give preference to</b>	<i>Thích/chuộng/ưu ái hơn</i>
43	<b>Go hand in hand with st</b>	<i>Có mối liên hệ chặt chẽ</i>
44	<b>Go round the bend</b>	<i>Tức giận, cẩu kính</i>
45	<b>Go to one's head</b>	<i>Khiến ai kiêu ngạo vì nghĩ mình là người quan trọng</i>
46	<b>Hang out with sb = spend time with sb</b>	<i>La cà với ai</i>
47	<b>Harbor the dream of</b>	<i>ấp ủ giấc mơ</i>
48	<b>Have a good relationship with sb</b> <b>= get on well with sb</b> <b>= get along with sb</b> <b>= be/keep on good terms with sb</b>	<i>Có mối quan hệ tốt với ai</i>
49	<b>Have an interest in st</b>	<i>Có hứng thú/quan tâm tới cái gì</i>
50	<b>Have attachment to st</b>	<i>Gắn bó với cái gì</i>
51	<b>Have impact on/influence on/effect on sb/st</b>	<i>Có tác động/ảnh hưởng tới ai/cái gì</i>

52	Have occasion to do st = need to do st	Cần làm gì
53	Have some days off	Có vài ngày nghỉ
54	Have st in common	Có cái gì đó chung
55	Have the legal right to do st	Có quyền làm gì
56	Have trouble/difficulty (in) doing st	Gặp khó khăn trong việc làm gì
57	Have/keep (all) one's wits about sb	Phản ứng nhanh chóng khi điều không mong muốn xảy ra
58	Hold the belief	Giữ/có niềm tin rằng
59	Hold/have a conversation with sb	Trò chuyện với ai
60	Hold/have discussions with sb about/on st	Thảo luận với ai về vấn đề gì
61	Hook on = be crazy about = absorb in = get addicted to	Nghiện, say mê cái gì
62	Intend to do st = have intention of doing st	Có ý định làm gì
63	Keep sb awake	Làm cho ai thức
64	Kick/get rid of habits	Từ bỏ thói quen
65	lay claim to	Tuyên bố chủ quyền đối với
66	Lay the table	Dọn bàn
67	Life span/expectancy	Tuổi thọ
68	Live in harmony with = coexist peacefully with	Chung sống hòa bình
69	Lose/reduce weight Gain/ put on weight	Giảm cân Tăng cân
70	Maintain eye contact with sb	Duy trì giao tiếp bằng mắt với ai
71	Make a commitment to st/doing st	Tận tụy, tận tâm cho cái gì/làm gì
72	Make a decision on st	Quyết định cái gì
73	Make a difference	Tạo ra sự khác biệt
74	Make comparison Compare sb/st with sb/st Compared to/with sb/st	So sánh So sánh ai/cái gì với ai/cái gì Được so sánh với ai/cái gì
75	Make innovation to st	Cải tiến cái gì
76	Make one's effort to do st	Cố gắng hết sức để làm gì
77	Make prediction = predict (v)	Dự đoán
78	Make progress	Tiến bộ
79	Make up one's mind	Tự mình quyết định
80	Meet one's wishes	Đáp ứng mong mỏi của ai
81	Meet the challenge	Đương đầu với thách thức
82	National anthem	Quốc ca
83	Object to/have objection to	Phản đối
84	On the flip side = on the other hand	Mặt khác
85	Pay a heavy price to do st	Trả giá đắt để làm gì
86	Play a role/part in st	Đóng vai trò trong cái gì

87	ponder on/upon/over	Suy nghĩ về, cân nhắc về; trầm tư
88	Pull one's socks up	Nỗ lực để trở nên tốt hơn
89	Put pressure on sb/st	Gây áp lực lên ai/cái gì
90	Realize the dream	Thực hiện giấc mơ
91	Satisfy one's need	Thỏa mãn nhu cầu của ai
92	See the point of = make sense of = understand	Hiểu
93	Sense of self	Cảm xúc, tự ý thức về bản thân
94	Set a good example to sb	Làm gương tốt cho ai noi theo
95	Set st in motion = begin st	Bắt đầu cho cái gì
96	Slow but sure	Chậm mà chắc
97	Smash hit	Bài hát/bộ phim/vở kịch thành công, nổi tiếng
98	Social standing	Vị trí xã hội
99	Squeeze in/out/through	Chen lấn
100	Stuck one's neck out = take a risk	Liều lĩnh
101	Suit one's taste Suit one's need	Phù hợp với thị hiếu của ai Phù hợp với nhu cầu của ai
102	Take a rest = have a break	Nghỉ giải lao
103	Take actions to do st	Hành động làm gì
104	Take advantage of = make use of	Lợi dụng, tận dụng
105	Take measures to do st	Có những biện pháp để làm gì
106	Take naps	Ngủ trưa
107	Take notes = jot down = write down	Ghi chép, viết tóm tắt ý chính
108	Take photos of sb	Chụp ảnh cho ai
109	Take photos of sb/st	Chụp ảnh ai/cái gì
110	Take precautions	Đề phòng, phòng ngừa
111	Take pride in st/sb = be proud of st/sb	Tự hào về về gì/về ai
112	Take/have priority over st = give priority to st	ưu tiên việc gì hơn
113	Take/use the occasion to do st	Nhân dịp này để làm gì
114	Tend to do st = have a tendency of doing st	Có xu hướng làm gì
115	Widen one's knowledge	Mở rộng kiến thức
116	With a view to doing st	Với mục đích làm gì
117	With flying color	Xuất sắc, thành công

• PRACTICES

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

- He \_\_\_\_\_ a very positive contribution to the success of the project.  
A. took    B. made    C. did    D. caused
- I'm afraid I'm not a very good advertisement for the diet since I've actually \_\_\_\_\_ on weight!  
A. get    B. take    C. catch    D. put
- These measures have been taken \_\_\_\_\_ increasing the company's profits.  
A. with a view to    B. for fear of    C. on purpose    D. in order to

4. You must \_\_\_\_\_ all reasonable precautions to protect yourself and your family.  
A. take    B. do    C. make    D. cause
5. It's difficult to \_\_\_\_\_ accurate predictions about the effects on the environment.  
A. take    B. put    C. make    D. do
6. The search for a new vaccine will \_\_\_\_\_ priority over all other medical research.  
A. make    B. cause    C. take    D. do
7. Many people are more interested in job satisfaction than in \_\_\_\_\_ large amounts of money.  
A. earning    B. causing    C. taking    D. doing
8. She used to be a heavy smoker but she \_\_\_\_\_ the habit last year.  
A. skipped    B. kicked    C. abandoned    D. stopped
9. I got into drugs because I was \_\_\_\_\_ around with the wrong people.  
A. hanging    B. playing    C. bringing    D. taking
10. At first, Polly and Luna didn't \_\_\_\_\_ very well, but now they are great friends.  
A. take on    B. get along    C. get by    D. take over
11. I think you should go \_\_\_\_\_ a nap. You look like you're about to fall asleep, standing up!  
A. do    B. make    C. take    D. get
12. The doctor prescribed some pills and told her to \_\_\_\_\_ a week's rest.  
A. own    B. have    C. make    D. put
13. He was so exhausted that he \_\_\_\_\_ asleep at his desk.  
A. fell    B. broke    C. made    D. dropped
14. The kidney \_\_\_\_\_ a vital role in the removal of waste products from the blood.  
A. makes    B. plays    C. takes    D. causes
15. The food is ready - please could you \_\_\_\_\_ the table for me?  
A. make    B. take    C. lay    D. hang
16. I'm not sure what flavor I want - I'm still \_\_\_\_\_ my mind up.  
A. turning    B. making    C. staying    D. taking
17. I try to \_\_\_\_\_ an example for my employees by always arriving to work on time, replying to emails and phone calls promptly, and taking care of problems as they arise.  
A. stand    B. put    C. set    D. bring
18. I've always \_\_\_\_\_ an interest in astronomy.  
A. made    B. had    C. did    D. put
19. I \_\_\_\_\_ no intention of going to her wedding because I am really busy.  
A. get    B. have    C. put    D. make
20. Barry was \_\_\_\_\_ of the fact that he had never missed a day's work in his life.  
A. fond    B. famous    C. proud    D. eager
21. We \_\_\_\_\_ great pride in offering the best service in town.  
A. take    B. make    C. cause    D. put
22. We \_\_\_\_\_ to get cold winters and warm, dry summers in this part of the country.  
A. appreciate    B. tend    C. refuse    D. agree
23. As we \_\_\_\_\_ experience of interpreting the data, we were able to work faster.  
A. achieved    B. gained    C. applied    D. made
24. Students must also do a \_\_\_\_\_ on a topic of their own choice.  
A. job    B. project    C. task    D. mission
25. After significant losses last year, the company now \_\_\_\_\_ the challenge of trying to repair its reputation with investors.

- A. meets    B. comes    C. makes    D. stands
26. She had the wealth and social \_\_\_\_\_ to command respect.  
A. station    B. standing    C. ranking    D. grade
27. We live in an increasingly secular society, in which religion has less and less \_\_\_\_\_ on our daily lives.  
A. change    B. influence    C. power    D. outcome
28. I wanted to impress Juliet, so I \_\_\_\_\_ myself in music by her favorite band.  
A. turned    B. took    C. absorbed    D. abandoned
29. Can we fix the current computer system, or would it be better to start from \_\_\_\_\_ with a new system?  
A. opening    B. launch    C. scratch    D. activation
30. You need a password to get \_\_\_\_\_ to the computer system.  
A. touch    B. attachment    C. link    D. access
31. Simon was so \_\_\_\_\_ in his book that he didn't even notice me come in.  
A. absorbed    B. took    C. turned    D. addicted
32. If you have the vote in an election, you have the legal \_\_\_\_\_ to indicate your choice.  
A. attitude    B. option    C. chance    D. Right
33. Fish \_\_\_\_\_ for survival when the water level drops in the lake.  
A. struggle    B. eager    C. compensate    D. call
34. Children are being \_\_\_\_\_ to new dangers on the internet.  
A. connected    B. exposed    C. contributed    D. addicted
35. The education system must \_\_\_\_\_ the needs of all children.  
A. satisfy    B. provide    C. please    D. complete
36. \_\_\_\_\_ violence can take many forms, including emotional, sexual and physical abuse and threats of abuse.  
A. Household    B. Domestic    C. Married    D. Internal
37. We \_\_\_\_\_ preference to those who have worked with us for a long time.  
A. take    B. provide    C. give    D. form
38. His comments about her size were a bit close to the \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. skeleton    B. bone    C. head    D. heart
39. I'll have to work really long hours and be away from my family for long stretches of time, but, on the \_\_\_\_\_ side, I'll get the opportunity to travel around the world.  
A. flip    B. toss    C. verge    D. reverse
40. This deal could really help the business get out of debt. Though, on the other \_\_\_\_\_, you'd just be indebted to the government instead.  
A. side    B. aspect    C. hand    D. matter
41. I will consult colleagues before \_\_\_\_\_ a final decision about how to proceed.  
A. making    B. taking    C. putting    D. getting
42. I \_\_\_\_\_ no objection to an article discussing a non-mainstream viewpoint.  
A. make    B. have    C. take    D. put
43. Skilful presenters are good at \_\_\_\_\_ eye contact with an audience.  
A. maintaining    B. catching    C. keeping    D. causing
44. We will \_\_\_\_\_ discussions with employee representatives about possible redundancies.  
A. make    B. put    C. keep    D. hold
45. We \_\_\_\_\_ a discussion with them about the differences between Britain and the US.



- A. made    B. took    C. had    D. caught
46. I carry a notebook so that I can \_\_\_\_\_ down any ideas.  
A. take    B. jot    C. put    D. lay
47. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ advantage of the good weather and go to the beach.  
A. make    B. take    C. keep    D. catch
48. It will be a long time before we can begin to make \_\_\_\_\_ of this tragedy.  
A. sense    B. meaning    C. awareness    D. impression
49. She's in two \_\_\_\_\_ about accepting his invitation.  
A. hands    B. eyes    C. minds    D. heads
50. Police are \_\_\_\_\_ significant progress in fighting computer crime.  
A. taking    B. keeping    C. putting    D. making
51. I had considerable \_\_\_\_\_ in persuading her to leave.  
A. matter    B. difficulty    C. problem    D. strain
52. Some people \_\_\_\_\_ beliefs about the world that are not supported by science.  
A. hold    B. keep    C. impose    D. take
53. The bond offers great benefits for issuers without \_\_\_\_\_ any harm to investors.  
A. doing    B. putting    C. having    D. catching
54. I was \_\_\_\_\_ the misapprehension that the course was for complete beginners.  
A. at    B. upon    C. under    D. into
55. She's \_\_\_\_\_ with some amazing scheme to double her income.  
A. showed up    B. come up    C. turned up    D. made up
56. One day he chanced \_\_\_\_\_ Emma's diary and began reading it.  
A. at    B. upon    C. into    D. across
57. He's a little slow on the \_\_\_\_\_, so you may have to repeat the instructions a few times.  
A. uptake    B. intake    C. outtake    D. retake
58. It's a lovely little place to visit, but I'd go round the \_\_\_\_\_ if I had to live there.  
A. beach    B. bridge    C. border    D. bend
59. He was against the idea to start with, but he soon changed his \_\_\_\_\_ when he realized how much money he'd get.  
A. voice    B. head    C. ear    D. tune
60. The only reason she stays late at work is to receive a pat on the \_\_\_\_\_ from her boss.  
A. head    B. shoulder    C. back    D. bone
61. I was worried that I wouldn't fit on the train after so many people got on ahead of me, but I managed to \_\_\_\_\_ in just before it departed.  
A. turn    B. squeeze    C. succeed    D. make
62. You have to \_\_\_\_\_ some risks to be successful in business and in life, but don't \_\_\_\_\_ your neck out for no good reason.  
A. take -stick    B. make - glue    C. do - adhere    D. cause - stick
63. Cycling is potentially very dangerous in the city - you have to \_\_\_\_\_ your wits about you.  
A. take    B. keep    C. make    D. control
64. Let's just stay focused on this for the \_\_\_\_\_ being. We can address other issues later in the meeting.  
A. time    B. moment    C. phase    D. stage
65. Our small company has been growing by \_\_\_\_\_ over the past year, thanks in no small part to our aggressive new marketing campaign.

- A. leaps and bounds    B. here and there    C. time to time    D. once in a blue moon
66. It's going to be slow but \_\_\_\_\_ writing my thesis, as I have to balance my part-time job with my research.  
A. certain    B. sure    C. definite    D. stable
67. Ford is definitely not a man to let a little success go to his \_\_\_\_\_. He knows he still has a lot to learn  
A. mind    B. brain    C. head    D. face
68. He's going to have to pull his \_\_\_\_\_ up if he wants to stay in the team.  
A. shoes    B. socks    C. sandal    D. hat
69. A number of companies have been putting \_\_\_\_\_ on politicians to ease up on corporate taxes and regulations.  
A. burden    B. weight    C. pressure    D. strain
70. We must \_\_\_\_\_ action to deal with the problem before it spreads to other areas.  
A. make    B. take    C. convey    D. spread
71. Recent discoveries about corruption have \_\_\_\_\_ serious damage to the company's reputation.  
A. taken    B. done    C. put    D. kept
72. The agency has put an end to new efforts to \_\_\_\_\_ of hazardous waste in sensitive environmental areas.  
A. emit    B. throw    C. cast    D. dispose
73. The prices are so much cheaper over there that I always feel like I'm \_\_\_\_\_ things at a discount.  
A. making    B. getting    C. putting    D. keeping
74. A variety of dishes were available to \_\_\_\_\_ all tastes.  
A. match    B. fix    C. suit    D. please
75. Exercise can \_\_\_\_\_ a big difference to your state of health.  
A. cause    B. make    C. change    D. take
76. Our company works \_\_\_\_\_ with market research firms to ensure that our clients' advertising reaches the broadest and most well suited audiences possible.  
A. hand in hand    B. cash in hand    C. at hand    D. all hands on deck
77. That she passed the exam with flying \_\_\_\_\_ made her parents proud of her.  
A. colors    B. clouds    C. marks    D. Points
78. The local clubs are \_\_\_\_\_ every effort to interest more young people.  
A. inventing    B. making    C. taking    D. causing
79. I know you're discouraged about having to look for a new job, but take the \_\_\_\_\_ to consider different areas of work that you might be interested in.  
A. occasion    B. opportunity    C. prospect    D. chance
80. Festivities came to a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ well after the sun had risen the next morning.  
A. final    B. death    C. point    D. end
81. We had to \_\_\_\_\_ permission from the city to build an extension to our house.  
A. get    B. take    C. earn    D. offer
82. I'm sorry I can't be there, but please give my \_\_\_\_\_ to Grandma.  
A. heart    B. admiration    C. love    D. gratitude
83. We are looking forward to a \_\_\_\_\_ crop.  
A. wealthy    B. bumper    C. successful    D. hard
84. They aim to offer a wide \_\_\_\_\_ of online services for travellers.  
A. number    B. amount    C. quantity    D. range

85. We cannot afford to take risks when people's lives are at \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. danger B. stake C. threat D. matter
86. I was forced to sign the agreement \_\_\_\_\_ my will.  
A. against B. oppose C. reverse D. into
87. Once the printing processes have been \_\_\_\_\_ in motion, they're not so easy to stop.  
A. made B. set C. kept D. caused
88. The Japanese government has taken various \_\_\_\_\_ against the new coronavirus, including requesting school closures and event cancellations.  
A. efforts B. measures C. determination D. methods
89. Angela \_\_\_\_\_ birth to a beautiful baby girl last night.  
A. took B. did C. gave D. made
90. The gestation \_\_\_\_\_ of a horse is about eleven months.  
A. phase B. stage C. period D. incubation
91. Life \_\_\_\_\_ in Europe increased greatly in the 20th century.  
A. expectancy B. expectation C. hope D. standard
92. He \_\_\_\_\_ in love with a young German student.  
A. dropped B. fell C. collapsed D. rose
93. It is difficult to \_\_\_\_\_ a comparison with her previous book- they are completely different.  
A. create B. cause C. take D. make
94. Children seem to learn more interesting things compared \_\_\_\_\_ when we were at school.  
A. to B. on C. at D. upon
95. I \_\_\_\_\_ no interest in seeing the movie.  
A. make B. have C. take D. keep
96. The office was so hot I nearly \_\_\_\_\_ off at my desk.  
A. took B. went C. dozed D. got
97. You've \_\_\_\_\_ some weight since the last time I saw you.  
A. missed B. lost C. forgotten D. seized
98. I hope you \_\_\_\_\_ the point of everything your mother and I do for you!  
A. view B. watch C. observe D. see
99. You should \_\_\_\_\_ careful note of what she tells you because she knows their strategy well.  
A. make B. take C. do D. get
100. These organizations have fought very hard \_\_\_\_\_ the rights and welfare of immigrants.  
A. about B. with C. for D. upon

## PART V : IDIOMS

### • THEORY

#### CÁC THÀNH NGỮ THƯỜNG DÙNG

- **cats and dogs:** rain heavily: mưa to

E.g: It's raining cats and dogs = It's raining heavily.

- **chalk and cheese: very different from each other:** khác nhau hoàn toàn

E.g: I don't have anything in common with my brother. We're like chalk and cheese.

- **here and there:** everywhere: mọi nơi

E.g: I have been looking here and there for the gift I bought for my girlfriend.

- *a hot potato: a problem, situation, etc. that is difficult and unpleasant to deal with (vấn đề nan giải,*

nóng hổi)

E.g: The issue of taxing domestic fuel has become a political hot potato.

- **at the drop of the hat:** immediately, instantly; without hesitating: ngay lập tức, không do dự

E.g: The company can't expect me to move my home and family at the drop of a hat.

- **back to the drawing board:** time to start from the beginning ; it is time to plan something over again:

*bắt đầu lại từ đầu*

E.g: They rejected our proposal, so it's back to the drawing board.

- *beat about the bush: to talk about something for a long time without coming to the main point: vòng vo tam quốc, không tập trung vào vấn đề chính*

E.g: Stop beating about the bush and tell me what you want.

- **the best thing since sliced bread:** a good invention or innovation; a good idea or plan (ý tưởng hay, tốt) E.g: *Portable phones are marketed as the best thing since sliced bread; people think they are extremely good.*

- **burn the midnight oil:** to study or work until late at night: thức khuya làm việc, học bài

**E.g:** I will have a big exam tomorrow so I'll be burning the midnight oil tonight.

- *caught between two stools: when someone finds it difficult to choose between two alternatives: lưỡng lự, không biết lựa chọn cái nào, do dự*

**E.g:** I was caught between two stools when I had to choose which shirt to hang out with my girlfriends.

- **break a leg:** used to wish somebody good luck (~ good luck)
- **hit the books** ~ to study
- **let the cat out of the bag:** to tell a secret carelessly or by mistake: để lộ bí mật

**E.g:** I wanted it to be a surprise, but my sister let the cat out of the bag.

- **when pigs fly ~ pigs might fly:** something will never happen: chuyện viễn vông, không tưởng, chỉ điều

*gì đó khó xảy ra được*

'With a bit of luck, we'll be finished by the end of the year. "Yes, and pigs might fly!'

- **scratch someone's back:** help someone out with the assumption that they will return the favor in the future: giúp ai với mong muốn sau này người ta sẽ giúp lại mình

**E.g:** "You scratch my back and I will scratch yours," the customer said when we talked about the new sales contact.

- **hit the nail on the head:** to say something that is exactly right: nói trúng phóc
  - *take someone/ something for granted: to be so used to somebody/something that you do not recognize their true value any more and do not show that you are grateful: cho là điều hiển nhiên, coi nhẹ, xem thường*

**E.g:** Her husband was always there and she just took him for granted.

- **take something into account/ consideration:** to remember to consider something: xem xét, tính đến cái gì, kể đến cái gì

**E.g:** Coursework is taken into account as well as exam results.

- **keep an eye on sb/ sth:** để ý, để mắt, để tâm đến ai/ điều gì

**E.g:** We've asked the neighbours to keep an eye on the house for us while we are away.

- **lose touch with sb:** mất liên lạc với ai
- **at somebody's disposal:** available for use as you prefer/somebody prefers: tùy ý sử dụng, có sẵn cho ai

*sử dụng theo ý muốn*

**E.g:** He will have a car at his disposal for the whole month.

- **splitting headache (n):** a severe headache: đau đầu như búa bổ

**E.g:** I've got a splitting headache. I'm going upstairs for a nap.

- **off the peg** ~ off the rack: may sẵn (quần áo)

**E.g:** He buys his clothes off the peg.

- **on the house:** không phải trả tiền

**E.g:** Have a drink on the house.

- **hit the roof ~ hit the ceiling ~ go through the roof:** to suddenly become very angry: giận dữ, tức điên

*lên*

**E.g:** I'm afraid she will hit the roof when she finds out our vacation is cancelled.

- **bring down the house:** làm cho cả khán phòng vỗ tay nhiệt liệt
- **pay through the nose (for sth):** to pay too much for something: trả giá đắt
- **by the skin of one's teeth:** chỉ vừa mới

**E.g:** He escaped defeat by the skin of his teeth.

• *pull somebody's leg: play a joke on somebody, usually by making them believe something that is not true: trêu chọc ai*

E.g: You don't mean that. You're just pulling my leg.

• **it strikes sb as/that a strange:** lấy làm lạ

E.g: It struck me as a strange when she came to class yesterday.

• **high and low ~ here and there:** everywhere : mọi nơi

E.g: I've searched high and low for my purse.

• **the more, the merrier:** càng đông càng vui

• **spick and span ~ spic and span:** ngăn nắp và gọn gàng, mới

E.g: Their house is always spick and span.

• **(every) now and then/ again ~ sometimes, occasionally:** thỉnh thoảng

E.g: Every now and again she checked to see if he was still asleep.

• **part and parcel of sth:** an essential and crucial part of sth: phần quan trọng, thiết yếu

E.g: Keeping the accounts is part and parcel of my job.

• *go to one's head: to make you feel too proud of yourself in a way that other people find annoying:*

khiến ai kiêu ngạo, kiêu căng

• **be/ go on the wagon:** to not drink alcohol, either for a short time or permanently: kiêng rượu

• **once in a blue moon ~ very rarely:** rất hiếm

E.g: Once in a blue moon, I stop thinking about him.

• **on the spot:** immediately: ngay lập tức

E.g: He answered the question on the spot.

• **few and far between:** not frequent; not happening often: hiếm gặp, không thường xuyên

• **on the verge of ~ on the brink of ~ in the edge:** bên bờ vực, sắp

E.g: These elephants are on the verge of extinction.

• **lead somebody by the nose:** to make somebody do everything you want; to control somebody completely: nắm đầu, dắt mũi ai

• **at the eleventh hour:** at the last possible moment; just in time: vào phút chót

E.g: She always turned her term paper in at the eleventh hour.

• **find fault (with sb/ sth):** chỉ trích, kiểm chuyện, bắt lỗi

E.g: It is very easy to find fault with the others.

• **off and on/ on and off ~ from time to time:** không đều đặn, thỉnh thoảng

E.g: It rained on and off all day.

• **make believe:** giả bộ, giả vờ

• **make good time:** di chuyển nhanh, đi nhanh

E.g: We made good time and arrived in Spain in two days.

• **took daggers at somebody:** Nhìn ai đó một cách giận dữ

E.g: Their relationship is not free and easy but at least he is no longer looking daggers at her.

• **be out of the question:** không thể được

E.g: Another trip abroad this year is out of the question.

• **all at once ~ suddenly:** bất thành linh

E.g: All at once she lost her temper.

• **blow one's trumpet ~ boast:** bốc phét, khoác lác

• **sleep on sth:** suy nghĩ thêm về điều gì đó.

E.g: Could I sleep on it and let you know tomorrow?

- **fight tooth and nail:** to fight in a very determined way for what you want: đánh nhau dữ dội

E.g: The residents are fighting tooth and nail to stop the new development.

- **play tricks/jokes on:** chọc phá, trêu ghẹo, chơi khăm

E.g: The children are always play jokes on their teachers.

- **(go) down the drain:** đổ sông đổ biển (công sức, tiền bạc)

E.g: It's just money down the drain, you know.

- *smell a rat: to suspect that something is wrong about a situation: hoài nghi, linh cảm chuyện không ổn,*

ngghi ngờ có âm mưu gì đó

E.g: The minute I came in, I smelled a rat.

- **the last straw:** giọt nước tràn ly

E.g: When he showed up late a third time, which was the last straw. We had to fire him.

- **get the hang of something:** nắm bắt được, sử dụng được, làm được

E.g: I can't seem to get the hang of this game.

- **hard of hearing:** lẳng tai, nặng tai

E.g: Mike is hard of hearing. Therefore, we have to speak loudly so that he can hear us.

- **have a bee in one's bonnet (about sth):** bị ám ảnh và không thể ngừng nghĩ về chuyện gì đó, đặt nặng chuyện gì (dùng khi ai đó lo lắng hay bực tức về điều gì đó)

E.g: Our teacher has a bee in his bonnet about punctuation.

- *get/ have cold feet: to suddenly become nervous about doing something that you had planned to do: mất hết can đảm, chùn bước*

E.g: He was going to ask her but he got cold feet and said nothing.

- **on second thoughts:** suy nghĩ kĩ, sau khi suy đi tính lại

E.g: I'll wait here. No, on second thoughts, I'll come with you.

- **in vain:** uống công, vô ích, không thành công

E.g: They tried in vain to persuade her to go.

- **chip in ~ contribute:** quyên góp, góp tiền, đóng góp

E.g: If everyone chips in, we'll be able to buy her a really nice present.

- **out of/ off one's head ~ crazy:** điên, loạn trí

E.g: The old man has been off his head for at least a year.

- **run an errand:** làm việc vặt

E.g: I've got to run an errand. I'll be back in a minute.

- **jump the (traffic) lights/ run the lights/ run a (red) light:** vượt đèn đỏ

E.g: They ignore people who jump the traffic lights.

- **fly off the handle:** dễ nổi giận, phát cáu, bỗng nhiên nổi nóng

E.g: He seems to fly off the handle about the slightest thing these days.

- **the apple of one's eye:** người yêu quý/ đồ quý giá của ai

E.g: She is the apple of her father's eye.

- **bucket down ~ rain heavily:** mưa xối xả, mưa to

E.g: It's bucketing down.

- **a close shave/ call:** thoát chết trong gang tấc

E.g: David, that was a close shave. I was so lucky.

- **drop a brick/ clanger:** lỡ lời, lỡ miệng

E.g: I dropped a brick when talking with my best friend, and now he doesn't want to talk to me.

- **get/ have butterflies in one's stomach:** cảm thấy bồn chồn

E.g: I always get butterflies in my stomach when it comes to taking test.

- **off the record:** không chính thức, không được công bố

E.g: Strictly off the record, some members of staff will have to be made redundant.

- **(not) one's cup of tea:** (không phải) người/ thứ mà ta yêu thích

E.g: He's nice enough but not really my cup of tea.

- **cut it fine:** đến sát giờ

E.g: Only allowing half an hour to get from the station to the airport is cutting it fine, isn't it?

- **golden handshake:** món tiền hậu hĩnh dành cho người sắp nghỉ việc

E.g: The manager got early retirement and a 800,000\$ golden handshake when the company was restructured.

- **come to light:** được biết đến, được phát hiện, được đưa ra ánh sáng.

E.g: New evidence has recently come to light.

- **take things to pieces:** tháo ra từng mảnh

E.g: He took the clock to pieces.

- **put one's foot in it / put your foot in one's mouth:** nói/ làm điều gì đó ngu ngốc làm xúc phạm người

*khác, nói điều không nên*

E.g: I really put my foot in it with Mary - I didn't know she'd split up with Tom.

- **pull one's weight:** nỗ lực, làm tròn phần trách nhiệm

E.g: The rest of the team complained that Mary wasn't pulling her weight.

- **make (both) ends meet:** xoay sở để kiếm sống

E.g: Many families struggle to make ends meet.

- **get (hold of) the wrong end of the stick:** hiểu nhầm ai đó

E.g: I think I must explain to her that she got hold of the wrong end of the stick again.

- **cut and dried:** được quyết định theo cách mà không thể thay đổi

E.g: The inquiry is by no means cut and dried.

- *see eye to eye:* đồng tình

E.g: The two of them have never seen eye to eye on politics.

- **have sb/ sth in mind:** đang suy nghĩ, cân nhắc tới ai/ điều gì

E.g: Watching TV all evening wasn't exactly what I had in mind!

- *a lost cause:* hết hy vọng, không thay đổi được gì

E.g: The game looked a lost cause when the score reached 6-0.

- **to be bound to do sth:** chắc chắn sẽ làm gì

E.g: You're *bound to be late* if you don't hurry.

- **at heart:** thực chất, theo một cách cơ bản nhất

E.g: He's still a socialist at heart.

- **know sb by sight:** nhận ra ai đó (recognize)

E.g: She said that she would know the thief by sight if she ever saw him again.

- now and then - now and again - at times - from time to time ~ off and on ~ (every)



once in a while - every so often- sometimes: thỉnh thoảng, không thường xuyên

E.g: Every so often I heard a strange noise outside.

- **take (great) pains to do sth:** dốc sức để làm gì

E.g: The couple went to great pains to keep their plans secret.

- **take (great) pains wsth/over sth:** làm cái gì đó cẩn thận và tận tâm

E.g: He always takes great pains with his lectures.

- **make do:** xoay sở, đương đầu (to manage, to cope)

E.g: We were in a hurry so we had to make do with a quick snack.

- **sell somebody short:** đánh giá thấp

E.g: *When you say that Nam isn't interested in music, you're selling him short.*

- **face the music:** chịu trận

E.g: The others all ran off, leaving me to face the music.

- **let the cat out of the bag:** để lộ bí mật

E.g: I wanted it to be a surprise, but my sister let the cat out of the bag.

- **on probation:** trong thời gian quản chế

E.g: The prisoner was put on probation.

- **sell/ go like hot cakes:** bán đắt như tôm tươi

E.g: The book has only just been published and copies are already selling like hot cakes all over the world.

- **it never rains but it pours ~ when it rains, it pours:** used to say that when one bad thing happens to you, other bad things happen soon after: họa vô đơn chí

- **salt and pepper:** (having a mixture of a dark colour and a light one) màu tóc hoa râm.

- **a penny for your thoughts:** used to ask somebody what they are thinking about: dùng để hỏi ai đó xem

*họ đang nghĩ gì*

- **home and dry ~ be home free:** (adj): have done something successfully, especially when it was difficult: êm xuôi, hoàn thành cái gì thành công (đặc biệt khi nó khó)

E.g: I could see the finish line and thought I was home and dry.

- **down and out** (adj): thất cơ lỡ vận

E.g: A novel about being down and out in London

- **learn by heart:** học thuộc lòng

E.g: I learnt this poem by heart.

- **a red- letter day ~ an important day:** một ngày quan trọng, một ngày đáng nhớ

E.g: Birthdays, wedding anniversaries and other red-letter days

- **as high as a kite:** kiêu căng, tự phụ

E.g: She is always as high as a kite.

- **sleep like a log:** ngủ say, ngủ ngon

E.g: The baby is sleeping like a log.

- **fit like a glove:** vừa như in

E.g: The dress fits me like a glove.

- **be green with envy:** ghen tị

E.g: She was green with envy because her mother bought a new hat for her sister.

- **go up the wall:** nổi giận

E.g: I mustn't be late or Dad will go up the wall.

- **put on an act:** giả vờ, giả bộ

E.g: You could tell she was just putting on an act.

- **break the news (to sb):** nói cho ai biết tin gì quan trọng, nhất là tin xấu; tiết lộ.

E.g: The doctor had to break the news to Mary about her husband's cancer.

- **cost/ pay an arm and a leg:** rất đắt

E.g: I think the robot will not cost an arm and a leg in the future.

- **look on the bright side:** to be cheerful or positive about a bad situation, for example by thinking only of the advantages and not the disadvantages: hãy lạc quan lên

E.g: A: I failed the exam again. Maybe I will never pass it.

B: Look on the bright side. If you study hard enough, you will pass the exam.

- **easier said than done:** nói dễ hơn làm

E.g: Why don't you get yourself a job? "That's easier said than done."

- **take it easy ~ relax:** đừng lo lắng, thư giãn nào

E.g: Take it easy! Don't panic.

The doctor told me to take it easy for a few weeks.

- **go into business:** bắt đầu công việc kinh doanh

E.g: When he left school, he went into business with his brother.

- **in a bad mood:** không vui

E.g: After breaking up with her boy friend, she was in a bad mood for several days.

- **out of this world:** ngon

E.g: The meal was out of this world.

- **time and tide wait for no man:** thời giờ thấm thoát trôi đi, nó đi mãi có chờ đợi ai, thời gian không

*đợi ai*

- **back to square one:** trở lại từ đầu

E.g: If this suggestion isn't accepted, we'll be back to square one.

- **a great one for sth:** đam mê chuyện gì, thích làm gì

E.g: I've never been a great one for writing letters.

- **one in the eye for someone:** làm gai mắt

E.g: The appointment of a woman was one in the eye for male domination.

- **be in two minds about something/about doing something; be of two minds about something/about doing something:** chưa quyết định được

E.g: She's in two minds about accepting his invitation.

- **in two shakes ~ very soon:** một loáng là xong, rất sớm

E.g: We'll be there in a couple of shakes.

- **at sixes and sevens:** tình trạng rối tinh rối mù

E.g: I haven't had time to clear up, so I'm all at sixes and sevens.

- **on cloud nine ~ extremely happy:** trên 9 tầng mây

- **dressed (up) to the nines:** ăn mặc bảnh bao

- **ten to one ~ very probably:** rất có thể

E.g: Ten to one he'll be late.

- **nineteen to the dozen: ~ talk, etc. without stopping:** nói huyền thuyên

E.g: She was chatting away, nineteen to the dozen.

- **kill two birds with one stone:** một công đôi việc

- **by a hair's breath: a very small amount or distance:** trong đường tơ kẽ tóc

E.g: We won by a hair's breadth.

- **keep one's finger crossed for somebody:** cầu mong điều tốt đẹp cho ai đó
- **(like) water off a duck's back:** nước đổ đầu vịt

E.g: I can't tell my son what to do; it's water off a duck's back with him.

- **every nook and cranny ~ every nook and corner:** every part of a place; every aspect of a situation: trong mọi góc ngách

E.g: The wind blew into every nook and cranny.

- **PRACTICES**

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.*

1. I wanted to ask her what she thought of her ex-husband, but I figured it was better to let sleeping \_\_\_\_\_ lie."  
A. cat B. dog C. fish D. cow
2. "I have to run to the bathroom. Can you keep an eye \_\_\_\_\_ my suitcase while I am gone?"  
A. on B. at C. off D. in
3. "Her husband is awful; they fight all the time but I think it takes \_\_\_\_\_ to tango."  
A. one B. two C. three D. four
4. "I have decided that this summer I am going to learn how to scuba dive." -- "Me too! I have already paid for the course. Great minds \_\_\_\_\_ alike!"  
A. think B. hear C. listen D. tell
5. "When my girl friend and my brother got in a fight I had to help my brother because blood is \_\_\_\_\_ than water."  
A. thinner B. thicker C. better D. more
6. I think the main problem in this area is the lack of a good bus service.  
- You're right. You've hit the \_\_\_\_\_ on the head.  
A. nail B. wall C. lips D. hand
7. She is walking on the \_\_\_\_\_. She doesn't know how to say.  
A. air B. road C. street D. garden
8. When you do something, you should \_\_\_\_\_  
A. pay through the nose B. turn over a new leaf  
C. weigh up the pros and cons D. huddle into a pen
9. Someone who is inexperienced is \_\_\_\_\_  
A. red B. blue C. black D. green
10. The year-end party was ***out of this world***. We had never tasted such delicious food.  
A. enormous B. terrific C. strange D. awful
11. The nominating committee always meet ***behind closed doors***, lest its deliberations become known prematurely.  
A. privately B. safely C. publicly D. dangerously
12. She's so \_\_\_\_\_; you really have to watch you say or she'll walk out of the room.  
A. high and dry B. prim and proper C. rough and ready D. sick and tired
13. "Whenever that professor says something I don't like, I have to bite my \_\_\_\_\_"  
A. tougue B. mouth C. lips D. eyes
14. "Sorry I was late for the meeting today; I got stuck in traffic." -- "That's okay; better late than \_\_\_\_\_"  
A. never B. no C. not D. none
15. "If you want to ask me, just ask; don't beat \_\_\_\_\_ the bush."

- A. for    B. around    C. round    D. towards
16. "Don't tell me how to do this; show me because Actions speak louder than \_\_\_\_\_"
- A. words    B. speech    C. work    D. jobs
17. The time we spend apart has been good for us because absence makes the heart grow \_\_\_\_\_"
- A. fonder    B. founder    C. louder    D. sounder
18. At every faculty meeting, Ms. Volatie always manages to *put her foot in her mouth*.
- A. move rapidly    B. trip over her big feet  
C. fall asleep    D. say the wrong thing
19. If you are *at a loose end* this weekend, I will show you around the city.
- A. free    B. confident    C. occupied    D. reluctant
20. Thanks to her regular workouts and sensible diet she certainly strikes me as in the pink.
- A. in absolute health    B. in good health    C. in clear health    D. in extreme health
21. That the genetic differences make one race superior to another is nothing but *a tall story*.
- A. cynical    B. unbelievable    C. untrue    D. exaggeration
22. You should accept the Nokia mobile phone as a 16-birthday present from your parents delightedly. Don't \_\_\_\_\_
- A. look gift horse in the mouth    B. buy it through the nose  
C. pull my leg    D. take it for granted
23. "Do you think you will win your tennis match today?" - "It will be a piece of \_\_\_\_\_"
- A. cake    B. sweet    C. candy    D. bitcuit
24. I'd like to do something to change the world but whatever I do seems like a drop in the \_\_\_\_\_"
- A. bucket    B. garbage    C. rubbish    D. river
25. Jack has egg \_\_\_\_\_ because he couldn't remember how to spell "Batman"!
- A. on his teeth    B. on his face    C. on his shirt    D. on his fingers
26. Oh, I'm sorry. I shouldn't have said that. I guess I really put my \_\_\_\_\_ in my mouth.
- A. foot    B. hand    C. elbow    D. knee
27. Sharon always sticks her \_\_\_\_\_ into everyone else's business.
- A. head    B. lips    C. nose    D. mouth
28. In Florida, the temperature drops below freezing only once in a \_\_\_\_\_ moon.
- A. green    B. purple    C. blue    D. middle
29. Brady's surprise party is going to be great if you don't let the \_\_\_\_\_ out of the bag.
- A. dog    B. mouse    C. bat    D. cat
30. We don't go there often - just \_\_\_\_\_ and on.
- A. of    B. off    C. on    D. over
31. He argued with her until he was \_\_\_\_\_ in the face.
- A. black    B. grey    C. yellow    D. blue
32. It was a \_\_\_\_\_-letter day when she finally received her graduation diploma.
- A. black    B. grey    C. red    D. white
33. My sister became \_\_\_\_\_ as a ghost when she saw the man at the window.
- A. black    B. grey    C. yellow    D. white
34. She passed her exam with flying \_\_\_\_\_ and now wants to go out and celebrate.
- A. colors    B. colours    C. bays    D. objects
35. My sister was always the teacher's \_\_\_\_\_ when she was in the first grade at school.

- A. pets    B. cats    C. dogs    D. doves
36. Jose had a hard time comparing the iPhone to the Samsung phone because to him they were apples and oranges.  
A. containing too many technical details    B. very similar  
C. completely different    D. very complicated
37. Peter is the black sheep of the family, so he is never welcomed there.  
A. a beloved member    B. a bad and embarrassing member  
C. the only child    D. the eldest child
38. There's a list of repairs as long as \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. your arm    B. a pole    C. your arms    D. a mile
39. I tried to talk to her, but she was as high as a \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. kite    B. house    C. sky    D. wall
40. We're over the \_\_\_\_\_! Who wouldn't be? We've just won £1 million!  
A. planet    B. clouds    C. stars    D. moon
41. I've never really enjoyed going to the ballet or the opera; they're not really my \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. piece of cake    B. sweets and candy    C. biscuit    D. cup of tea
42. You never really know where you are with her as she just blows hot and cold.  
A. keeps going    B. keeps taking things  
C. keeps changing her mood    D. keeps testing
43. "Edwards seems like a dog with two tails this morning." - "Haven't you hear the news? His wife gave birth a baby boy early this morning."  
A. extremely happy    B. extremely disappointed  
C. exhausted    D. very proud
44. Thomas knows Paris like the back of his \_\_\_\_\_. He used to be a taxi driver there for 2 years.  
A. head    B. mind    C. hand    D. life
45. Josh may get into hot water when driving at full speed after drinking.  
A. get into trouble    B. stay safe    C. fall into disuse    D. remain calm
46. You have to be on your toes if you want to beat her.  
A. pay all your attention to what you are doing  
B. upset her in what she is doing  
C. get involved in what she is doing  
D. make her comply with your orders
47. By appearing on the soap powder commercials, she became a \_\_\_\_\_ name.  
A. housekeeper    B. housewife    C. household    D. house
48. When his parents are away, his oldest brother \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. knocks it off    B. calls the shots    C. draws the line    D. is in the same boat
49. Hearing about people who mistreat animals makes me go hot under the \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. chin    B. collar    C. sleeves    D. vest
50. **Shake a leg** or you will miss the train.  
A. Hurry up    B. Slow down    C. Watch out    D. Put down

# CHAPTER II : GRAMMARS

## PART I : TENSES AND SEQUENCE OF TENSES

- THEORY

### TÓM TẮC CÔNG THỨC CÁC THÌ

Thì	SIMPLE PRESENT (Hiện tại đơn)	SIMPLE PAST (Quá khứ đơn)
Dạng	S + V[-s/es]	S + V-ed/V cột 2
Khẳng định	S + don't / doesn't + V1	S + didn't + V1
Phủ định	Do / Does + S + V1 ...?	Did + S + V1 ...?
Nghi vấn	- always, usually, occasionally, often, ... - every: every day, every year, every Sunday - once a day , twice..., 3 times...	- yesterday - last + time: last week, last Sunday... - time+ ago : two months ago, five years ago... - in the past, in + year (past): in 1990, ...
Thì	PRESENT CONTINUOUS (Hiện tại tiếp diễn)	PAST CONTINUOUS (Quá khứ tiếp diễn)
Dạng	S + am / is / are + V-ing	S + was / were + V-ing
Khẳng định	S + am not / isn't / aren't + V-ing	S + wasn't / weren't + V-ing
Phủ định	Am / Is / Are + S + V-ing ...?	Was / Were + S + V-ing ...?
Nghi vấn	- now, at present	- At that moment
Dấu hiệu nhận biết		

<b>biết</b>	- at the moment - Sau câu mệnh lệnh : Vd: Keep silent! The baby is sleeping. Look! He is running.	- When / As + S + (simple past), S + was/ were V-ing Vd: When I came, she was crying. - While : Vd: A dog crossed the road while I was driving.
<b>Thì Dạng</b>	<b>PRESENT PERFECT</b> (Hiện tại hoàn thành)	<b>PAST PERFECT</b> (Quá khứ hoàn thành)
<b>Khẳng định</b>	<b>S + has / have + V-ed/V cột 3</b>	<b>S + had + V-ed/V cột 3</b>
<b>Phủ định</b>	<b>S + hasn't / haven't + V-ed/ V cột 3</b>	<b>S + hadn't + V-ed/ V cột 3</b>
<b>Nghi vấn</b>	<b>Has / Have + S + V-ed/ V cột 3 ...?</b>	<b>Had + S + V-ed/ V cột 3...?</b>
<b>Dấu hiệu nhận biết</b>	- just, already, ever, yet, recently, lately,.. - since, for : since 1995, for 9 years - so far, up to now , It is the first time.....	- after + S + had V <sub>3/ED</sub> , (simple past) - before + (simple past), S + had V <sub>3/ED</sub> - By the time + S + V(simple past) , S + had V <sub>3/ED</sub> : cho đến lúc.....
<b>Thì Dạng</b>	<b>SIMPLE FUTURE</b> (Tương lai đơn)	<b>FUTURE PERFECT</b> (Tương lai hoàn thành)
<b>Khẳng định</b>	<b>S + will + V 1</b>	<b>S + will have+ V-ed/ V cột 3</b>
<b>Phủ định</b>	<b>S + won't + V 1</b>	<b>S + won't have + V-ed/ V cột 3</b>
<b>Nghi vấn</b>	<b>Will + S + V 1?</b>	<b>Will + S + have + V-ed/ V cột 3...?</b>
<b>Dấu hiệu nhận biết</b>	- tomorrow - next + time : next week, next Monday,.... - in the future	- by the end of this month - by the time+S+ V (simple present), S + will have V <sub>3/ED</sub>
<b>Thì Dạng</b>	<b>NEAR FUTURE</b> (Tương lai gần)	<b>FUTURE CONTINUOUS</b> (Tương lai tiếp diễn)
<b>Khẳng định</b>	<b>S + am/is/are going to + V 1</b>	<b>S + will be + ving</b>
<b>Dấu hiệu nhận biết</b>	- Diễn tả 1 kế hoạch, dự định. - Diễn tả 1 dự đoán có căn cứ	- Diễn tả 1 sự việc đang xảy ra ở tương lai.

### SỰ PHỐI HỢP THÌ

<b>WHEN</b>	diễn tả hành động xảy ra nối tiếp nhau	Trong QUÁ KHỨ: <b>WHEN + S + V (quá khứ đơn), S + V (quá khứ đơn)</b> Eg: When he <u>saw</u> me, he <u>smiled</u> , at me.
		Trong TƯƠNG LAI: <b>WHEN + S + V (hiện tại đơn), S + V (tương lai đơn)</b> Eg: When I <u>see</u> him, I <u>will remind</u> him to call you.
	diễn tả một hành động đang xảy ra thì có hành động	Trong QUÁ KHỨ: <b>WHEN + S + V (quá khứ đơn), S + V (quá khứ tiếp diễn)</b> Eg: When I <u>came</u> to see her, she <u>was cooking</u> dinner.
		Trong TƯƠNG LAI:

	khác xen vào	<b>WHEN + S + V (hiện tại đơn), S + V (tương lai tiếp diễn)</b> Eg: When you <u>come</u> in, your boss <u>will be waiting</u> for you there.
	diễn tả một hành động xảy ra xong trước một hành động khác	Trong QUÁ KHỨ: <b>WHEN + S + V (quá khứ đơn), S + V (quá khứ hoàn thành)</b> Eg: When I <u>arrived</u> at the airport, the plane <u>had taken off</u> Trong TƯƠNG LAI: <b>WHEN + S + V (hiện tại đơn), S + V (tương lai hoàn thành)</b> Eg: When you <u>return</u> to the town, they <u>will have finished</u> building a new bridge.
<b>AS SOON AS</b>	diễn tả hành động xảy ra nối tiếp nhau	Trong QUÁ KHỨ: <b>AS SOON AS + S + V (quá khứ đơn), S + V (quá khứ đơn)</b> Eg: As soon as she <u>saw</u> a mouse, she <u>shouted</u> and ran away.
		Trong TƯƠNG LAI: <b>AS SOON AS + S + V (hiện tại đơn/hiện tại hoàn thành), S + V (tương lai đơn)</b> Eg: I <u>will call</u> you as soon as I <u>have finished / finish</u> the work.
<b>SINCE</b>	diễn tả nghĩa "từ khi"	<b>S + V (hiện tại hoàn thành) + SINCE + V (quá khứ đơn)</b> Eg: We <u>have known</u> each other since we <u>were</u> at high school.
<b>BY + TIME</b>	diễn tả hành động kết thúc tính đến một điểm nào đó trong quá khứ/tương lai	Trong QUÁ KHỨ: <b>BY + trạng từ của quá khứ + S + V (quá khứ hoàn thành)</b> Eg: By last month, we <u>had worked</u> for the company for 9 years.
		Trong TƯƠNG LAI: <b>BY + trạng từ của tương lai + S + V (tương lai hoàn thành)</b> Eg: By next month, we <u>will have worked</u> for the company for 9 years.
<b>AT THIS/ THAT TIME</b>	diễn tả hành động đang xảy ra tại một thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ/tương lai	Trong QUÁ KHỨ: <b>AT THIS/THAT TIME + trạng từ của quá khứ + S + V (quá khứ tiếp diễn)</b> Eg: At this time last week, we <u>were preparing</u> for Tet.
		Trong TƯƠNG LAI: <b>AT THIS/THAT TIME + trạng từ của tương lai + S + V (tương lai tiếp diễn)</b> Eg: At this time next week, we <u>will be having</u> a big party in the garden.
<b>BY THE TIME</b>	diễn tả nghĩa "vào lúc"	Trong QUÁ KHỨ: <b>BY THE TIME + S + V (quá khứ đơn), S + V (quá khứ hoàn thành)</b> Eg: By the time she <u>got</u> home, everyone <u>had gone</u> to bed.
		Trong TƯƠNG LAI: <b>BY THE TIME + S + V (hiện tại đơn), S + V (tương lai hoàn thành)</b> Eg: By the time she <u>gets</u> home, everyone <u>will have gone</u> to bed.
<b>AFTER</b>	diễn tả hành động xảy ra	Trong QUÁ KHỨ: <b>AFTER + S + V (quá khứ hoàn thành), S + V (quá khứ đơn)</b>



	xong rồi mới tới hành động khác	Eg: After she <u>had done</u> her homework, she <u>went</u> out for a walk. Trong TƯƠNG LAI: <b>AFTER + S + V (hiện tại hoàn thành), S + V (hiện tại đơn)</b> Eg: After she <u>has done</u> her homework, she <u>goes</u> out for a walk.
<b>BEFORE</b>	diễn tả hành động xảy ra xong trước khi có hành động khác tới	Trong QUÁ KHỨ: <b>BEFORE + S + V (quá khứ đơn), S + V (quá khứ hoàn thành)</b> Eg: Before she <u>went</u> to bed, she <u>had locked</u> all the doors.
		Trong TƯƠNG LAI: <b>BEFORE + S + V (hiện tại đơn), S + V (tương lai hoàn thành)</b> Eg: Hurry up or the film <u>will have ended</u> before we <u>go</u> to the movie.
<b>UNTIL/ TILL</b>	diễn tả nghĩa "cho tới khi"	<b>S + V (tương lai đơn)/ V(bare)/DON'T + V(bare) + UNTIL/TILL + S + V (hiện tại đơn/hiện tại hoàn thành)</b> Eg: I <u>will wait</u> for you until it <u>is</u> possible. <u>Wait</u> here until I <u>come</u> back.

### Một số cấu trúc liên quan đến thì hiện tại hoàn thành

1	It is ..... "time" +since+ S (last)+ Ved/V2 = S+ have/ has+ not+ Ved/ V3.....for+ "time" = The last time S+ Ved/V2.....was+"time"+ ago
2	How long+ have/has+ S+ Ved/V3 <b>Trả lời:</b> S+ have/has+ Ved/V3+.....for+ thời gian
3	S+ have/has+ Ved/V3+.....since+ Ved/V2
4	S+ began/started+ Ving/ To V+ ..... "thời gian" + ago = S+ have/has+ ved/V3+ .....for + "thời gian" / since+ "thời gian"

### • PRACTICES

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

- Jane \_\_\_\_\_ law at Harvard for four years now.  
A. is studying    B. has been studying    C. studies    D. studied
- This time tomorrow \_\_\_\_\_ on the beach sunbathing and drinking freshly squeezed fruit juice!  
A. I'll have been lying    B. I will lie  
C. I will be lying    D. I will have lain
- We \_\_\_\_\_ for three hours and we are very tired.  
A. waited    B. have been waiting    C. wait    D. had waited
- She \_\_\_\_\_ for hours. That's why her eyes are red now.  
A. cried    B. has been crying    C. was crying    D. has cried
- When I last saw him, he \_\_\_\_\_ in London.  
A. is living    B. has been living    C. was living    D. lived
- By the time he arrives here tomorrow, they \_\_\_\_\_ for London.  
A. would have left    B. will have left    C. will left    D. are leaving
- Mr. Pike \_\_\_\_\_ English at our school for 20 years before he retired last year.  
A. had been teaching    B. has been teaching  
C. was teaching    D. is teaching
- They \_\_\_\_\_ for Japan at 10.30 tomorrow.  
A. will be leaving    B. have left    C. will have left    D. will leave
- When I \_\_\_\_\_ to the airport, I realized that I \_\_\_\_\_ my passport at home.  
A. got/had left    B. got/left    C. had got/had left    D. got/was left

10. I \_\_\_\_\_ was angry when you saw me because I \_\_\_\_\_ with my sister.  
A. have been arguing    B. had been arguing    C. argued    D. would argue
11. Call me as soon as you \_\_\_\_\_ your test results.  
A. get    B. will get    C. will have got    D. got
12. I \_\_\_\_\_ to Greece until Sally and I went there last summer.  
A. have never been    B. had never been    C. was never being    D. were never
13. I \_\_\_\_\_ along the street when I suddenly heard footsteps behind me.  
A. was walking    B. am walking    C. walk    D. walked
14. He occasionally \_\_\_\_\_ a headache in the morning.  
A. has had    B. has    C. have    D. is having
15. The boy fell while he \_\_\_\_\_ down the stairs.  
A. run    B. running    C. was running    D. runs
16. I will come and see you before I \_\_\_\_\_ for America.  
A. leave    B. will leave    C. have left    D. left
17. When the first child was born, they \_\_\_\_\_ for three years.  
A. have been married    B. had been married  
C. will be married    D. will have been married
18. It \_\_\_\_\_ a long time since we were apart. I did not recognize her.  
A. is    B. has been    C. was    D. had been
19. Many of the people who attended Mr. David's funeral \_\_\_\_\_ him for many years.  
A. didn't see    B. wouldn't see    C. haven't seen    D. hadn't seen
20. We were both very excited about the visit, as we \_\_\_\_\_ each other for \_\_\_\_\_ ages.  
A. never saw    B. didn't see    C. hadn't seen    D. haven't seen
21. In one year's time, she \_\_\_\_\_ for this company for 15 years.  
A. will be working    B. will have been working  
C. will work    D. has worked
22. His health has improved a lot since he \_\_\_\_\_ doing exercises regularly.  
A. starts    B. started    C. has started    D. had started
23. She hurt herself while she \_\_\_\_\_ hide-and-seek with her friends.  
A. is playing    B. had played    C. played    D. was playing
24. What \_\_\_\_\_ at 9 o'clock last night? I phoned you but couldn't get through to you.  
A. did you do    B. were you doing    C. would you do    D. had you done
25. It is raining heavily with rolls of thunder. We \_\_\_\_\_ such a terrible thunderstorm.  
A. would never see    B. had never seen    C. have never seen    D. never see
26. I \_\_\_\_\_ my old teacher last week.  
A. visited    B. visit    C. am visiting    D. have visited
27. My brother usually \_\_\_\_\_ me for help when he has any difficulties with his homework.  
A. ask    B. asks    C. asked    D. has asked
28. I \_\_\_\_\_ all of my homework last night.  
A. finish    B. will finish    C. have finished    D. finished
29. Lan \_\_\_\_\_ learning English a few years ago.  
A. starts    B. will start    C. started    D. is starting
30. Only after she \_\_\_\_\_ from a severe illness did she realize the importance of good health.  
A. would recover    B. has recovered  
C. had recovered    D. was recovering

31. Only after the bus \_\_\_\_\_ for a few miles did Jane realize she was on the wrong route.  
A. was running    B. had run    C. has run    D. runs
32. The children \_\_\_\_\_ to bed before their parents came home from work.  
A. were all going    B. had all gone    C. had all been going    D. have all gone
33. Paul noticed a job advertisement while he \_\_\_\_\_ along the street.  
A. was walking    B. would walk    C. walked    D. had walked
34. I haven't met him again since we \_\_\_\_\_ school ten years ago.  
A. have left    B. leave    C. left    D. had left
35. For the last 20 years, we \_\_\_\_\_ significant changes in the world of science and technology.  
A. witness    B. have witnessed    C. witnessed    D. are witnessing
36. My best friend Lan \_\_\_\_\_ to England 10 years ago.  
A. was moving    B. moves    C. moved    D. has moved
37. Mr. Pike \_\_\_\_\_ for this company for more than thirty years, and he intends to stay here until he \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. worked/retires    B. works/is retiring  
C. has been working/retires    D. is working/will retire
38. While I \_\_\_\_\_ at the bus stop, three buses went by in the opposite direction.  
A. was waiting    B. waited    C. had waited    D. were waiting
39. By the end of last March, I \_\_\_\_\_ English for five years.  
A. had been studied    B. had been studying  
C. will have been studying    D. will have studied
40. \_\_\_\_\_ Alan for hours but he hasn't answered his mobile. I hope nothing's wrong.  
A. I call    B. I've been calling    C. I'm calling    D. called
41. We \_\_\_\_\_ in silence when he suddenly \_\_\_\_\_ me to help him.  
A. walked - was asking    B. were walking - asked  
C. were walking - was asking    D. walked - asked
42. By the time the software \_\_\_\_\_ on sale next month, the company \_\_\_\_\_ \$2 million on developing it.  
A. went - had spent    B. will go - has spent  
C. has gone - will spend    D. goes - will have spent
43. When Carol \_\_\_\_\_ last night, I \_\_\_\_\_ my favorite show on television.  
A. called /was watching    B. had called /watched  
C. called /have watched    D. was calling /watched
44. Linda took great photos of butterflies while she \_\_\_\_\_ in the forest.  
A. was hiking    B. is hiking    C. hiked    D. had hiked
45. When I \_\_\_\_\_ for my sister in front of the supermarket, a strange man came to talk with me.  
A. was waiting    B. waited    C. had waited    D. were waiting
46. Over the past 30 years, the average robot price \_\_\_\_\_ by half in real terms, and even further relative to labor costs.  
A. is fallen    B. has fallen    C. were fallen    D. have fallen
47. When I came to visit her last night, she \_\_\_\_\_ a bath.  
A. is having    B. was having    C. has had    D. had had
48. John \_\_\_\_\_ in the same house since he left school.  
A. lived    B. had lived    C. was living    D. has lived
49. Since Tom \_\_\_\_\_, I have heard nothing from him.

A. had left    B. left    C. has left    D. was left

50. He will take the dog out for a walk as soon as he \_\_\_\_\_ dinner.

A. finish    B. has finished    C. will finish    D. finished

*Rewrite the following sentences, beginning as given, so that the meaning stays the same.*

1. He began playing football ten years ago.

=> **He has**

2. He has been investigating the case for a week.

=> **He started**

3. When is Peter and Sarah's wedding?

=> **When are**

4. I have never read such a romantic story.

=> **This is**

5. We started cooking for the party four hours ago.

=> **We have**

6. He forgot about the gun until he got home.

=> **Not until**

7. I haven't been to an Indian restaurant for ages.

=> **It's ages**

8. The last time Nancy came here was in 1986.

=> **Nancy hasn't**

9. This is my first visit to Japan.

=> **This is the first time**

10. How long have Helen and Robert been married?

=> **When**

11. It's a long time since our last conversation.

=> **We**

12. Thanks, but I had something to eat earlier.

=> **Thanks, but I've**

13. This is the most interesting book I've ever read.

=> **I've never**

14. This is my first game of water-polo.

=> **I**

15. When she heard the results, Mary began to feel more confident.

=> **Since hearing the results**

*Using the word given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence*

1. John never stops criticizing my friends.

**always**

=> John    my friends.

2. We've arranged to meet at 8.00 p. m. tomorrow.

**are**

=> We    at 8.00 p. m. tomorrow.

3. Helen rarely goes to the theater.

**not**

=> Helen    the theater very often.

4. I am considering visiting my cousin in Canada next summer.

**thinking**

=> I    my cousin in Canada next summer.

5. What time is your plane scheduled to arrive at Heathrow?

**land**

- =>What time at Heathrow?
6. I have arranged to have dinner with Jerry tonight. **am**  
=>I with Jerry tonight
7. The older he gets, the more eccentric he becomes. **is**  
=>As time goes by, eccentric.
8. They don't like spicy food, so they avoid eating it. **never**  
=>They as they don't like it.
9. Jane has found a job at a supermarket for the summer. **is**  
=>Jane at a supermarket this summer.
10. How much is that green jacket, Sir? **cost**  
=>How much , Sir ?

*Rewrite the sentences, using the word in brackets, so that the meaning stays the same:*

1. I put on ten kilos and then I decided to go on a diet.  
**(by the time)**
2. First, they washed the car and then they waxed it.  
**(aft)**
3. Lisa made a sandwich and then sat on the sofa to watch TV.  
**(before)**
4. We packed our suitcases and then left for the airport. ee  
**(as soon as)**
5. The lecture started. Then I entered the lecture hall.  
**(when)**
6. I hadn't tasted Chinese food before.  
**(first)**
7. That was the only science-fiction book he had read.  
**(never)**
8. Norman took that package. Then he realized it was the wrong one.  
**(after)**
9. Mark was parking his car when he noticed the wing-mirror was broken.  
**(While)**
10. Judy was walking down the street when she saw an accident.  
**(As)**
11. I'm sorry I can't talk to you now. I'm going to work in a minute.  
**(about to)**
12. The Council is going to close the old swimming pool.  
**(intends)**
13. They are going to have a big wedding in the summer.  
**(planning to)**
14. The economy will collapse in the very near future, it will happen at any time now.  
**(on the point of)**
15. My grandfather is going to die soon.  
**(about to)**
16. You will arrive at the hotel at 7.30 in the evening.  
**(due to)**

## PART II : SUBJECT AND VERB CONCORD

### • THEORY

Một số trường hợp động từ chia ở số ít :	
1. Danh từ không đếm được hoặc danh từ đếm được số ít làm chủ từ.	Ex1: Water is very necessary to our life. Ex2: The film is very interesting.
2. V-ing; to V1, V1, mệnh đề làm chủ ngữ :	Ex1: <b>Collecting stamps and coins</b> <u>is</u> my hobby . Ex2: That you get very high grades in school is necessary.
3. Đại từ bất định: <b>everyone, everybody, someone, somebody, no one, nobody, anyone, anybody, everything, something, anything</b>	Ex: Somebody has taken my books away.
4. Đề cập đến <b>khoảng cách, thời gian, tiền, số lượng, đo lường, tựa đề</b>	Ex1: <b>Six miles</b> <u>is</u> a long distance . Ex2: Two years is long enough. Ex3: <b>The fifty dollars</b> he gave me <u>was</u> soon spent

5. Danh từ số ít tận cùng là "s" : <b>measles, mumps, rabies, diabetes, physics, mathematics, statistics, linguistics, news, billiards, Naples, Marseilles, the United States, the Philippines, the Netherlands.....</b>	Ex: <b>Physics is</b> my favourite subject.
6. Each/ Every/ One/ Neither/ Either + N (s ố ít)/ + of + N ( số nhiều)	Ex1: Every seat has a member. Ex2: Neither of my sisters likes film. Ex3: Each of children has a toy.
7. <b>Each/ Every</b> + N(s ố ít) + and + <b>each/every</b> + N (s ố ít)	Ex: Each boy and each girl has a book.
8. N + and + N (khi các danh từ đề cập đến cùng 1 người, 1 vật) và biểu thức toán học với "and". Ex: fish and chip; meat pie and peas, bread and butter, bed and breakfast, ...	Ex1: <b>Fish and chips is</b> Tom's favourite. Ex2 : <b>Two and two is</b> four .
9. Những danh từ thuộc loại không đếm được và luôn dùng với động từ số ít: information, furniture, knowledge, equipment, advice, traffic, scenery, machinery, homework, housework, work, music, money, luggage, baggage, rubbish, garbage, weather, English.	
<b>Một số trường hợp động từ chia ở số nhiều :</b>	
1. Danh từ số nhiều làm chủ từ.	Ex1: These students are very good. Ex2: Water and oil do not mix.
2. Danh từ tập hợp ( <b>the + adj</b> ). Ex: the rich , the poor, the blind, the young, the old, the injured, the disabled,...	Ex: The rich are not always happy.
3. 1 số trường hợp DT số nhiều bất qui tắc: people, police, staff, cattle, children, men, women, feet, teeth,( bacterium- bacteria; medium- media; criterion-criteria; datum-data; fungus-fungi; stimulus-stimuli ...)	Ex: <b>Cattle are</b> domestic animals .
4. Some/a few/ few/ both/ a lot of/ most/ many/ plenty of/ all/ several + N (số nhiều)	Ex1: Some books I read yesterday are famous.
<b>Một số trường hợp vừa là số ít vừa là số nhiều :</b>	
1. <b>Either</b> or <b>Neither</b> + S <sub>1</sub> + <b>nor</b> + S <sub>2</sub> => V (S <sub>2</sub> ) <b>Not only</b> but also	Ex1: Either you or I am here. Ex2: Neither Tom nor you are here. Ex3: Not only my sisters but also my father knows you.
2. There/ Here + is/was/has + N (s ố ít) are/were/have + N (s ố nhiều)	Ex1: There is a picture on the wall. Ex2: There are two sides to every problem.
3. <b>The number of + N (số nhiều ) -&gt; V số ít</b> <b>A number of + N (số nhiều ) -&gt; V số nhiều</b>	Ex1: The number of students in this class is small. Ex2: A number of my students are keen on learning English.
4. All/Some / Most/ N (s ố ít) => V (s.ít) A lot of / None + of + N (s ố nhiều ) =>V(s.nhiều)	Ex1: Most <b>money is</b> needed Ex2: One third of the population is

	unemployed. Ex3: One third of the villagers are unemployed.
5. S <sub>1</sub> + <b>with/along with/ together with/ in addition to/ as well as/ accompanied by/ đi ỏi t ùr</b> + S <sub>2</sub> + V (S <sub>1</sub> )	Ex: My brother as well as my sisters is here.
6. No + N (số ít) + V (số ít) + N (số nhiều) + V (số nhiều)	Ex1: No example is relevant to this case. Ex2: No students are here.

• **PRACTICES**

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.*

- Jenny with two dogs \_\_\_\_\_ walking in the park now.  
A. is    B. are    C. was    D. were
- Mai as well as her friends \_\_\_\_\_ having a picnic now.  
A. is    B. are    C. was    D. were
- My close friend and colleague, Mark, \_\_\_\_\_ married.  
A. have just got    B. has just got    C. just has got    D. just have got
- The singer and actor \_\_\_\_\_ going to have a live show in our city next month.  
A. was    B. were    C. is    D. are
- The singer and the actor \_\_\_\_\_ donated a large amount of money to the local orphanage.  
A. has    B. have    C. is    D. are
- My family \_\_\_\_\_ always the most important for me.  
A. is    B. are    C. is    D. are
- Two hundred thousands \_\_\_\_\_ not enough for us to have a good meal in the restaurant now.  
A. was    B. were    C. is    D. are
- Three years \_\_\_\_\_ like a long time for her to live apart from her beloved parents.  
A. is seeming    B. are seeing    C. seems    D. seemed
- The team \_\_\_\_\_ playing very well and they make their fans shout and yell.  
A. is    B. are    C. was    D. were
- Cattle \_\_\_\_\_ allowed to graze on this meadow.  
A. wasn't    B. weren't    C. isn't    D. aren't
- None of his money \_\_\_\_\_ earned by his working.  
A. is    B. are    C. was    D. were
- None of students \_\_\_\_\_ failed in this examination.  
A. has    B. have    C. was    D. were
- Every student \_\_\_\_\_ willing to take part in the environment month.  
A. is    B. are    C. was    D. were
- The number of students \_\_\_\_\_ looking for a job now.  
A. are    B. was    C. were    D. is
- A number of students \_\_\_\_\_ worried about their employment after graduating.  
A. feel    B. feels    C. felt    D. is feeling
- Physics \_\_\_\_\_ my favorite subject.  
A. are    B. is    C. was    D. have been
- The boy, along with his two classmates \_\_\_\_\_ climbing on the roof now.  
A. has    B. have    C. is    D. are
- Neither the mother nor the children \_\_\_\_\_ aware of the danger.  
A. were    B. was    C. is    D. has been



19. None \_\_\_\_\_ sorry for what they \_\_\_\_\_ for me.  
A. is feeling/ did            B. was feeling/ had done  
C. feel/ have done            D. has felt/ has been going
20. If anyone \_\_\_\_\_, tell him I'll be back later.  
A. was calling    B. called    C. call    D. calls
21. Each of the boys \_\_\_\_\_ to write his curriculum vitae now.  
A. have    B. has    C. had    D. are having
22. Under the tree \_\_\_\_\_ full of food.  
A. a basket was    B. was a basket    C. are a basket    D. were a basket
23. Two-thirds of the lottery money \_\_\_\_\_ donated for the poor.  
A. is    B. are    C. was    D. were
24. About 60% of students in this class \_\_\_\_\_ from the countryside.  
A. was    B. were    C. are    D. is
25. A flock of sheep \_\_\_\_\_ grazing grass now.  
A. are    B. is    C. was    D. were
26. The number of books in this library \_\_\_\_\_ written in English.  
A. are    B. is    C. was    D. were
27. Either you or I \_\_\_\_\_ here to clean the class before the teacher comes in.  
A. am    B. is    C. are    D. were
28. Neither her trousers nor her shirt \_\_\_\_\_ with this hat.  
A. is going    B. are going    C. goes    D. go
29. The homeless \_\_\_\_\_ our help to settle their own life.  
A. is needing    B. are needing    C. need    D. needs
30. Several of the students \_\_\_\_\_ absent yesterday.  
A. has been    B. had been    C. were    D. was
31. The President, accompanied with his sons and wife \_\_\_\_\_ an official visit to Africa, next week.  
A. pay    B. pays    C. paid    D. is going to pay
32. The majority \_\_\_\_\_ in the rumor and him in isolation  
A. believes/ has left            B. believe/ leave  
C. believe/ have left            D. believes, have left
33. His patience \_\_\_\_\_ him a lot in his work.  
A. help    B. helping    C. help    D. helps
34. Anybody who \_\_\_\_\_ this question will be given an award.  
A. answer    B. answers    C. is answering    D. are answering
35. The Blairs \_\_\_\_\_ in London since 1950.  
A. are living    B. have lived    C. have been living    D. has been living
36. Long, as well as I, \_\_\_\_\_ a student in Vietnam National University.  
A. are    B. were    C. am    D. has been
37. Not only Jack but also his parents \_\_\_\_\_ also in debt.  
A. is    B. have    C. was    D. were
38. The majority of the TOEFL tests \_\_\_\_\_ difficult for us to pass.  
A. are    B. is    C. be    D. being
39. News on sports \_\_\_\_\_ on TV every night at 8:30  
A. were    B. was    C. is    D. are
40. A half of men in this city \_\_\_\_\_ died from a lung cancer which is resulted from smoking.

- A. have    B. has    C. is    D. are
41. There \_\_\_\_\_ available for us to choose in my hometown.  
 A. isn't a lot of job            B. aren't many jobs  
 C. isn't a lot of jobs            D. aren't a lot of job
42. The Chinese \_\_\_\_\_ strong and old traditions and customs.  
 A. has many    B. have much    C. have many    D. has much
43. The percentage of Vietnamese people who moved to other countries to earn living \_\_\_\_\_ very high.  
 A. is    B. are    C. have    D. has
44. Natural disasters, in addition to pollution, \_\_\_\_\_ this area poor and dirty.  
 A. has made    B. have made    C. make    D. making
45. Half an hour \_\_\_\_\_ not enough for me to make an important decision.  
 A. are    B. is    C. being    D. were
46. Miss Lan, accompanied by her friends on the piano, \_\_\_\_\_ highly evaluated by the judges.  
 A. was    B. were    C. have been    D. has been
47. My new pair of pants \_\_\_\_\_ fit me.  
 A. isn't    B. doesn't    C. aren't    D. don't
48. I'm happy that everything \_\_\_\_\_ better now.  
 A. are    B. been    C. is    D. have
49. Statistics \_\_\_\_\_ a difficult course for many students to understand.  
 A. is    B. are    C. were    D. being
50. I think every man and woman \_\_\_\_\_ the right to have the freedom of speech.  
 A. have    B. has    C. are    D. is

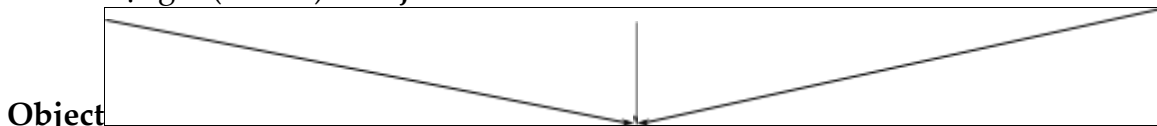
### PART III : ACTIVE VOICE AND PASSIVE VOICE IN ENGLISH

- THEORY

1. STRUCTURE (CẤU TRÚC)

1. Cách chuyển

Chủ động (Active): Subject + Verb +



Bị động (Positive): Subject + Verb + by Object

(to be + V-ed/ V3)

Ex: They planted a tree in the garden.

- A tree was planted in the garden (by them).

2. Các bước chuyển từ câu chủ động sang câu bị động

- Bước 1: Xác định tân ngữ trong câu chủ động, chuyển thành chủ ngữ câu bị động.
- Bước 2: Xác định thì (tense) trong câu chủ động rồi chuyển động từ về thể bị động theo công thức (to be + V-ed/ V3).

- Bước 3: Chuyển đổi chủ ngữ trong câu chủ động thành tân ngữ thêm "by" phía trước.

### 3. Bảng quy đổi các thì ở thể bị động

Thì	Chủ động (A)	Bị động (P)
<i>Hiện tại đơn</i>	S + V-inf/ s/ es + O	S + am/ is/ are + V-ed/ V3 + (by O)
<i>Hiện tại tiếp diễn</i>	S + am/ is/ are + V-ing + O	S + am/ is/ are + being + V-ed/ V3 + (by O)
<i>Hiện tại hoàn thành</i>	S + have/ has + V-ed/ V3 + O	S + have/ has + been + V-ed/ V3 + (by O)
<i>Quá khứ đơn</i>	S + V-ed/ V2 + O	S + was/ were + V-ed/ V3 + (by O)
<i>Quá khứ tiếp diễn</i>	S + was/ were + V-ing + O	S + was/ were + being + V-ed/ V3 + (by O)
<i>Quá khứ hoàn thành</i>	S + had + V-ed/ V3 + O	S + had + been + V-ed/ V3 + (by O)
<i>Tương lai đơn</i>	S + will + V-inf + O	S + will + be + V-ed/ V3 + (by O)
<i>Tương lai gần</i>	S + am/ is/ are going to + V-inf + O	S + am/ is/ are going to + be + V-ed/ V3 + (by O)
<i>Động từ khuyết thiếu</i>	S + ĐTKT + V-inf + O	S + ĐTKT + be + V-ed/ V3 + (by O)

### 4. Lưu ý

- Không dùng "By + tân ngữ" nếu chủ ngữ trong câu chủ động có tính mơ hồ, chung chung (people, something, someone, they, etc)

Ex: Someone stole my motorbike last night.

- My motorbike was stolen last night.

- Nếu S trong câu chủ động là: I, you, we, they, he, she => có thể bỏ đi trong câu bị động nếu ta không muốn đề cập tới chủ thể gây ra hành động.

Ex: My father waters this flower every morning.

- This flower is watered (by my father) every morning.

- Nếu là người hoặc vật trực tiếp gây ra hành động thì dùng "by", nhưng gián tiếp gây ra hành động thì dùng "with".

Ex: The bird was shot by the hunter.

The bird was shot with a gun.

- Trong câu chủ động nếu có trạng ngữ chỉ thời gian và trạng ngữ chỉ nơi chốn khi chuyển sang câu bị động sẽ có dạng:

**trạng từ chỉ nơi chốn + by + trạng từ chỉ thời gian**

Ex: Hoa is making a cake in the kitchen now.

- A cake is being made in the kitchen by Hoa now.

### 2. THE SPECIAL CASES (NHỮNG TRƯỜNG HỢP ĐẶC BIỆT)

BỊ ĐỘNG VỚI HAVE/HAS/HAD

S + have + O ( người ) + V1	S + have + O ( Vật ) + V3/ed
<b>BỊ ĐỘNG VỚI GET/GOT</b>	
S + get + O ( người ) + To_V	S + get + O ( Vật ) + V3/ed
<b>BỊ ĐỘNG VỚI NEED</b>	
S người + need + To-V	S vật + need + V-ing / To be V3.ed
<b>BỊ ĐỘNG VỚI ĐỘNG TỪ CHỈ Ý KIẾN</b>	
It + is /was + V3/ed + that + S + V.....	
S2 + be + V3/ed + To-V	( 2 V cùng thì )
S2 + be + V3/ed + To have V3/ ed	( 2 V khác thì )
<b>BỊ ĐỘNG VỚI V-ING / TO - V</b>	
To V => To be + V <sub>3/ed</sub> . Ex : I don't want to be laughed at.	V-ing => Being + V <sub>3/ed</sub> Ex : We dislike being cheated.
<b>BỊ ĐỘNG HAI TÂN NGỮ</b>	
S + V + O <sub>1</sub> + O <sub>2</sub>	
Ex: The student gave me a book	
<b>BD:</b> (C1) S + be + V3/ed + O <sub>2</sub> + ( by + O )	=> <b>I</b> was given a book by the student.
<b>BD:</b> (C2) S + be + V3/ed + to/for + O <sub>1</sub> + ( by + O )	=> <b>A book</b> was given to me by the student
- Các động từ thường đi với giới từ <b>"to"</b> : give, hand, lend, offer, send, show, pay, promise, read, throw, wish, owe.	
- Các động từ thường đi với giới từ <b>"for"</b> : buy, do, get, leave, make, order, save, spare.	
<b>Ghi chú</b> :- Động từ <b>Be</b> phải được chia cùng thì với câu chủ động hoặc cùng dạng với <b>V</b> chính.	

• **PRACTICES**

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.*

- I still can't believe it! My wallet \_\_\_\_\_ last night.  
A. was stolen    B. was stealing.    C. stolen    D. stole
- The current computer problem is \_\_\_\_\_ by some experts in the country.  
A. studying    B. being studying    C. being studied    D. been studied
- Something funny \_\_\_\_\_ in class yesterday.  
A. happened    B. was happened    C. happens    D. is happened
- The child's arm was swollen because he \_\_\_\_\_ by a bee.  
A. stung    B. had stung    C. had been stung    D. had being stung
- Today, many serious childhood diseases \_\_\_\_\_ by early immunization.  
A. are preventing    B. can prevent    C. prevent    D. can be prevented
- I \_\_\_\_\_ with you on that subject.  
A. am agree    B. am agreed    C. agreeing    D. agree
- Many U. S. automobiles \_\_\_\_\_ in Detroit, Michigan.  
A. manufacture    B. have manufactured  
C. are manufactured    D. are manufacturing
- Let's go ahead and do it now. Nothing \_\_\_\_\_ by waiting.  
A. accomplishes    B. accomplished  
C. has accomplished    D. will be accomplished
- "When \_\_\_\_\_?" "In 1928."  
A. penicillin was discovered    B. did penicillin discovered  
C. was penicillin discovered    D. did penicillin discover
- In recent years, the government has imposed pollution controls on automobile manufacturers. Both domestic and imported automobiles must \_\_\_\_\_ antipollution devices.  
A. equip with    B. be equipped with    C. equip by    D. be equipped by

11. A shortage of water is a problem in many parts of the world. In some areas, water \_\_\_\_\_ from the ground faster than nature can replenish the supply.  
A. is being taken    B. has been taking    C. is taking    D. has taken
12. Vitamin C \_\_\_\_\_ by the human body. It gets into the blood stream quickly.  
A. absorbs easily    B. is easily absorbing    C. is easily absorbed    D. absorbed easily
13. "When can I have my car back?" "I think it'll \_\_\_\_\_ late this afternoon."  
A. finish    B. be finished    C. have finished    D. be finish
14. I didn't think my interview went well, but I guess it must have. Despite all my anxiety, I \_\_\_\_\_ for the job I wanted. I'm really going to work hard to justify their confidence.  
A. was hiring    B. hired    C. got hiring    D. got hired
15. My country \_\_\_\_\_ the pursuit of world peace,  
A. is dedicating to    B. is dedicated to    C. is dedicating by    D. is dedicated by
16. About 15,000 years ago, northern Wisconsin \_\_\_\_\_ under ice a mile deep.  
A. buried    B. was burying    C. was buried    D. had buried
17. Ed was new on the job, but he quickly fit himself into the \_\_\_\_\_ routine of the office.  
A. established    B. establishing    C. establishes    D. establish
18. The Mayan Indians \_\_\_\_\_ In an accurate and sophisticated calendar more than seven centuries ago.  
A. were developed    B. developed  
C. are developed    D. have been developed
19. George is \_\_\_\_\_ Lisa.  
A. marry with    B. marry to    C. married with    D. married to
20. The rescuers \_\_\_\_\_ for their bravery and fortitude in locating the lost mountain climbers.  
A. were praised    B. praised    C. were praising    D. praising
21. It's hard to believe that this film \_\_\_\_\_ completely by computer.  
A. has been generated    B. has generated  
C. was been generating    D. was to generate
22. I wish my father had bought me a new mobile phone instead of having it \_\_\_\_\_ like that.  
A. to repair    B. repaired    C. repairing    D. being repaired
23. Smith \_\_\_\_\_ an actor years ago.  
A. is said to be    B. was said being  
C. was said have been    D. is said to have been
24. In the US the first stage of compulsory education \_\_\_\_\_ as elementary education.  
A. to be generally known    B. is generally known  
C. generally known    D. is generally knowing
25. Although he tried his best, he could not make his voice \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. to be heard    B. to hear    C. hearing    D. heard
26. The preparations \_\_\_\_\_ by the time the guests \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. had been finished / arrived    B. have finished / arrived  
C. had finished / were arriving    D. have been finished / were arrived
27. As students \_\_\_\_\_ to study remotely from home, away from on-campus welfare and support, taking their studies and exams online, they are increasingly becoming prey to essay mills.  
A. have forced    B. were being forced    C. have been forced    D. had been forced
28. Something \_\_\_\_\_ immediately to prevent teenagers from \_\_\_\_\_ in factories and mines.  
A. should be done / being exploited    B. we should do / exploiting

- C. should do I be exploited      D. should have done / exploited
29. Thousands of lives lost to air pollution, inactivity and unhealthy diets \_\_\_\_\_ each year if the UK takes the action needed to tackle climate change.  
A. couldn't be saved      B. could save      C. could be saving      D. could be saved
30. No longer \_\_\_\_\_ in our office since it \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. have typewriters been used / computerized  
B. typewriters have been used / was computerized  
C. have typewriters been used / was computerized  
D. typewriters have been used / computerized
31. While there's disagreement over its origins, the caste system \_\_\_\_\_ in a legal treatise called Manusmriti, dating from about 1,000 B.C.  
A. had been formalized      B. was formalized  
C. has been formalized      D. is formalized
32. The little girl started crying. She \_\_\_\_\_ her doll and no one was able to find it for her.  
A. has lost      B. had lost      C. was losing      D. was lost
33. The pilot project is believed \_\_\_\_\_ emissions, noise pollution and damage to road surfaces.  
A. to be reduced      B. to reducing      C. to reduce      D. to have been reduced
34. The first movie – length cartoon \_\_\_\_\_, "Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs;" set the standard for later full-length features such as "The Lion King" and "Pocahontas".  
A. that released ever      B. which ever released      C. ever released      D. released whatever
35. Surely the virtual elimination in our society of most fatal diseases, rising life-expectancy and falling mortality \_\_\_\_\_ us up?  
A. should be cheered      B. should be cheering  
C. should is cheering      D. should have been cheered
36. Today more than twice as many tabloids \_\_\_\_\_ than the so-called "quality press" titles such as The Times or The Guardian.  
A. have been sold      B. are sold      C. had been sold      D. will be sold
37. It \_\_\_\_\_ that cyberspace institutions or online universities will replace traditional educational establishments.  
A. anticipates      B. has anticipated      C. is anticipated      D. will be anticipating
38. Virtual classrooms \_\_\_\_\_ towards promoting the acquisition of knowledge as a lifelong endeavour, which occurs through global collaboration.  
A. will be geared      B. will gear      C. is geared      D. gear
39. Such terrible acts of child abuse \_\_\_\_\_ thanks to the continuing protests of the online community.  
A. were ignored      B. won't ignore      C. were not ignored      D. are ignored
40. I will never forget \_\_\_\_\_ to the Royal Garden Party, where superb cuisines were served amid luxurious surroundings.  
A. inviting      B. to invite      C. to be invited      D. being invited
41. His responsibilities \_\_\_\_\_ welcoming visiting dignitaries from foreign countries.  
A. included      B. were included      C. will be including      D. had been included
42. Though most fairy tales have happy endings, the stories usually deal with frightening situations - children \_\_\_\_\_ in the forest, terrifying giants, cruel stepmothers.  
A. are abandoned      B. abandoned      C. will abandon      D. had abandoned

43. \_\_\_\_\_ long thought to have no bones, small amounts of bone were recently found at the bases of the teeth in some species.  
 A. Although sharks were      B. Despite sharks being  
 C. In spite of sharks are      D. Nevertheless, sharks
44. Humans are pumping water out of the ground faster than it \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. can't be replenished      B. can be replenished  
 C. can replenish              D. can have been replenished
45. When archaeologists discovered the ruins of the Olympic Stadium, interest in the Games \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. was renewed      B. were renewed      C. they were renewed      D. renewed
46. Most people are unable to discern a difference between the usual city drinking water and the treated wastewater, although it is actually \_\_\_\_\_ for industrial purposes.  
 A. intending      B. being intend      C. have intended      D. intended
47. Visitors must sign in and show identification before \_\_\_\_\_ into the building.  
 A. allowing      B. being allowed      C. having allowed      D. to be allowed
48. The party \_\_\_\_\_ when she left.  
 A. had no sooner started      B. had hardly been started  
 C. had hardly started              D. had no sooner been started
49. It \_\_\_\_\_ that children are frequently better at recalling televised stories they have watched compared to those they have simply heard.  
 A. has been noted      B. been noted      C. is noting      D. notes

*Rewrite the following sentences into the passive voice*

1. People often take him for his brother.  
=>
2. Someone seems to have made a terrible mistake.  
=>
3. He recommends fitting new tires.  
=>
4. He suggested allowing tenants to buy their houses.  
=>
5. It is your duty to make tea at eleven o'clock.  
=>
6. People know that he is armed.  
=>
7. Someone has seen him pick up the gun.  
=>
8. We know that you were in town on the night of the crime.  
=>
9. They think that your father was a spy in the World War II.  
=>
10. We believe that he has special knowledge which may be useful to the police.  
=>
11. You needn't have done this.  
=>
12. He likes people to call him "Sir".  
=>
13. Don't touch this switch..

=>

14. You have to see it to believe it.

=>

15. He doesn't like people laughing at him.

=>

16. You don't need to wind this watch.

=>

17. They shouldn't have told him.

=>

18. Don't speak until someone speaks to you.

=>

19. It is impossible to do this.

=>

20. He hates people making fun of him.

=>

21. Everyone thought that the Government had ignored their opinions.

=>

22. They gave him artificial respiration.

=>

23. Before they invented printing people had to write everything by hand.

=>

*Rewrite the sentences, using but not altering the bold word in brackets, so that the meaning stays the same.*

1. People say he is a good doctor.                    **(It)**

=>

2. Nobody told me about it.                    **(not)**

=>

3. I don't like pupils asking stupid questions.                    **(being)**

=>

4. She doesn't like the others laughing at her.                    **(laughed)**

=>

5. The boss had his secretary type all these letters.                    **(typed)**

=>

6. They employed the workers to repair their house.                    **(had)**

=>

7. They say that elephants never forget.                    **(forget)**

=>

8. I don't want the others think of me as a burden.                    **(thought)**

=>

9. People thought that he killed his wife.                    **(been)**

=>

10. People believe that 13 is unlucky number.                    **(be)**

=>

11. People expect that the strike will begin tomorrow.                    **(begin)**

12. I remember that someone gave me that shirt on my birthday.                    **(remember)**

=>

13. He recommended using secondhand clothes.                    **(should)**

=>



14. John made me leave soon. (I)

=>

15. It is your duty to do your homework before class-time. (You)

=>

*Both sentences in each pair have the same meaning. Complete the second sentences:*

1. The crowd was slowly filling the huge stadium.

=>The huge stadium \_\_\_\_\_ by the crowd.

2. The invention of the computer simplified the work of accountants.

=>Since the computer \_\_\_\_\_ the work of accountants \_\_\_\_\_ simplified

3. "I'd take out some travel insurance if I were you, Mr. Smith.

=>Mr. Smith \_\_\_\_\_ take out some travel insurance.

4. Someone used a knife to open this window.

=>This window \_\_\_\_\_ a knife.

5. You will hear from us when we have finished dealing with your complaint.

=>After your complaint \_\_\_\_\_ you will hear from us.

6. An announcement of their engagement appeared in the local paper.

=>Their engagement \_\_\_\_\_ in the local paper.

7. Nobody ever heard anything of David again.

=>Nothing \_\_\_\_\_ David again

8. They paid Sheila \$1000 as a special bonus.

=>\$ 1000 \_\_\_\_\_ Sheila as a special bonus.

## PART IV : DIRECT AND INDIRECT SPEECH IN ENGLISH

### • THEORY

Lời nói gián tiếp (reported speech) là lời tường thuật lại ý của người nói, đôi khi không cần phải dùng đúng những từ của người nói.

Direct speech: Peter said, "I am very busy." (Peter nói: "Tôi rất bận.")

Reported Speech: Peter said (that) he was very busy. (Peter nói (rằng) anh ấy rất bận.)

ĐTNX ( S )	O ( sau V )	TTSH + N
I	me	my

<b>We</b>	<b>us</b>	<b>our</b>
<b>You</b>	<b>you</b>	<b>your</b>
<b>They</b>	<b>them</b>	<b>their</b>
<b>He</b>	<b>him</b>	<b>his</b>
<b>She</b>	<b>her</b>	<b>her</b>
<b>It</b>	<b>it</b>	<b>its</b>

\* Câu tường thuật là câu thuật lại ý của người nói

\* Khi động từ tường thuật ở thì **quá khứ**, để đổi từ câu trực tiếp sang câu tường thuật => ta dùng động từ giới thiệu là "said" hoặc "told" và đổi **BA yếu tố chính là : THÌ, NGÔI , TRẠNG NGỮ I.LÙI THÌ ( lùi xuống 1 thì )**

<b>CÂU TRỰC TIẾP</b>	<b>CÂU TƯỜNG THUẬT</b>
1. Hiện tại đơn <b>V / Vs / Ves / am / is / are / don't + V1 / doesn't V1</b>	=> Quá khứ đơn <b>V2 / Ved / was / were / didn't + V</b>
2. Hiện tại tiếp diễn <b>am / is / are + V-ing</b>	=> Quá khứ tiếp diễn <b>Was / were + V-ing</b>
3. Hiện tại hoàn thành <b>Have / has + V3/ed</b>	=> Quá khứ hoàn thành <b>Had + V3/ed</b>
4. Quá khứ đơn <b>Was / were / V2 / Ved</b>	=> Quá khứ hoàn thành <b>Had + V3/ed</b>
5. Quá khứ tiếp diễn <b>Was / were + V-ing</b>	=> QKHTTD <b>Had + been + V-ing</b>
6. Tương lai đơn <b>will + V</b>	=> Tương lai trong quá khứ <b>would + V</b>
7. can	=> could
8. may	=> might
9. must / need	=> had to
<b>□ Thì QKHT , ought to, could , should, might, used to, would rather, had better... =&gt; giữ nguyên</b>	

## II. ĐỔI NGÔI

- **Đổi Ngôi thứ nhất (I, We, me, us, my, our, mine, ours)** phù hợp với **CHỦ NGỮ** trong mđ chính
- **Đổi Ngôi thứ hai (you, your, yours)** phù hợp với **TÂN NGỮ** trong mệnh đề chính
- **Ngôi thứ BA (he, she, it, him, her, his, they, them, their)** => không đổi

**Note! ( Đổi ngôi thứ nhất số ít và số nhiều sang câu gián tiếp )**

<b>TRỰC TIẾP</b>	<b>TƯỜNG THUẬT</b>	<b>TRỰC TIẾP</b>	<b>TƯỜNG THUẬT</b>
I	• He ( nam ) /	We	• they
me	She ( nữ )	us	• them
my	• him / her	our	• their
mine	• his / her	ours	• theirs
myself	• his / hers	ourselves	• themselves
	• himself /		
	herself		

## ĐỔI TRẠNG TỪ

TRỰC TIẾP	TƯỜNG THUẬT
1. This	=> That
2. These	=> Those
3. Now	=> Then
4. Here	=> There
5. Today	=> That day
6. Tonight	=> That night
7. ago	=> before
8. yesterday	=> the previous day / the day before
9. tomorrow	=> the following day / the day after
10. last....	=> the previous.....
11. next.....	=> the following

**Lưu ý: không dùng dấu ngoặc kép, dấu chấm hỏi, dấu chấm than, dấu hai chấm trong lời nói tường thuật**

- Các trường hợp không đổi thì

1. Khi động từ tường thuật ở thì hiện tại hoặc tương lai ( say, tell, have told, will say...)
2. Thì quá khứ đơn có thời gian xác định .
3. Diễn tả 1 chân lý, sự thật hiển nhiên
4. câu điều kiện loại 2 và 3

**IV. CÁC MẪU CÂU TƯỜNG THUẬT CẦN NẮM**

**1. Statements**

( Khi động từ tường thuật ở thì **quá khứ**: said , told -> ta phải **lùi xuống 1 thì** , Khi động từ tường thuật ở thì **hiện tại** : say , have told -> ta **giữ nguyên thì** )

- S + said + that + S + V ( lùi xuống 1 thì ) + adv
- S + said **to O** + that + S + V ( lùi xuống 1 thì ) + adv
- S + told **O** + that + S + V ( lùi xuống 1 thì ) + adv

**2. Questions**

- S + asked + ( O ) if / whether + S + V ( lùi thì ) \_\_\_\_\_
- wondered
- wanted to know Wh- + S + V ( lùi thì ) \_\_\_\_\_

**3. Requests, orders, offers, advices, ect.**

- **INDIRECTED SPEECH WITH INFINITIVE**

Yêu cầu	: asked	+ O	
Mời	: invited	+ O	
Khuyên	: advised	+ O	
Nhắc nhở	: reminded	+ O	
Ra lệnh	: ordred	+ O	To-V
Khuyến khích	: encouraged	+ O	
Cảnh báo	: warned	+ O	
Muốn	: wanted	+ O	
Đồng ý	: agreed	To-V	
Hứa	: promised	To-V	

- **INDIRECTED SPEECH WITH GERUND**

Cám ơn	: thanked	+ O	+ for	
Xin lỗi	: apologized	( to O )	+ for	

<b>Buộc tội</b>	: <b>accused</b>	+ O	+ <b>of</b>	
<b>Chúc mừng</b>	: <b>congratulated</b>	+ O	+ <b>on</b>	+ V-ing
<b>Cảnh báo</b>	: warned	+ O	+ against	
<b>Ngăn ngừa</b>	: stopped / prevented	+ O	+ from	
<b>Khăng khăng</b>	: insisted		+ on/upon	
<b>Đề nghị</b>	: suggested			+ V-ing
suggested that + S + ( should )		+ V		
<b>Phủ nhận</b>	: <b>denied</b>			+ <b>V-ing</b>
<b>Thừa nhận</b>	: admitted			+ Ving / having V3/ed

#### 4. Exclamation

Câu cảm thán thường được thuật lại bằng động từ *exclaim, say that*.

Ex: Peter said, "How beautiful your dress is!"

→ Peter **exclaimed / said** (that) my dress **was** beautiful.

(Peter *thốt lên/ nói rằng áo tôi đẹp quá.*)

#### 5. Mixed types

Khi đổi câu hỗn hợp sang câu gián tiếp ta đổi theo từng phần, dùng động từ giới thiệu riêng cho từng phần.

Ex: Peter said, "Hi, Mary. How are you?"

→ Peter greeted Mary and asked how she was.

#### • PRACTICES

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.*

- She told the boys \_\_\_\_\_ on the grass.  
A. do not play    B. not playing    C. did not play    D. not to play
- The teacher told Jim \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. to stop talking    B. stop talking    C. stops talking    D. stopped talking
- The mother told her son \_\_\_\_\_ so impolitely.  
A. not behave    B. not to behave    C. not behaving    D. did not behave
- He asked \_\_\_\_\_ him the books he needed.  
A. her to lend    B. she to lend    C. she has lent    D. she lends
- She told him \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. patient    B. to be patient    C. was patient    D. that being patient
- Tom told me that they \_\_\_\_\_ meat since \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. have not eaten / last year    B. did not eat / the following year  
C. had not eaten / the year before    D. would not eat / the next year
- She said she \_\_\_\_\_ take me home after school.  
A. would    B. did    C. must    D. had
- I have ever told you he \_\_\_\_\_ unreliable.  
A. is    B. were    C. had been    D. would be
- John said he had worked on the report since \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. yesterday    B. two days ago    C. the day before    D. the next day
- John told me that \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. I must go now    B. he must go now    C. he had to go now    D. he had to go then
- She said she \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. was very tired last night    B. was very tired the night before  
C. had been very tired last night    D. had been very tired the night before
- John said that he had worked as a computer programmer five years \_\_\_\_\_

- A. ago    B. before    C. later    D. then
13. They said that they \_\_\_\_\_ their parents to repaint the house at 10 o'clock the previous day.  
A. had helped    B. was helping    C. have been helping    D. had been helping
14. The teacher advised his students \_\_\_\_\_ that book carefully because it \_\_\_\_\_ good for \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. to read / was / them    B. read / is / him  
C. that reading / be / us    D. to read / was / you
15. John said, "It is hot. Please open the window, Mary."  
A. John asked Mary it was hot and open the window.  
B. John said it was hot and asked Mary to open the window.  
C. John asked Mary it was hot to open the window.  
D. John said It was hot Mary to open the window.
16. I \_\_\_\_\_ you everything I am doing, and you have to do the same.  
A. will tell    B. would tell    C. told    D. was telling
17. John said that his brother \_\_\_\_\_ at home then.  
A. is    B. was    C. were    D. has been
18. John told me that he \_\_\_\_\_ his best in the exam \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. would do / the day before    B. had done / the following day  
C. will do / tomorrow    D. would do / the following day
19. John wanted to know if I was leaving the \_\_\_\_\_ Saturday.  
A. following    B. ago    C. previous    D. before
20. Jason asked me \_\_\_\_\_ me the book the day before.  
A. if who gave    B. if who has given  
C. who had given    D. that who had given
21. He asked me \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. where we could meet the following day  
B. where if we could meet tomorrow  
C. that where we could meet the following day  
D. where can we meet tomorrow
22. "Who does this car belong to?" said the woman.  
A. The woman asked me who does this car belong to.  
B. The woman asked who did that car belong to.  
C. The woman told who that car belonged to.  
D. The woman wanted to know who that car belonged to.
23. I wonder \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. where he has gone    B. where has he gone  
C. he has gone where    D. has he gone where
24. John asked me \_\_\_\_\_ in English.  
A. what does this word mean    B. what that word means  
C. what did this word mean    D. what that word meant
25. Could you please tell me \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. what is the time    B. what the time    C. what the time is    D. is what the time
26. Nancy asked me \_\_\_\_\_ to New York the summer \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. why I had not gone/ previous    B. why hadn't I gone/ following  
C. why had I not gone / after    D. why I had not gone / before

27. She asked her boyfriend \_\_\_\_\_  
 A. where was her hat                      B. where her hat was  
 C. was where her hat                      D. her hat was where
28. Peter said, "Hello, Mary. How are you?"  
 A. Peter greeted Mary and asked how she was.  
 B. Peter said hello Mary and how she was.  
 C. Peter told Mary hello and how she was.  
 D. Peter said Mary hello and asked how was she.
29. John asked me \_\_\_\_\_  
 A. when were you born      B. when had you born  
 C. when I had been born      D. when I was born
30. John asked Mary \_\_\_\_\_ that film the night before.  
 A. that she saw      B. had she seen      C. if she had seen      D. if had she seen
31. John asked me \_\_\_\_\_ interested in football.  
 A. if I were      B. if were I      C. if was I      D. if I was
32. "You are an accountant, aren't you, Daisy?" said John.  
 A. John asked Daisy was she an accountant.  
 B. John asked Daisy if she wasn't an accountant.  
 C. John asked Daisy whether she was an accountant or not.  
 D. John said that Daisy was an accountant.
33. He wanted to know \_\_\_\_\_ for a picnic the previous morning.  
 A. if we had been going      B. that if we had been going  
 C. we were going                      D. that we were going
34. He asked his sister \_\_\_\_\_  
 A. that she needs any help      B. whether you need any help  
 C. if she needed any help      D. if did she need any help
35. John asked us not to make so much noise \_\_\_\_\_ he was working.  
 A. and that if      B. and      C. and that      D. and added that
36. He asked me \_\_\_\_\_ Robert and I said I did not know \_\_\_\_\_  
 A. that did I know / who were Robert      B. that I knew / who Robert were  
 C. if I knew / who Robert was      D. whether I knew / who was Robert
37. Johnny said \_\_\_\_\_ he had had more money he would have rebuilt his house.  
 A. if that      B. that if      C. that      D. whether that
38. Mary told me \_\_\_\_\_ home at that moment she \_\_\_\_\_ her parents with the farm work.  
 A. that if she was / had helped  
 B. if she were / will have helped  
 C. that if she had been / would have helped  
 D. that she had been / would have helped
39. Jane asked her teacher \_\_\_\_\_ the homework that week.  
 A. if she had to do      B. if she has to do      C. that she must do      D. if did she have to do
40. The host asked Peter \_\_\_\_\_ tea or coffee.  
 A. whether he preferred      B. that he preferred  
 C. did he prefer                      D. if he prefers
41. Tim asked Sarah \_\_\_\_\_ English so far.  
 A. she had been learning how long      B. how long was she learning

- C. how long she has been learning      D. how long she had been learning
42. "Teacher, may I go out?" the student said.  
 A. The student asked his teacher for permission to go out.  
 B. The student told his teacher to go out.  
 C. The student suggested his teacher go out.  
 D. The student wanted to get a recommendation to go out.
43. "Hurry up! Do it quickly!" the group leader \_\_\_\_\_  
 A. advised    B. urged    C. agreed    D. promised
44. "Waiter, please bring me some more tea," the customer \_\_\_\_\_  
 A. begged    B. ordered    C. promised    D. urged
45. "Go on, Susan! Apply the job," the father.  
 A. The father invited Susan to apply the job  
 B. The father denied applying the job.  
 C. The father encouraged Susan to apply the job.  
 D. The father wanted Susan not to apply the job.
46. "Let's go out for a drink," said Peter.  
 A. Peter suggested going out for a drink.      B. Peter let us go out for a drink.  
 C. Peter promised to go out for a drink.      D. Peter thanked on having a drink.
47. Mary apologized the teacher for being late for class.  
 A. "I will be late," Mary said to the teacher.  
 B. "I won't be late," Mary said to the teacher.  
 C. "Excuse me for being late, sir," Mary said to the teacher.  
 D. "I won't be late for the class," Mary said to the teacher.
48. " \_\_\_\_\_," my father advised me.  
 A. You ought to work harder      B. I would rather work harder  
 C. It is my duty to work harder      D. It is worth working harder
49. "Thank you very much for your help, Tom," said Mary.  
 A. Mary thanked Tom for helping her.  
 B. Mary told Tom to help her.  
 C. Mary wanted Tom to help her and said thanks.  
 D. Mary would like Tom to help her.
50. "What a beautiful dress you have, Mary!" Peter said.  
 A. Peter complimented Mary on her beautiful dress.  
 B. Peter said what did Mary have a beautiful dress.  
 C. Peter asked Mary to have a beautiful dress.  
 D. Peter advised Mary to have a beautiful dress.

*Complete the second sentence in each pairs so that the meaning stays the same:*

1. 'It's pouring with rain down here.'  
 => She told me
2. 'I'll come and see you on Friday if that's all right.'  
 => She said that
3. The club lost quite a lot of money last month  
 => The treasurer told the meeting
4. 'I'll have finished writing the report by the time you get here.'  
 => She promised me

5. 'I enjoyed myself last night'  
=> Clare said that
6. "What are the most interesting sights?"  
=> A young man wanted to know
7. "Have you got a town plan?"  
=> A German student asked
8. "Where can we stay?"  
=> A French couple wondered
9. "How long does the film last?" Carol asked.  
=> Carol asked
10. "Are there guided tours?"  
=> A Japanese man asked
11. "Which way is the castle?"  
=> A tourist wanted to know
12. Peter to Nick: Would you like to stay for lunch?  
=> Peter invited
13. Tim to Martin: You ought to see a doctor.  
=> Tim advised
14. Louise: I'm sorry I caused so much trouble.  
=> Louise apologized
15. Andy: . Why don't we go out for the day?  
=> Andy suggested
16. Tracy: I'll do the washing up.  
=> Tracy offered
17. Pat to Jane: You're going to post the letter, don't forget.  
=> Pat reminded Jane
18. Travel agent: Yes, we made a mistake.  
=> The travel agent admitted
19. Steve to Mike: Don't touch the electric wires.  
=> Steve warned
20. Are you taking much money with you to France?  
=> My bank manager wanted to know

*Change the following sentences into reported speeches. Use one of the reporting verbs given below: advise, promise, suggest, inquire, warn, agree, threaten, apologize, complain, refuse*

1. "Why don't we invite Jane to dinner tonight?" Mrs. Stone said.  
=>
2. "Where is Mount Everest?" asked a student.  
=>
3. "If you-scream, I'll shoot," said the robber to the girl.  
=>
4. "I have been standing in this queue for two hours!" said the man.  
=>
5. "You should stay in the shade and wear a hat, Mrs. Bent," said the doctor  
=>
6. "You'll burn yourself, Tom, if you keep playing with matches," said his sister.



=>

7. "I'm really sorry that I woke you up this morning, Harry," said Chris

=>

8. I think you are right, Tracey. We ought to let the others know," said Kerry

=>

9. "I'll definitely pay you back by the end of the week, Mum," said Sue

=>

10. I will not let you borrow my car tomorrow, Graham," said Michael

=>

*Change the following sentences into reported speech. Use the verbs given in the box. Use each word once only.*

<i>suggest</i>	<i>agree</i>	<i>claim</i>	<i>boast</i>
<i>whisper</i>	<i>admit</i>	<i>shout</i>	<i>protest</i>

1. "I can speak six languages fluently," he said.

=>

2. "Let's go to the cinema this evening," he said.

=>

3. "Stop that noise in the classroom," said the teacher.

=>

4. "That car you are driving is my property," the man said.

=>

5. "Yes, I broke the windows with my catapults," the boy said.

=>

6. "You can't take me to prison. I know my rights," the man said.

=>

7. "I shall always love you," said his fiancée.

=>

8. "Well, yes, if the weather is bad, we can't go,"

=>

*Continue reporting each sentence, using only the number of words stated in brackets.*

1. "Do you think you could possibly tell me what the time is?"

=>David asked me \_\_\_\_\_ (five words)

2. "Excuse me, but I wonder if you'd mind opening the window."

=>The man sitting next to me asked me \_\_\_\_\_ (four words)

3. "You go down this street, turn left, then take the second turning on the right. The cinema is just down the street on the left."

=>A passer-by told me how \_\_\_\_\_ (five words)

4. "I want to know how much this bike cost. Can you tell me?"

=>John asked how \_\_\_\_\_ (four words)

5. "Look, don't worry, I'll help you if you like."

=>Sue said she \_\_\_\_\_ (three words)

6. "All right, I tell you what, the car's yours for, let's say \$ 500."

=>The salesman said I could \_\_\_\_\_ (five words)

7. "I hope you don't mind my saying this, but you're being a bit silly, aren't you?"

=>Peter told me I \_\_\_\_\_ (five words)

## PART V : CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

- THEORY
- CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

### 1. Câu điều kiện loại 1

Công thức	Cách dùng
<b>If + S + V(hiện tại đơn), S + will/can/may/should/ought to/must + V</b> If it <u>rains</u> , we <u>will stay</u> at home. (Nếu trời mưa, chúng tôi sẽ ở nhà).	- diễn tả về tình huống có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.
<b>If + S + V(hiện tại đơn), V/don't V + ...</b> If you <u>know</u> the answer, <u>raise</u> your hand. (Nếu bạn biết câu trả lời, hãy giơ tay). If you <u>need</u> the help, <u>don't hesitate</u> to call me. (Nếu bạn cần giúp đỡ, đừng chần chừ gọi cho mình nhé).	- dùng để đưa ra lời chỉ dẫn, yêu cầu hoặc mệnh lệnh.
<b>If + S + V(hiện tại đơn), S + V(hiện tại đơn)</b> If you <u>eat</u> too much, you <u>are</u> overweight. (Nếu bạn ăn nhiều, bạn sẽ béo phì). If you <u>put</u> a bowl of water in the sun, it evaporates. (Nếu bạn để một bát nước dưới trời nắng, nó sẽ bốc hơi).	- diễn tả sự thật hiển nhiên, một quy luật tự nhiên hoặc một hành động xảy ra thường xuyên.
<b>Should + S + V (bare), S + will/can/may...+ V</b> <u>Should</u> you see her, remind her to call me as soon as possible. (Nếu bạn gặp cô ấy, nhắc cô ấy gọi cho mình càng sớm càng tốt nhé").	- để câu nói thêm trang trọng ta dùng đảo ngữ (thay "if" bằng "should")

### 2. Câu điều kiện loại 2

Công thức	Cách dùng
<b>If + S + V(quá khứ đơn), S + would/could/might + V(bare)</b> If I <u>had</u> money now, I <u>would buy</u> a new car. (Nếu tôi có tiền bây giờ, tôi sẽ mua một chiếc ô tô mới).	- diễn tả những giả định trái ngược với thực tế ở hiện tại
<b>Were + S + (to V)... , S + would/could/might + V(bare)</b> <u>Were</u> you in my situation, what <u>would</u> you do? (Bạn sẽ làm gì nếu bạn ở trong hoàn cảnh của tôi?)	- để câu nói thêm trang trọng ta dùng đảo ngữ

### 3. Câu điều kiện loại 3

Công thức	Cách dùng
<b>If + S + V(quá khứ hoàn thành), S + would/could/might+ have + Vp2</b> If I <u>had seen</u> the football match last night, I <u>would have told</u> you about it. (Nếu tối qua tôi xem trận bóng đó, tôi đã có thể kể với bạn về nó).	- diễn tả những giả định trái ngược với thực tế ở quá khứ.
<b>Had + S + Vp2, S + would/could/might+ have + Vp2</b> <u>Had</u> I <u>known</u> you were coming to Ha Noi, I <u>wouldn't have gone</u> on holiday.	- để câu nói thêm trang trọng ta dùng đảo ngữ (đảo "had" của mệnh đề

(Nếu tôi biết bạn tới Hà Nội thì tôi có lẽ đã không đi du lịch).	“if” lên đầu).
<b>If it hadn't been for + N, S + would/could/might+ have + Vp2</b> <b>= Had it not been for + N, S + would/could/might+ have + Vp2</b> <b>= But for/without + N, S + would/could/might+ have + Vp2</b> (nếu không có...thì...đã) If it hadn't been for his father's help, he <u>wouldn't have succeeded</u> . = <u>Had it not been for</u> his father's help, he <u>wouldn't have succeeded</u> . = <u>But for/without</u> his father's help, he <u>wouldn't have succeeded</u> . (Nếu không có sự giúp đỡ của bố anh ấy, anh ấy có lẽ đã không thành công).	- để nhấn mạnh danh từ trong câu điều kiện loại 3.

#### 4. Câu điều kiện kết hợp

Công thức	Cách dùng
<b>If + S + V( quá khứ hoàn thành), S + would/could + V(bare)</b> If I <u>had had</u> breakfast, I <u>wouldn't feel</u> hungry now. (Nếu tôi đã ăn sáng thì bây giờ tôi đã không thấy đói).	kết hợp câu điều kiện loại 3 và loại 2.
<b>If + S + V( quá khứ đơn), S + would/could/might + have + Vp2</b> If I <u>didn't</u> I <u>have to</u> go to school today, I <u>would have gone</u> on holiday with my parents yesterday. (Nếu như hôm nay tôi không phải đi học thì có lẽ hôm qua tôi đã đi nghỉ mát với ba mẹ rồi).	kết hợp câu điều kiện loại 2 và loại 3.

- **WISH CLAUSE (IF ONLY)**

#### Wish & If only

Sau **wish** và **if only** có 3 loại mệnh đề được dùng để chỉ sự ao ước ở tương lai, hiện tại và quá khứ.

#### 1. Ao ước ở tương lai (Future wish): mong điều gì đó sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai.

**S + wish/ If only + S + would / could + V<sub>(bare - inf)</sub>**

Ex: I wish we **would not have** an exam tomorrow.

(Uớc gì ngày mai chúng tôi không phải thi.)

If only it **would stop** raining, we could go out.

(Giá mà trời tạnh mưa, chúng ta có thể đi chơi.)

#### 2. Ao ước ở hiện tại (Present wish): ước điều không thể xảy ra trong hiện tại.

**S + wish/If only + S + V<sub>(past simple)</sub>**

Ex: I wish I **was** rich. (Uớc gì tôi giàu có.) → but I'm poor now

If only I **knew** her name. (Uớc gì tôi biết tên cô ấy.)

- **Were** có thể được dùng thay cho **was** trong cấu trúc này, nhất là trong lối văn trịnh trọng.

Ex: I wish I **were** rich.

#### 3. Ao ước ở quá khứ (Past wish): ước điều gì đó đã hoặc đã không xảy ra trong quá khứ.

**S + wish/If only + S + V<sub>(past perfect)</sub>**

Ex: I wish I **had succeeded** in the final exam.

(Uớc gì tôi đã đậu kỳ thi cuối khóa.) → but I failed the exam

If only you **hadn't said** that. (Giá mà anh đã không nói điều đó.)

- **PRACTICES**

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. If she \_\_\_\_\_ me, tell her to leave a message.

- A. calls    B. will call    C. called    D. would call
2. John will pick me up \_\_\_\_\_  
A. in case it rained    B. if it rains  
C. provided that it would rain    D. unless it rained
3. \_\_\_\_\_ you want to go out during a lecture, what should you do?  
A. As    B. If    C. Though    D. When
4. If you won the lottery, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. what will you do    B. what had you done  
C. what would you do    D. what did you do
5. If we start the new project, we \_\_\_\_\_ more staff.  
A. will need    B. need    C. would need    D. needed
6. If John \_\_\_\_\_ 10 years younger, he \_\_\_\_\_ for the Job.  
A. is / will apply    B. was / has applied  
C. had been / will have applied    D. were / would apply
7. You will not be allowed to attend the club meeting \_\_\_\_\_ you are a member.  
A. unless    B. if    C. providing that    D. supposed that
8. \_\_\_\_\_ people had not cut so many trees.  
A. If    B. If only    C. Unless    D. Even if
9. If the president \_\_\_\_\_ last night's train, he \_\_\_\_\_ here now.  
A. took / were    B. were taking / is  
C. had taken / would have been    D. had taken / would be
10. If he \_\_\_\_\_ more time, he \_\_\_\_\_ decorating the baby's room before she was born.  
A. has / will have finished    B. had / would finish  
C. had had / would have finished    D. had had / would finish
11. \_\_\_\_\_ he arrives soon, we will have to start the conference without him.  
A. Suppose    B. Provided    C. Unless    D. If
12. \_\_\_\_\_ as much money as Bill Gates of Microsoft, I would retire.  
A. If I had    B. If I have    C. Unless I had    D. If I had had
13. \_\_\_\_\_ here, he would help us with these troubles.  
A. Were our father    B. If our father had been  
C. Was our father    D. Unless our father were
14. \_\_\_\_\_ more carefully, he would not have had the accident yesterday.  
A. If Peter drove    B. Had Peter driven  
C. Only if Peter could drive    D. Unless Peter had driven
15. If it \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow, I will not have to water the plants.  
A. will rain    B. is raining    C. would rain    D. rains
16. We \_\_\_\_\_ more chances to attack during the last game if the strikers \_\_\_\_\_ the ball more exactly.  
A. will have had / have passed    B. will have / were passing  
C. would have / passed    D. would have had / had passed
17. \_\_\_\_\_, tell him I have gone to London.  
A. If Mr. Jones called    B. Unless Mr. Jones calls  
C. Should Mr. Jones call    D. If Mr. Jones will call
18. \_\_\_\_\_ you apologize for what you have done, I will never be your friend.  
A. Unless    B. If    C. As if    D. Even if

19. Practice more and more \_\_\_\_\_ you can never speak English fluently.  
A. and B. or C. incase D. if
20. It was much colder than we had thought \_\_\_\_\_ we had taken more warm clothes.  
A. If B. Unless C. But for D. If only
21. \_\_\_\_\_, they would not have had such a successful conference.  
A. Due to good preparations B. But for they had had good preparations  
C. Without good preparations D. If their good preparations
22. If you \_\_\_\_\_ her, what \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. are / will you do B. have been / might you do  
C. were / would you do D. had been / will you have done
23. You should not eat more \_\_\_\_\_ yourself ill.  
A. or you will make B. in case you would make  
C. if you would make D. unless you would have made
24. I would have crashed the car \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. unless you warned me B. in case you warn me  
C. if there were a warning D. but for your warning
25. Call your parents \_\_\_\_\_ they will start to worry.  
A. if only B. otherwise C. if so D. in case
26. If it \_\_\_\_\_ for the life jacket, I would have drowned.  
A. is not B. was not C. has not been D. had not been
27. He may never speak to me again if he \_\_\_\_\_ out what happened.  
A. will find B. was finding C. finds D. had found
28. \_\_\_\_\_ heavy traffic we would not have been late for the train.  
A. If B. If only C. Supposed D. But for
29. She had to have the operation or she \_\_\_\_\_  
A. dies B. will die C. would die D. would have died
30. Our cat \_\_\_\_\_ you if you rub her belly.  
A. will bite B. would bite C. will have bitten D. would have bitten
31. \_\_\_\_\_ the boat leaves on time, we will arrive in Paris by the morning.  
A. If only B. Provided that C. But for D. Without
32. \_\_\_\_\_ to the music after 10 pm, you should turn the volume down or use an earphone.  
A. If you are listening B. Unless you listen  
C. Provided you won't listen D. Otherwise you listen
33. If Mary \_\_\_\_\_ so long on the computer last night, her eyes \_\_\_\_\_ red now.  
A. did not worked / do not get B. were not working / did not get  
C. had not been working / would not get D. had not worked / would not have got
34. If I \_\_\_\_\_ him this afternoon, I \_\_\_\_\_ him in the evening.  
A. do not see / will phone B. will not see / phone  
C. did not see / would phone D. have not seen / am going to phone
35. I am so tired from working so hard \_\_\_\_\_ at home now.  
A. Supposing that I had been B. if I was  
C. Provided that I was D. If only I were
36. If they \_\_\_\_\_ him yesterday, he \_\_\_\_\_ to the party now.  
A. would not have insulted / were coming B. did not insult / will come  
C. had not insulted / would have come D. had not insulted / would come

37. Try harder \_\_\_\_\_ you will lose everything you have.  
A. provided that B. supposing that C. if D. unless
38. \_\_\_\_\_ his best contribution, our team would not have won the game.  
A. But for B. If C. If only D. Unless
39. The salesgirl told the boy that if he did not leave she \_\_\_\_\_ the police immediately.  
A. will call B. called C. would call D. would have called
40. Submit the report to the boss \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
A. unless you would finish B. provided that you would finished  
C. if you have finished D. if only you finished
41. Tina's train arrived ahead of schedule \_\_\_\_\_ I had decided to go to the train station early, she would have waited there for more than twenty minutes before I arrived.  
A. unless B. if C. otherwise D. supposed that
42. I wish \_\_\_\_\_ at the seaside now.  
A. I am B. if only I were C. I had been D. I were
43. Peter behaved so badly at the party. I wish \_\_\_\_\_ him.  
A. I do not invite B. I did not invite C. I had not invited D. I would not invite
44. I wish she \_\_\_\_\_ up for a moment and let someone else speak.  
A. will shut B. would shut C. is going to shut D. shut
45. Peter wishes that he \_\_\_\_\_ part in the game, but he cannot because of his injured leg.  
A. can take B. is taking C. were taking D. had taken
46. I wish you \_\_\_\_\_ borrowing money from me. You have never paid it back.  
A. would not keep B. do not keep C. are not keeping D. have not kept
47. Mary told her friends that she would arrive on time. She wishes she \_\_\_\_\_ to be on time because now they are waiting for her.  
A. promised B. did not promise  
C. would not promise D. had not promised
48. Peter's flat is hot. He wishes \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. that it were not B. if it was not C. it had not been D. if it would not
49. The film was so bad. We wish \_\_\_\_\_ our money on it.  
A. if we did not spend B. that we did not spend  
C. that we had not spent D. whether we had not spent
50. We wish it \_\_\_\_\_ raining soon so that we can depart our trip.  
A. stops B. will stop C. would stop D. had stopped

*Rewrite each sentence, beginning as shown, so that the meaning stays the same.*

1. I didn't have an umbrella with me and so I got wet.  
=> I wouldn't
2. I'll call the police if you don't leave me alone!  
=> Unless
3. in the snowy weather we don't go to school.  
=> If
4. Without Jack's help, I wouldn't have been able to move the table.  
=> If
5. You drink too much coffee, that's why you can't sleep.  
=> If you
6. You press this button to stop the machine.

=> If

7. Make me some coffee, and I'll give you one of my biscuits.

=> If

8. If you hadn't told me about Sue's hair, I wouldn't have noticed

=> Unless

9. If you see Peter, tell him he should be here at 8.00.

=> If you should

10. I wouldn't accept if you asked me to marry you!

=> If you were

*Complete the second sentence in each pair, using the word given, so that the meaning stays the same.*

1. I didn't know his address in London, so I didn't visit him. **visited**

=> If I had known \_\_\_\_\_ him.

2. If you don't speak clearly, the audience won't understand you. **else**

=> You have to \_\_\_\_\_ understand you.

3. Angela, you're not old enough otherwise you would be able to get a motorbike. **were**

=> Angela, \_\_\_\_\_ La motorbike.

4. I wouldn't mind being transferred to another city if they offered me a higher salary. **condition**

=> I wouldn't mind \_\_\_\_\_ me a higher salary.

5. If he decides to go shopping, there's a chance that I will go with him. **might**

=> If he \_\_\_\_\_ with him.

6. We can have dinner here unless you want to go to a restaurant. **want**

=> If \_\_\_\_\_ dinner here.

7. Fortunately, they were wearing seat belts, so nobody was seriously injured. **not**

=> If \_\_\_\_\_ been seriously injured.

8. I'd like to travel all over the world but I don't have enough money. **would**

=> I \_\_\_\_\_ all over the world if I had enough money.

*Rewrite the sentence given, using the word given so that the meaning stays the same.*

1. We won't go away if the weather is bad.

**UNLESS**

2. I didn't have money so I didn't buy a new shirt.

**WOULD**

3. If they offered you the job, would you accept?

**WERE**

4. If you are in London by any chance, come and see me.

**SHOULD**

5. If you do have any free time, could you give me a ring?

**HAPPEN**

6. Without you, I would have given up years ago.

**BEEN**

7. If Pauline hadn't been interested, the project would have been abandoned.

**BUT FOR**

8. What would you do if you found some buried treasure?

**WERE**

9. Dick is in prison now because a detective recognized him.

**IF**

10. The fire was brought under control thanks to the night-watchman.

**IT HADN'T**

*Rewrite the sentences, using the word given, so that the meaning stays the same.*

1. Jeremy regrets not having accepted the job he was offered.

**WISHES**

2. If you had heard the politician speak, you'd think he had won the election.

**THOUGH**

3. I think you should get a haircut.

**ABOUT**

4. I can't stand Betty borrowing my clothes without asking me first.

**RATHER**

5. It's a pity governments spend so much money on nuclear weapons.

**WOULDN'T**

6. I advise you to see the dentist today; otherwise your toothache will get worse

**BETTER**

7. Jim would really like to participate in the debate, but he can't.

**COULD**

8. Susan doesn't like watching TV in the evenings, she'd rather read magazines.

**TO**

9. You should have waited for us.

=> **BETTER**

10. He should start studying hard.

=> **FOR**

11. We didn't want to leave the party so early.

=> **LEFT**

12. It would have been better to have hired a car during the holiday.

=> **ONLY**

13. We'd prefer to go shopping rather than stay at home.

=> **RATHER**

14. I would like to know how to play the piano.

=> **KNEW**

15. Mr. Smith wanted me to finish the reports yesterday but I couldn't.

=> **SOONER**

*Correct the following sentences if necessary by taking out the unnecessary word.*

1. Christine would rather not to work overtime this week.

2. Suppose you hadn't found your car keys, what would you have done?

3. It's high time he had tidied up his room.

4. It's time for the children went to bed.

5. I would rather not Tom didn't live so far away.

6. I'd rather we have visited a museum.

7. I wish we had lived in a bigger house because then I'd have a room of my own.

8. He acted as if he knew everything.

9. We'd better to fix the leaking tap tomorrow.

10. If only I hadn't broken my leg while playing football.



## PART VI : SUBJUNCTIVE

### • THEORY

Là loại câu đối tượng thứ nhất muốn đối tượng thứ hai làm một việc gì nhưng làm hay không còn phụ thuộc vào người thứ hai.

#### 1. Câu giả định dùng với It is time: Đã đến lúc phải làm gì

##### a. It is time

It is high time for sb to do st.

It is about time

##### E.g.

- It's time for the children to go to bed.

- It is time for me to get to the airport (just in time).

- It's Friday night. It's time for us to relax and do things that we love.

It is time

It is high time S + simple past

It is about time

##### Ví dụ:

- It's high time I left for the airport.

- You are 20 years old now. It's high time you found a job.

#### 2. "Wish" sentence:

Sau WISH (ước, ước gì) và IF ONLY (giá mà, phải chi) là một mệnh đề chỉ điều ước, một điều không có thật.

Có 3 loại mệnh đề đi sau WISH và IF ONLY, được dùng để chỉ sự ao ước ở **trương lai, hiện tại** và **quá khứ**.

##### a. Wish + to do/ wish somebody something/wish somebody to do something.

- I wish to pass the entrance exam.

- I wish you happy birthday.

- I wish you to become a good teacher.

**Chú ý:** trong trường hợp này, chúng ta có thể thay thế "wish" bằng "want" hoặc "would like"

- I would like/want to speak to Ann.

##### b. Wish about the future:

##### Ý nghĩa:

Chúng ta sử dụng câu ước ở tương lai với mong muốn ai đó, sự việc gì đó sẽ tốt đẹp hơn trong tương lai.

Cấu trúc:

**S + WISH + S + would/ could + V (bare-infinitive)**

**IF ONLY + S + would/ could + V (bare-infinitive)**

##### Ví dụ:

- I wish you wouldn't leave your clothes all over the floor.

- I wish I would be an astronaut in the future.

- If only I would be able to attend your wedding next week.

### c. Wish about the present:

#### Ý nghĩa:

Chúng ta dùng câu ước ở hiện tại để ước về điều không có thật ở hiện tại, thường là thể hiện sự nuối tiếc về tình huống hiện tại (regret about present situations).

#### Cấu trúc:

**S + WISH + S+ V (simple past)**  
**IF ONLY + S+ V (simple past)**  
**(be là were)**

#### Ví dụ:

- If wish I were rich. (But I am poor now.)
- I can't swim. I wish I could swim.
- If only there were snow in summer. We could go skiing.
- We wish that we didn't have to go to class today. (The fact is that we have to go to class today).

### d. Wish about the past:

#### Ý nghĩa:

Chúng ta sử dụng câu ước ở quá khứ để ước điều trái với những gì xảy ra trong quá khứ, thường là để diễn tả sự nuối tiếc với tình huống ở quá khứ.

**S + WISH + S + V ( PII) = IF ONLY + S + V ( P2)**  
**S + WISH + S + COULD HAVE + P2 = IF ONLY+ S + COULD HAVE + P2**

#### Ví dụ:

- She wishes her little brother hadn't broken her favorite vase.
- I wish I hadn't spent so much money. (sự thực là tôi đã tiêu rất nhiều tiền)

### e. A + wish (that) + B + would do something: phàn nàn hoặc muốn thay đổi tình huống hiện tại (A, B là hai người khác nhau)

- I wish they would stop making noise.
- I wish it would stop raining hard in summer.
- I wish you wouldn't play computer games any more.
- I wish you would do st instead of just sitting and doing nothing.

### 3. "As if/as though" sentence: như thế, có vẻ như

#### A. As if/as though + simple past: diễn đạt hành động không có thật ở hiện tại

- It's very cold today. It looks as if/as though it were autumn now. (thực ra bây giờ đang là mùa hè)
- They look at me as though I were mad.
- He orders me about as if I were his wife.

Động từ đi trước as if và as though có thể được đưa về quá khứ mà vẫn không làm thay đổi thì của giả định cách.

E.g. They looked at me as if I were mad.

#### B. As if/as though + past perfect: diễn đạt hành động có thật hoặc không có thật ở quá khứ

- The whole were seriously damaged. It looks as if it had been destroyed by bombs. (thực ra đó là do động đất)
- He talks about Rome as though he had been there himself.

#### C. As if/as though + present tense: diễn đạt hành động có thật ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai

- He appears running from a fierce dog.
- It looks as if he is running from a fierce dog.
- That house looks as if it is going to fall down.
- Do you hear the music next door? It sounds as if they are having a party.

- I feel as if everyone is laughing behind my back.

- Mary looks as if she was asleep.

#### 4. Câu giả định dùng would rather và that:

##### A. Khi có 1 chủ thể:

**S + would rather + do st**

**S + would rather not do**

E.x. - Would you like to go to the cinema or stay at home?

☺ I would rather stay at home./ I would rather not stay at home.

- I'm tired. I would rather not go out this evening.

**S + would rather do st than do st**

E.g. - He would rather have dogs than cats.

- Tom would rather read than talk.

**Note:** would rather + nguyên mẫu không thể diễn đạt ý thích trong quá khứ. Vì thế quá khứ tương ứng của:

Tom would rather read than talk.

Sẽ là: Tom preferred reading to talking./ Tom liked reading better than talking.

**S + would rather have done (Diễn tả 1 ước muốn không thực hiện được trong quá khứ)**

E.g. - We went by sea but I'd rather have gone by air.

##### B. Khi chủ thể thứ nhất muốn chủ thể thứ 2 làm gì.

###### a. Diễn tả sự việc đối lập với thực tế ở hiện tại, tương lai:

Động từ sau chủ ngữ hai sẽ chia ở simple past, to be phải chia là were ở tất cả các ngôi.

**S1 + would rather that + S2 + [verb in simple past tense] ...**

- Henry would rather that his girlfriend worked in the same department as he does.

(His girlfriend does not work in the same department.)

- Jane would rather that it were winter now. (In fact, it is not winter now.)

- I'd rather you went home now.

**Nếu muốn thành lập thể phủ định dùng didn't + verb hoặc were not sau chủ ngữ hai.**

- Henry would rather that his girlfriend didn't work in the same department as he does.

- Jane would rather that it were not winter now.

###### c. Diễn tả sự việc trái ngược với thực tế ở quá khứ:

Động từ sau chủ ngữ hai sẽ chia ở dạng past perfect. Nếu muốn thành lập thể phủ định dùng hadn't + P2.

**S1 + would rather that + S2 + past perfect ...**

- Bob would rather that Jill had gone to class yesterday.

- Bill would rather that his wife hadn't divorced him.

#### 5. Câu giả định dùng với các động từ trong bảng dưới đây:

Advise	Demand	Prefer	Require
Ask	Insist	Propose	Stipulate
Command	Move	Recommend	Suggest
Decree	Order	Request	Urge

- Trong câu nhất định phải có that.

- Động từ sau chủ ngữ 2 ở dạng nguyên thể bỏ to.

**Subject1 + verb + that + subject 2+ [verb in simple form] ...**

### Ví dụ:

- We urge that he leave now.
- They insisted (that) we **not stay** behind. (Họ cứ khẳng khẳng là chúng tôi không ở đằng sau).

Nếu bỏ that đi chủ ngữ 2 sẽ trở thành tân ngữ, động từ trở về dạng nguyên thể có to, câu sẽ mất đi ý nghĩa giả định và trở thành câu bình thường.

### Ví dụ:

- We urge him to leave now.

**Lưu ý:** Trong tiếng Anh của người Anh (British English), trước động từ nguyên thể bỏ to có should. Nhưng trong tiếng Anh của người Mỹ (American English) người ta bỏ nó đi.

### 6. Câu giả định dùng với tính từ:

Các tính từ dùng trong câu giả định gồm các tính từ trong bảng dưới đây.

Advised	Necessary/Essential/Vital	Recommended	Urgent
Important	Obligatory	Required	Imperative
Mandatory	Proposed	Suggested	

Trong công thức sau, adjective chỉ định một trong các tính từ có trong bảng trên.

**It + be + adjective + that + subject + [verb in simple form ]...(any tense)**

#### Một số ví dụ:

It was urgent that she leave at once.

It has been proposed that we change the topic.

It has been suggested that he forget the election.

- It is important that she meet the doctor immediately.

- It is essential that every child have the same educational opportunities.

Trong một số trường hợp có thể dùng danh từ tương ứng với các tính từ ở trên theo công thức sau.

**It + be + noun + that + subject + [verb in simple form ]...(any tense)**

### Ví dụ:

- It is a recommendation from a doctor that the patient stop smoking.

#### • PRACTICES

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.*

1. I suggest that he \_\_\_\_\_ up his mind quickly or else he would lose his opportunity.  
A. makes    B. make    C. made    D. is to make
2. His friends suggest that the \_\_\_\_\_ for that job.  
A. applies    B. apply    C. applying    D. will apply
3. It's high time we \_\_\_\_\_ about our environment.  
A. did    B. do    C. should do    D. to do
4. It is necessary that children \_\_\_\_\_ of their old parents.  
A. to take care    B. takes care    C. took care    D. take are
5. It is essential that all students \_\_\_\_\_ best use of learning facilities in the university,  
A. make    B. makes    C. made    D. making
6. The clients demanded that the post office \_\_\_\_\_ earlier.  
A. opening    B. opened    C. open    D. to open
7. It is necessary that he \_\_\_\_\_ a certificate in English?  
A. will get    B. gets    C. get    D. would get

8. I demand that I \_\_\_\_\_ to retake the exam.  
A. be allowed    B. am allowed    C. will be allowed    D. were allowed
9. The teacher ordered that all pupils \_\_\_\_\_ inside their classroom  
A. stay    B. stays    C. will stay    D. would stay
10. It is essential that Mai \_\_\_\_\_ speak English.  
A. is able to    B. was able to    C. be able to    D. must be able to
11. He suggested that I \_\_\_\_\_ kind to others.  
A. am    B. was    C. be    D. would be
12. My doctor insisted \_\_\_\_\_  
A. that I diet    B. me to diet    C. for me dieting    D. for me to diet
13. Everyone urged that Bill \_\_\_\_\_ his education.  
A. continue    B. continuing    C. to continue    D. continued
14. The director requests that all packages \_\_\_\_\_ at the central office.  
A. to mail    B. be mailed    C. to be mailed    D. mailing
15. Long may the Queen \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. live    B. lives    C. living    D. would live
16. It is important that you \_\_\_\_\_ to our meeting on time.  
A. to come    B. should come    C. would come    D. come
17. It is imperative that you \_\_\_\_\_ careful on construction site.  
A. to be    B. were    C. are    D. be
18. It is advisable that she \_\_\_\_\_ care of her ill mother.  
A. to take    B. takes    C. take    D. took
19. The teacher ordered that the students \_\_\_\_\_ talking  
A. stop    B. should stop    C. stopped    D. A or B
20. She insisted that we \_\_\_\_\_ our summer vacation in the countryside.  
A. spend    B. spent    C. should spend    D. A or C
21. May you \_\_\_\_\_ happy all your life!  
A. are    B. were    C. be    D. to be
22. "Should I begin typing these letters?" "I suggest \_\_\_\_\_ bookkeeping first".  
A. you finished    B. you to finish    C. you finish    D. you will finish
23. It is suggestion that my brother \_\_\_\_\_ when our family are on holiday.  
A. not be working    B. be working    C. shouldn't work    D. not work
24. "Have you received the gift sent from London yet?"  
"No, but it's possible that it \_\_\_\_\_ in a few days"  
A. will come    B. comes    C. come    D. has come
25. I'd rather you \_\_\_\_\_ that present.  
A. not give    B. wouldn'd give    C. didn't give    D. give

*Give the right form of the verbs in brackets to complete the following sentences.*

1. It's important that she (remember) \_\_\_\_\_ to take her medicine twice a day.
2. I suggest that Frank (read) \_\_\_\_\_ the directions carefully before assembling the bicycle. He doesn't want the wheels to fall off while he is riding down a hill
3. Mrs. Finkelstein demanded that the heater (repair) \_\_\_\_\_ immediately. Her apartment was freezing.
4. It's vital that the United States (focus) \_\_\_\_\_ on improving its public education system. What we do now will affect our country for generations to come.

5. The monk insisted that the tourists (enter)\_\_\_\_\_ the temple until they had removed their shoes.
6. I am not going to sit here and let her insult me. I demand that she immediately (apologize) \_\_\_\_\_ for what she just said.
7. Judy asked that we (attend)\_\_\_\_\_ her graduation ceremony next week.
8. Was it really necessary that (sit) I\_\_\_\_\_ there watching you the entire time you were rehearsing for the play? It was really boring watching you repeat the scenes over and over again.
9. It is important to remember that Janine (think)\_\_\_\_\_ very differently from you. She may not agree to the changes you have made in the organization of the company.
10. It's a little difficult to find the restaurant. I propose that we all (drive)\_\_\_\_\_ together so that nobody gets lost along the way.
11. The woman insisted that the lost child (take)\_\_\_\_\_ to store's information desk so his parents could be paged.
12. The nutritionist recommended that Sally (reduce)\_\_\_\_\_ her daily fat intake.
13. The environmental leader felt it was extremely important that the people of the city (allow) \_\_\_\_\_ to voice their concerns over the new hotel being built on the bay.
14. She told me that the government (regulate) \_\_\_\_\_ the airline industry. I don't know if that is true.
15. The sign at the pool recommended that you (swim)\_\_\_\_\_ after eating a large meal.
16. It is necessary that a life guard (monitor)\_\_\_\_\_ the swimming pool while the children are taking their swimming lessons.
17. The sun is scorching today. I suggest you (put)\_\_\_\_\_ on sunblock immediately before you get a sun burn.
18. John insists that Sarah (invite)\_\_\_\_\_ to the wedding; otherwise he will not attend.
19. It is the recommendation that we (send)\_\_\_\_\_ our old clothes to poor people in the remote area.
20. It is imperative that the world (work)\_\_\_\_\_ towards a solution to global warming before the weather patterns of the world are disrupted irreparably.

## PART VII : RELATIVE CLAUSES

### • THEORY

Cách sử dụng các đại từ quan hệ trong MĐQH:

	S ( chủ ngữ)	O ( tân ngữ)	P( sở hữu)
Danh từ chỉ người	Who/that	Who/whom/that	whose
Danh từ chỉ vật	Which/that	Which/that	Whose/of which
Dt vừa người & vật	That	That	
Nơi chốn		Where = in/at/on which	
Thời gian		When = in/at/on which	
Lý do		Why = for which	
Bất kỳ ai	Whoever	Whoever	

Các loại mệnh đề quan hệ:

<p><b>1. Mệnh đề quan hệ có giới hạn (không dấu phẩy):</b>                      - thường được dùng khi danh từ đứng trước ĐTQH có mạo từ "a/an/the"                      - Bỏ "who, whom, which, that" khi nó làm túc từ                      (không có giới từ đứng trước)/ bỏ why/when/where.</p>	<p>Ex: The book is interesting. I bought it yesterday.                      =&gt; The book (which) I bought yesterday is interesting.</p>
<p><b>2. MĐQH không giới hạn ( có dấu phẩy):</b>                      - MĐQH không giới hạn xuất hiện khi danh từ đứng trước đại từ quan hệ là các loại danh từ sau:                      + <b>Danh từ riêng</b>                      + <b>Danh từ có tính từ chỉ định</b> (this/that/these/those)                      + <b>Danh từ có tính từ sở hữu</b> (my/his/her/your/their/our/its)                      + <b>Sở hữu cách ( Tom's, ...)</b>                      - Không dùng " THAT" trong MĐQH không giới hạn.                      - Không được bỏ các đại từ quan hệ làm tân ngữ ( WHO, WHOM, WHICH) và các trạng từ quan hệ trong MĐQH không giới hạn.                      - Trong MĐQH không giới hạn " WHICH" có thể được dùng để bổ nghĩa cho cả câu.                      - Khi muốn thêm thông tin về toàn bộ hoặc 1 phần số vật hay người cụ thể, ta dùng mđqh không giới hạn với " of which , of whom, of whose, most of, half of , plenty of, some of , one of , neither of, all of, several of, both of, ten of, a few of ...."</p>	<p>Ex1: Tom, whom you met last night, is my son.                      Ex2: <b>That</b> man, who has sent you a gift, lives next door to me.                      Ex3: <b>His</b> book, which was bought last night, is interesting.                      Ex4: <b>Lan's book</b>, which was bought last night, is interesting .                      Ex5: Peter failed again, which does not make us surprised.                      Ex6: I received two jobs offers .I accepted neither of them                      =&gt; I received two jobs offers, <b>neither of which</b> I accepted                      Ex7: I have two friends .One of their problems is poor study habit                      =&gt; I have two friends, <b>one of whose</b> problems is poor study habit</p>

GIỚI TỪ VỚI ĐẠI TỪ QUAN HỆ

<p><b>Trong mệnh đề quan hệ có giới từ thì giới từ có 2 vị trí đứng:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Giới từ đứng trước đại từ quan hệ hoặc giới từ đứng sau động từ.</li> <li>- Lưu ý: Giới từ không đứng trước đại từ quan hệ "<u>who và that</u>"</li> <li>- Khi giới từ là thành phần của cụm động từ thì không thể đem giới từ ra trước "whom, which, whose"</li> <li>- Giới từ "<b>WITHOUT</b>" không được đặt sau động từ mà phải đặt trước đại từ quan hệ.</li> </ul>	<p>Ex1: She is the woman <b>about whom</b> I told you She is the woman <b>who/whom/ that</b> I told you <b>about</b>.</p> <p>Ex2: Did you find the world which you were <b>looking up</b> ? (NOT : _____ the world up which you were looking ? )</p> <p>Ex3: The woman <b>without whom</b> I can't live is Jane ( NOT : The woman whom can't live without is Jane )</p>
--	---

**DẠNG RÚT GỌN MỆNH ĐỀ QUAN HỆ THÀNH NGỮ PHÂN TỬ: V-ING, V<sub>3</sub>, TO V**

<p>1. Ngữ hiện tại phân từ ( <b>V-ing</b>) được dùng khi <b>động từ</b> trong mệnh đề quan hệ ở thể <b>chủ động</b>.</p>	<p>Ex: That man, <b>who is standing</b> over there , is my best friend. =&gt; That man , <b>standing</b> over there, is my best friend</p>
<p>2. Ngữ quá khứ phân từ (<b>V<sub>3/ed</sub></b>) được dùng khi <b>động từ</b> trong mệnh đề quan hệ ở thể <b>bị động</b>.</p>	<p>Ex: The boy who <b>was injured</b> in the accident was taken to the hospital. =&gt; The boy <b>injured</b> in the accident was taken to the hospital.</p>
<p>3. "<b>To infinitive</b>" có thể được dùng khi đại từ quan hệ làm chủ ngữ đứng sau "<b>the first, the second, ..., the last, the next, the only, the one, dạng so sánh nhất( the + adj ngắn + est/ the most + adj dài)</b> hoặc để chỉ mục đích, sự cho phép)</p>	<p>Ex: He was <b>the last man</b> who left the burning building. =&gt; He was the last man to leave the burning building.</p>

**Cách làm bài tập dạng điền đại từ quan hệ vào chỗ trống**

- \_\_\_\_\_ N(chỉ người) + WHO/ THAT (làm chủ ngữ) + V +...
- \_\_\_\_\_ N(chỉ người) + WHO/WHOM/THAT + S + V +...(làm O)
- \_\_\_\_\_ N(chỉ người) + WHOSE (làm ttsh) + N + V/ N + S + V+...
- \_\_\_\_\_ N(chỉ vật) + WHICH/ THAT + V+ ...
- \_\_\_\_\_ N(chỉ vật) + WHICH + S + V+...
- \_\_\_\_\_ N(chỉ vật) + WHOSE + N + V/ N + S+V+....
- \_\_\_\_\_ thời gian + WHEN (= on/in/at + which) +....
- \_\_\_\_\_ nơi chốn + WHERE (= on/in/at + which) +....
- \_\_\_\_\_ lý do + WHY + (= for which) +....

**Không dùng " THAT" trong MỆNH ĐỀ KHÔNG GIỚI HẠN (có dấu phẩy)**

**Dạng kết hợp hai câu hai mệnh đề thành 1 câu sử dụng ĐTQH:**

- Xác định hai từ giống nhau trong hai câu, hai mệnh đề.
- Thay đại từ quan hệ cho từ giống nhau ở MỆNH ĐỀ thứ 2.
- Đặt đại từ quan hệ ngay sau từ giống ở MỆNH ĐỀ thứ 1.
- Xác định loại danh từ đứng trước đại từ quan hệ để xem xét có sử dụng dấu phẩy hay không

**• PRACTICES**

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.*

1. That book is by a famous anthropologist. It's about the people in Samoa \_\_\_\_\_ for two years.



- A. that she lived            B. that she lived among them  
C. among whom she lived    D. where she lived among them
2. The missing man's family is desperately seeking anyone \_\_\_\_\_ information about his activities or whereabouts.  
A. has    B. having    C. who have    D. have
3. The publishers expect that the new biography of Simon Bolivar will be brought people \_\_\_\_\_ in Latin American history.  
A. who they are interested    B. are interested  
C. interested            D. they are interested
4. I have always wanted to visit Paris, \_\_\_\_\_ of France.  
A. is the capital    B. which the capital is    C. that is the capital    D. the capital
5. The chemistry book \_\_\_\_\_ was a little expensive.  
A. that I bought it    B. I bought that    C. what I bought    D. I bought
6. Have you ever met a man \_\_\_\_\_ over there? - Yes, I do.  
A. stands    B. standing    C. is standing    D. who he is standing
7. Do you have the book \_\_\_\_\_ the teacher? - Yes, I do.  
A. that it belongs to    B. to which belongs to    C. to which belongs    D. that belongs to
8. The voters were overwhelmingly against the candidate \_\_\_\_\_ proposals called for higher taxes.  
A. who his    B. whose    C. whom he had    D. that his
9. Do you remember Mr. Goddard, \_\_\_\_\_ taught us English composition? ~ I certainly do.  
A. who    B. whom    C. that    D. which
10. I have three brothers, \_\_\_\_\_ are businessmen.  
A. that all of them    B. who they all    C. all of whom    D. who all of them
11. Were you able to locate the person \_\_\_\_\_ wallet you found? - Luckily, yes.  
A. which    B. that his    C. whose    D. that's
12. Some fish is frozen, but \_\_\_\_\_ is best.  
A. fish is fresh    B. fresh fish    C. fish fresh    D. fresh fish is caught
13. Why do you get up at 4 A. M. today? ~ Because it's the only time \_\_\_\_\_ without being interrupted.  
A. when I can work on my book    B. when I can work on my book at  
C. when I can work on my book then    D. at when I can work on my book
14. You seem so happy today. ~ I am. You are looking at a person \_\_\_\_\_ has just been accepted into medical school.  
A. who    B. who she    C. whom she    D. whom
15. The movie \_\_\_\_\_ last night was terrific. - What's it about?  
A. I went    B. I went to it    C. I went to    D. that I went
16. Many people lost their homes in the earthquake. The government needs to establish more shelters to care for those \_\_\_\_\_ have homes.  
A. who doesn't    B. who don't    C. which doesn't    D. which don't
17. The problem never \_\_\_\_\_ occurs.  
A. I had expected it            B. who I had expected  
C. I had expected            D. that I had expected it
18. I had to drive to the factory to pick up my brother, \_\_\_\_\_ car wouldn't start.  
A. who his    B. who    C. who's    D. whose

19. I read a book about Picasso, \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. is a Spanish painter    B. a Spanish painter  
C. who a Spanish painter is    D. that is a Spanish painter
20. The people \_\_\_\_\_ the acrobat turn circles in the air were horrified when he missed the outstretched hands of his partner and fell to his death.
- A. watched    B. watch    C. watching    D. were watching
21. My writing has improved a lot in this class. – Mine has, too. All the students \_\_\_\_\_ do well in writing.
- A. whom Mr. David teaches them    B. which Mr. David teaches  
C. that Mr. David teaches them    D. Mr. David teaches
22. Have you seen the place \_\_\_\_\_ the graduation ceremony will be held?
- Yes. It's big enough to hold 5,000 people.
- A. in that    B. where    C. is where that    D. which
23. How's your class this term? – Great. I have seventeen students, most of \_\_\_\_\_ speak English very well.
- A. who    B. those    C. whom    D. which
24. Will everyone like the book? - No. Only people \_\_\_\_\_ interested in anthropology.
- A. are    B. who are    C. in whom are    D. that is
25. How did you enjoy your dinner with Mr. Jackson? ~ It was boring. He talked only about himself, \_\_\_\_\_ almost put us to sleep.
- A. which    B. that    C. who    D. that he
26. My grandfather, \_\_\_\_\_ a wise man, has greatly influenced my life.
- A. is    B. that is    C. who is    D. who he is
27. Is Dr. Brown the person \_\_\_\_\_ you wish to speak? - Yes, please.
- A. that    B. whom    C. to that    D. to whom
28. In the movie, a teenager \_\_\_\_\_ to pursue a singing career meets resistance from his strong-willed father.
- A. wants    B. wanted    C. wanting    D. who want
29. Excuse me, but there is something about \_\_\_\_\_ immediately. ~ Certainly.
- A. which I must speak to you    B. which I must speak to you about it  
C. that I must speak to you about    D. that I must speak to you
30. Little Women, \_\_\_\_\_ in 1868, is my sister's favorite book.
- A. is a novel published    B. a novel published  
C. a novel was published    D. was a novel published
31. Who is eligible for the scholarship? – Anyone \_\_\_\_\_ scholastic record is above average can apply for the scholarship.
- A. who has a    B. has a    C. who's a    D. whose
32. Dr. Sales is a person \_\_\_\_\_
- A. in whom I don't have much confidence  
B. in that I don't have much confidence  
C. whom I don't have much confidence in him  
D. I don't have much confidence
33. Is April twenty-first the day \_\_\_\_\_? ~ No, the twenty-second.
- A. you'll arrive then    B. when you'll arrive  
C. on that you'll arrive    D. when you'll arrive on

34. The severe drought occurred last summer ruined the corn crop.  
A. that it    B. which it    C. it    D. that
35. Florida, \_\_\_\_\_ the Sunshine State, attracts many tourists every year.  
A. is    B. known as    C. is known as    D. that is known as
36. The new shopping mall is gigantic. It's as a place you can find just about \_\_\_\_\_ anything you might want to buy.  
A. where    B. which    C. in where    D. in that
37. Lola's marriage has been arranged by her family. She is marrying a man \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. that she hardly knows him    B. whom she hardly knows him  
C. she hardly knows    D. she hardly knows him
38. People who exercise frequently have greater physical endurance than those \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. who doesn't    B. that doesn't    C. which don't    D. who don't
39. Is this the address to \_\_\_\_\_ you want the package sent?  
A. where    B. that's    C. which    D. whom
40. Ann quit her job at the advertising agency, \_\_\_\_\_ surprised everyone.  
A. which    B. that    C. who    D. that it

*Find and correct the mistake in the following sentences.*

- Last Saturday I attended a party giving by one of my friends. My friend, who his apartment is in another town, was very glad that I could come.
- Dr. Darnell was the only person to whom I wanted to see.
- There are eighty students, are from all over the world, study English at this school.
- The people who we met them on our trip last May are going to visit us on October.
- Dianne Jones that used to teach Spanish has organized a tour of Central America for senior citizens.
- There is an old legend telling among people in my country about a man lived in the seventeenth century saved a village from destruction.
- I've met many people since I came here who some of them are from my country
- An old man was fishing next to me on the pier was muttering to himself.
- People can speak English can be understood in many countries.
- When I was a child, I was always afraid of the beggars whom they went from house to house in my neighborhood.
- One of the people which I admire most is my uncle.
- Baseball is the only sport in which I am interested in it.
- My favorite teacher, Mr. Peterson, he was always wiling to help me after class.
- There are some people in the government who is trying to improve the lives of poor people.
- I have some good advice for anyone who he wants to learn a foreign language.

*Make one sentence from each group of sentences, beginning as shown.*

- The hotel was full of guests. The hotel was miles from anywhere. The guests had gone there to admire the scenery.  
→The hotel
- I lent you a book. It was written by a friend of mine. She lives in France.  
→The book
- A woman's jewels were stolen. A police officer was staying in the same hotel. The woman was interviewed by him.  
→The woman
- A goal was scored by a teenager. He had come on as a substitute. This goal won the match.

→The goal

5. I was sitting next to a boy in the exams. He told me the answers.

→The boy

6. My wallet contained \$ 100. It was found in the street by a boy. He returned it.

→My wallet

7. My friend Albert has decided to buy a motorbike. His car was stolen last week.

→My friend Albert

8. Carol is a vegetarian. I cooked a meal for her last week. She enjoyed it.

→Carol

9. I got on a train. I wanted to go to a station. The train didn't stop there.

→The train

10. I read a book. You recommended a book to me. This was the book.

→The book

11. The ship hit an iceberg and sank. Warning messages had been sent to it. The ship ignored these.

→The ship

12. The postman realized I was on holiday. You had sent me a parcel. The postman left it next door.

→The postman

13. I used to own a dog. People came to the door. The dog never barked at them.

→The dog

14. I bought my car from a woman. She lives in a house. You can see the house over there.

→The woman

15. We went to a beach on the first day of our holiday. It was covered in seaweed. This smelled a lot.

→The beach

16. My neighbors have three small children. The children make a lot of noise. My neighbors never apologize.

→My neighbors

17. I lost my wallet last week. It was found by a man. He was digging a hole in the street outside our house.

→The wallet

18. Carol slammed the door behind her. Her father had given a car as a present. She drove off in it.

→Slamming

19. At the end of the street was a building. The street was crowded with shoppers. Tom had not noticed the building before.

→At the end of the street

20. Some people have just moved in next door. They have the same surname as some other people. Those other people have just moved out.

→The people

21. The journalist will interview the old man. His house was broken into last night.

→The journalist

22. I listened to George patiently until he started insulting me. At that point I told him a few home truths. He didn't like it.

→George

*Put one suitable relative pronoun in each space, or leave the space blank if possible.*

**Murder at the station** (by Loraine Small. Episode 5)

The story so far: Jane Platt (1)\_\_\_\_\_is traveling to London because of a mysterious letter, is the only person (2)\_\_\_\_\_witness a murder at Victoria Station. The detective to (3)\_\_\_\_\_she gives her statements then disappears. Jane goes to an office in Soho to answer the letter (4) \_\_\_\_\_she has received. There she discovers that her uncle Gordon, (5)\_\_\_\_\_lives in South America, has sent her a box (6)\_\_\_\_\_she is only to open if in trouble. Jane, (7)\_\_\_\_\_parents have never mentioned an Uncle Gordon, is suspicious of the box, (8)\_\_\_\_\_she gives to her friend Tony. They go to Scotland Yard and see inspector Groves, (9)\_\_\_\_\_has not heard of the Victoria murder, (10)\_\_\_\_\_was not reported to the police. Jane gives Inspector Groves the murdered man's ticket (11)\_\_\_\_\_she found besides his body. Then Jane and Tony decide to go to Redhill, (12)\_\_\_\_\_was the town (13)\_\_\_\_\_the murdered man had come from. On the train they met a man, (14)\_\_\_\_\_face is somehow familiar to Jane, (15)\_\_\_\_\_says he knows her Uncle Gordon. Now read on.

### **Sherlock Homes**

Sherlock Homes, (1)\_\_\_\_\_name is well-known, didn't really exist. However, for many (2) \_\_\_\_\_have read his adventures, he might as well have been a real person.

The man (3)\_\_\_\_\_created Holmes was Sir Arthur Conan Doyle, born in Edinburgh in 1859. He trained as a doctor, but found he could earn more money by writing than practicing medicine. He wrote not only stories about Holmes, but many other books (4)\_\_\_\_\_people also liked. However, it is for the detectives stories (5)\_\_\_\_\_he wrote that he is most remembered. The place (6)\_\_\_\_\_the Holmes mysteries are set is Victorian England. Holmes, (7)\_\_\_\_\_is a brilliant detective, uses his intelligence and scientific knowledge to solve the mysteries. Even though Doyle wrote many Holmes mysteries, we'll never know the reason (8)\_\_\_\_\_he gave us so little information about Holmes' private life. All the books were written in the first person, not by Holmes, but by his assistant, Dr. Watson, (9)\_\_\_\_\_knowledge of his master's private life was limited.

*Rewrite each sentence so that the meaning stays the same.*

1. I like Brenda, she is my kind of person. (THAT)

→

2. The whole summer was sunny and warm for a change. (WHICH)

→

3. Jean was the first person I asked for advice. (WHOSE)

→

4. Not a single house in the street had escaped undamaged. (WHICH)

→

5. Then I realized that I had left my wallet at home. (WHEN)

→

6. I don't really approve of his proposal. (WHAT)

→

7. It is an event I would rather forget. (WHICH)

→

8. I have read all of her books but one. (WHICH)

→

## PART VIII : MODAL VERBS

### • THEORY

#### I. ĐẶC ĐIỂM CHUNG CỦA ĐỘNG TỪ KHUYẾT THIỂU

- Luôn cộng với động từ nguyên mẫu không to:

Ex: They can speak French and English.

- Chia giống nhau với tất cả các ngôi:

Ex: He / They should be home at 7.00 p.m.

- Chỉ có nhiều nhất là 2 dạng: Dạng hiện tại (can, will...) và dạng quá khứ (could, would...).

- Các động từ khuyết thiếu

Thể khẳng định	Thể phủ định	Nghi vấn
Can/could	Can't/couldn't	Can't/couldn't
May/Might	May not/might not	May/Might + S + V.inf
Must	Mustn't	Must + S + V.inf
Should	Shouldn't	Should + S + V.inf
Ought to	Ought not to	
Will/Would	Won't/wouldn't	Will/Would + S + V.inf
Had better	Had better not	Had S better + V.inf
Would rather	Would rather not	
Dare	Dare not	Dare + S + V.inf
Need	Need not	Need + S + V.inf
Used to	Used not to	

#### II. CAN/COULD

##### 1. CAN và COULD có nghĩa là "có thể", diễn tả một khả năng

- Ex: - We can stay with my brother when we are in Paris  
- She could ride a bicycle when she was five years old.

##### 2. Diễn tả sự xin phép; COULD lễ phép và trịnh trọng hơn CAN. Nhưng không dùng COULD để diễn tả sự cho phép

- Ex: - Can I go out?  
- Could I use your computer? – Yes, of course you can.

##### 3. Diễn tả lời đề nghị, gợi ý hay lời yêu cầu

- Ex: - Can you give me a hand?  
- Could you open the door, please?

##### ✦ Phân biệt Can & Be able to

- "Can" thể hiện khả năng, bản năng: Ex: can't swim
- "Be able to" mang nghĩa xoay xở, thành công trong việc gì đó:

Ex: I finished my work early so I was able to go out with her.

#### III. MAY/MIGHT

##### 1. Phân biệt May & Can

- May/might cũng mang nghĩa là "có thể".
- "Can" thể hiện khả năng nhưng "may" mang tính chất tình huống, thể hiện sẽ làm hay không làm.

Ex: I can swim but I may not swim today.

##### 2. Cách dùng

a. May/Might dùng để diễn đạt sự xin phép. "May" được dùng để chỉ sự cho phép

Ex: - May/Might I put the TV on? – Yes, you may.

- She asked if she might go to the party.

b. May/Might dùng để diễn tả một khả năng có thể xảy ra (Might ít chắc chắn, ít khẳng định hơn May)

Ex: - There may be other problems that we don't know about.

- It might be true.

c. May được dùng để diễn đạt lời cầu chúc trang trọng (không dùng Might)

Ex: - May you have a good trip!

- May your dreams come true!

d. May/Might dùng trong mệnh đề theo sau các động từ "hope" (hy vọng) và "trust" (tin tưởng).

Ex: I trust (hope) that you may find this plan to your satisfaction.

e. May/Might dùng thay cho một mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự nhượng bộ

Ex: - Although he tried hard, he couldn't pass the exam.

= Try as he may/might, he could not pass the examination.

#### IV. WILL/WOULD

##### 1. Will

• "Will" là một trợ động từ giúp hình thành thì tương lai

• "Will" được dùng như một Động từ khuyết thiếu diễn tả một sự mong muốn, một lời hứa hay một sự quả quyết.

Ex: - All right; I will pay you at the rate you ask.

- I won't forget little Margaret's birthday. I will send her a present.

##### 2. Would

• Dùng trong câu chuyển từ trực tiếp sang gián tiếp:

Ex: He said he would send it to me, but he didn't.

• Dùng trong câu điều kiện loại 2:

Ex: If she were here, she would help us.

• Dùng trong câu điều kiện loại 3:

Ex: He would have been very happy if he had known about it.

• "Would" là động từ khuyết thiếu dùng để diễn tả:

• Lời yêu cầu, đề nghị lịch sự:

Ex: - Would you like to have a cup of coffee?

- Would you please show me the way to Ha Dong market?

• Thói quen trong quá khứ:

Ex: When we were children, we would go skiing every winter

#### V. MUST/HAVE TO

• "Must" và "have to" đều có thể dùng để diễn tả sự cưỡng bách, bắt buộc.

• Tuy nhiên "must" mang ý nghĩa sự bắt buộc đến từ người nói còn "have to" mang ý nghĩa sự bắt buộc đến từ hoàn cảnh bên ngoài

Ex: - All candidates must answer 10 questions.

- The soup has to be stirred continuously to prevent burning.

• Trong câu phủ định, sự khác biệt khá rõ ràng:

• Don't have to (= don't need to): không phải

• mustn't: không được phép

Ex: - I musn't do my homework.

(Tôi không được phép làm bài về nhà.)

- I don't have to do my homework.

(Tôi không phải làm bài về nhà.)

#### VI. SHOULD/UGHT TO/HAD BETTER

- **Should/Ought to:** có nghĩa là “nên” dùng để diễn đạt lời khuyên hay sự mong đợi

Ex: You should/ought to have a vacation soon.

- **“Had better”** có nghĩa tương tự như “should”; nhưng chỉ được dùng cho tình huống cụ thể, và có nghĩa mạnh hơn “should” và “ought to”.

Ex:

- It's cold today. You had better wear a coat when you go out.

- I think that drivers should wear seat belts. (KHÔNG dùng: had better wear seat belts)

- Ngoài ra, “Should” có thể thay cho “if” trong câu điều kiện loại 1 (Dạng đảo ngữ):

Ex:

- If he comes, I will call the police.

= Should he come, I will call the police.

- Should you have any questions, don't hesitate to ask me.

**Lưu ý:** ought to/ought not to + do sth: có thể thay thế cho should/shouldn't trong hầu hết tất cả các trường hợp, ngoại trừ trường hợp thay thế cho if trong câu điều kiện loại 1.

- “Ought to” cũng dùng để diễn tả một sự gần đúng, rất có thể đúng (strong probability):

Ex: If Alice left home at 9:00, she ought to be here now.

- “Had better” còn được dùng để diễn tả lời cảnh báo

Ex: You had better work harder, or you will be sacked.

## VII. WOULD RATHER

Cấu trúc:

**S+ would rather + (not) V.inf (+than).....**

**S + would rather (that) +S+ V.ed/had P2**

Ex:

- I would rather stay at home (than go to the movie)

- I would rather you went home now.

## VIII. CÁC ĐỘNG TỪ BÁN KHUYẾT THIẾU: Dare – Need - Used to

- **Dare – Need - Used to:** vừa có thể dùng như một động từ khuyết thiếu, vừa có thể dùng như động từ thường:

- I needn't/don't need to do my homework.

- Dare he/Does he dare to speak to her?

- I used not to/didn't use to go this way.

- Trường hợp đặc biệt với động từ “need”:

Ex: My car needs repairing. = My car needs to be repaired.

⚠ **Tránh nhầm lẫn “used to V.inf” & “be/get used to + noun/Ving”**

- **used to + Vinf:** thói quen trong quá khứ

Ex: I used to go shopping in the morning.

- **be/get used to + noun/Ving:** bắt đầu quen với cái gì

Ex: I was used to the cold weather in Hanoi.

Ví dụ: Chọn đáp án đúng

1. Susan.....hear the speaker because the crowd was cheering so loudly.

A. might not

**B. couldn't**

C. can't

D. mustn't

2. Listen, please. You.....talk during the exam.

A. won't

**B. mustn't**

C. wouldn't

D. should

**Giải thích chi tiết:**

1. Câu này chỉ khả năng nên ta dùng “can't” hoặc “couldn't”.



Hơn nữa, tình huống này xảy ra trong quá khứ, nên ta không dùng "can't"

**Dịch:** Susan không thể nghe được người thuyết trình bởi vì đám đông cười quá lớn.

2. Ở đây, câu mang nghĩa chỉ một mệnh lệnh, nên ta dùng "mustn't" - không được phép

**Dịch:** Xin hãy nghe này. Bạn không được phép nói chuyện trong bài kiểm tra

## IX. CẤU TRÚC CÂU DỰ ĐOÁN

### • Dự đoán ở hiện tại:

Can/may/will/must/should/need/ought to ..+ Vinf

Ex: You have worked hard all day; you must be tired.

### • Dự đoán ở quá khứ:

• **must have P2:** Dự đoán một việc chắc chắn (100%) đã xảy ra trong quá khứ

Ex: He got a high score. He must have worked hard.

• **can't/couldn't have PII:** Dự đoán chắc chắn 100 % không thể xảy ra trong quá khứ

Ex: She can't have been at the party yesterday. She was teaching then.

• **may/might have P2:** dự đoán có khả năng diễn ra trong quá khứ (70-80%), chưa chắc đã xảy ra

Ex: He lost his key. He might have come into the house through the window.

• **should have PII:** đã nên làm gì trong quá khứ

Ex: You should have informed me of your arrival.

### • PRACTICES

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.*

1. Al painted his bedroom black. It looks dark and dreary. He \_\_\_\_\_ a different colour.

- A. had to choose                      B. should have chosen  
C. must have chosen                      D. could have been choosing

2. Tom is sitting at his desk. He is reading his chemistry text because he has a test tomorrow. He \_\_\_\_\_

- A. could study                      B. should be studying  
C. will study                      D. must be studying

3. When Mr. Lee was younger, he \_\_\_\_\_ work in the garden for hours, but now he has to take frequent rest because he has emphysema.

- A. has got to      B. could      C. should be able to      D. must be studying

4. Whenever my parents went out in the evening, I \_\_\_\_\_ the job of taking care of my younger brother.

- A. would get      B. should get      C. must have gotten      D. had better get

5. Peter \_\_\_\_\_ rather sleep on a mattress than on the floor.

- A. shall      B. could      C. would      D. must

6. Jimmy and Maria were mischievous children. They \_\_\_\_\_ tricks on their teachers.

- A. could play      B. used to play      C. could have played      D. may have played

7. Robert has a new car. He \_\_\_\_\_ it for a very good price. He paid 30 % less than the regular retail cost.

- A. could buy      B. had to buy      C. was supposed to buy      D. was able to buy

8. "Did you enjoy a picnic?" / "It was O. K, but I'd rather \_\_\_\_\_ to a movie."

- A. go      B. be going      C. have gone      D. went

9. "Why are you so sure that Ann didn't commit the crime she's been accused of committing. "She \_\_\_\_\_ that crime because I was with her, and we was out of town on that day."

- A. committed                      B. may not have committed  
C. wasn't supposed to commit      D. couldn't have committed

10. "Since we have to be there in a hurry, we \_\_\_\_\_ take a taxi." / "I agree."  
A. had better B. may C. have been used to D. are able to
11. "It \_\_\_\_\_ rain this evening. Why don't you take an umbrella?" / "That's a good idea!"  
A. had better B. could be C. must D. might
12. \_\_\_\_\_ you hand me that pair of scissors, please?" / "Certainly."  
A. May B. Shall C. Will D. Should
13. "Larry drove all night to get here for his sister's wedding. He \_\_\_\_\_ exhausted by the time he arrived."  
A. ought to be B. could be C. must have been D. will have been
14. "What are you doing here now? You \_\_\_\_\_ be here for another three hours."  
"I know. We got an early start and it took less time than we expected I hope you don't mind."  
A. couldn't B. might not C. had better not D. aren't supposed to
15. "\_\_\_\_\_ taking me downtown on your way to work this morning?" / "Not at all."  
A. Can you B. Why don't you C. Would you mind D. Could you please
16. "I locked myself out of my apartment. I didn't know what to do." / "You \_\_\_\_\_ your roommate."  
A. could have called B. may have called C. would have called D. must have called
17. You haven't eaten anything since yesterday afternoon. You \_\_\_\_\_ be really hungry!" / "I am."  
A. might B. will C. can D. must
18. "How long have been married?" / "We \_\_\_\_\_ have been married for twenty three years on your next anniversary."  
A. must B. should C. will D. could
19. "I \_\_\_\_\_ there at 6 P. M for the meeting, but my car won't start. Could you please give me a lift in your car?" – "Sure. Are you ready to go now?"  
A. will be B. may be C. supposed to be D. have got to be
20. "I left a cookie on the table, but now it's gone. What happened to it?"  
~ "I don't know. One of children \_\_\_\_\_ it".  
A. may have eaten B. could eat C. had to eat D. should have eaten
21. "My boss is always looking over my shoulder whenever I do anything."  
– "That \_\_\_\_\_ bother you." / "But it does."  
A. shouldn't B. might not C. may not D. won't
22. "This movie is boring and too violent." / "I agree. \_\_\_\_\_ leave?"  
A. Will we B. Why don't we C. Must we D. Would we
23. "Chris, you \_\_\_\_\_ the fish in the refrigerator before it spoils." ~ "You are right. I didn't know it was still in the bag."  
A. had better put. B. had to put C. would rather put D. may put
24. "What does Mr. Griffin do for a living?"  
~ "Nothing. He is very rich. He \_\_\_\_\_ work for a living."  
A. must not B. shouldn't C. doesn't have to D. had better
25. "Why are you so late?" ~ "I \_\_\_\_\_ my aunt to their airport. The traffic was terrible!"  
A. could take B. must have taken C. should take D. had to take
26. "I heard that Laura was offered a job at a top computer firm in Chicago."  
~ "Oh? That's wonderful! She \_\_\_\_\_ very pleased."  
A. is supposed to be B. might be C. must be D. is
27. "The hot weather doesn't seem to bother you."

~ "When I had my farm. I \_\_\_\_\_ work in the hot fields for hours."

- A. used to    B. ought to    C. must    D. had better

28. "They towed my car away from the executive parking lot yesterday."

~ "You \_\_\_\_\_ have parked there."

- A. may not    B. should not    C. must not    D. might not

29. "Are you going to have a big party for your father?"

"Not this year, but next year. He \_\_\_\_\_ 50 years old then."

- A. should be    B. must be    C. will be    D. has to be

30. "I need some help with this table. \_\_\_\_\_ you lift the other end, please?" ~ "Sure, just a second."

- A. May    B. Should    C. Could    D. Shall

31. "Barbara just told me that she can't go to the meeting tonight."

~ "She \_\_\_\_\_ go! We need her there for the financial report."

- A. has got to    B. has gotten to    C. have to    D. must be

32. "\_\_\_\_\_ letting me use your bicycle for a little while?" ~ "Not at all."

- A. Please to    B. would you mind    C. Will you    D. Could you please

33. "We \_\_\_\_\_ be here. That sign says "No trespassing."

~ "It is too late now. We're already been here."

- A. couldn't    B. don't have to    C. might not    D. aren't supposed to

34. "Harry's new jacket doesn't seem to fit him very well."

~ "He \_\_\_\_\_ it on before he bought it"

- A. must have tried    B. was able to try    C. should have tried    D. may have tried

35. "Do you like to play tennis?" – "Yes. When I work at the embassy, I \_\_\_\_\_ meet a friend at 5 every afternoon for a game."

- A. would    B. should    C. had better    D. would rather

36. Thank goodness we \_\_\_\_\_ eat fish again tonight. Dad didn't catch any today. –

- A. must    B. have to    C. must not    D. don't have to

37. The pen won't write; it \_\_\_\_\_ out of ink.

- A. must run    B. must be running    C. must have run    D. must have ran

38. The line is busy; someone \_\_\_\_\_ the telephone now.

- A. must be using    B. must have used    C. must use    D. must have been using

39. Bob is absent, he \_\_\_\_\_ sick again now.

- A. must have been    B. must be    C. must be being    D. must being

40. He \_\_\_\_\_ his job because he seems very happy.

- A. would like    B. can like    C. will like    D. must like

*Complete the second sentence in each pair, using the word given, so that the meaning stays the same.*

1. There is a possibility that they won't visit us at the weekend.

**might**    They \_\_\_\_\_ at the weekend.

2. Karen, I'd like you to help me with the washing up.

**will**    Karen, \_\_\_\_\_ with the washing up?

3. I'm sure it wasn't Tim who called you because I saw him outside.

**been**    It \_\_\_\_\_ Tim who you called because I saw him outside.

4. I suppose Bruce has gone to the dentist since he has a terrible toothache.

**have**    Bruce \_\_\_\_\_ to the dentist since he has a terrible toothache.

5. May I borrow your tape recorder this afternoon?

**mind**    Would \_\_\_\_\_ your tape recorder this afternoon?

6. You can't walk your dog in the park.

**are** You \_\_\_\_\_ your dog in the park.

7. Perhaps you didn't buy that watch from this shop.

**could** You \_\_\_\_\_ that watch from another shop.

8. Garry couldn't remember where he had put his wallet.

**was** Garry \_\_\_\_\_ where he had put his wallet.

9. You were wrong to drive through the red light.

**should** You \_\_\_\_\_ through the red light.

10. Our children were never in the habit of telling lies.

**used** Our children \_\_\_\_\_ lies.

*Complete the sentences with the appropriate form of the words in parentheses. Add not if necessary for a sentence to make sense:*

1. A: Why wasn't Pamela at the meeting last night?

B: She (*may + attend*) \_\_\_\_\_ the lecture at Shaw Hall. I know she very much wanted to hear the speaker.

2. A: Eg has a test tomorrow that he needs to study for. He (*should + watch*) \_\_\_\_\_ TV right now.

3. A: Why didn't Diane come to the phone? I know she was home when I called.

B: I don't know. She (*might + wash*) \_\_\_\_\_ her hair when you called. Who knows?

4. There's Tom. He's standing at the bus stop. He (*must + wait*) \_\_\_\_\_ for the two o'clock bus.

5. Kathy lost her way while driving to River City. She (*should + leave*) \_\_\_\_\_ her road map at home.

6. A: Where's Ann?

B: I don't know. She (*could + visit*) \_\_\_\_\_ her aunt and uncle right now. She usually visits them every Friday evening.

7. You (*should + watch*) \_\_\_\_\_ the movie on TV tonight. I highly recommend it. It's a classic.

8. I heard a loud crash in the next room. When I walked in, I found a brick on the floor, and the window was broken. Someone (*must + throw*) \_\_\_\_\_ the brick through the window.

9. Jack is in the employee lounge drinking coffee. He (*should + work*) \_\_\_\_\_ on his report right now. It's due at 3:00 this afternoon. He (*should + waste*) \_\_\_\_\_ his time in the employee lounge.

10. A: Where's Jane? I haven't seen her for a week.

B: I'm not sure. She (*might + travel*) \_\_\_\_\_ in Europe. I think I heard her mentioning something about spending a few weeks in Europe this spring.

11. My tweed jacket isn't in my closet. I think my roommate (*might + borrow*) \_\_\_\_\_ it. He often borrows my things without asking me.

12. Do you hear that guitar music? Carla (*must + play*) \_\_\_\_\_ her guitar.

13. A: When I arrived, Dennis looked surprised.

B: He (*must + expect*) \_\_\_\_\_ you.

14. A: I couldn't reach Peter on the phone. I wonder where he was.

B: He told me he was going to wash his car and then go to dinner at the Bistro Cafe. He (*might + wash*) \_\_\_\_\_ his car when you called, or he (*may + leave + already*) \_\_\_\_\_ for the restaurant by then.

*Rewrite each sentence so that it contains the word given in capitals, and so that the meaning stays the same:*

1. I think you should give up smoking immediately.  
(HAD)
2. I expect we will get there by 5:00, if there isn't too much traffic.  
(SHOULD)
3. Is it necessary for me to bring my passport?  
(HAVE)
4. I am sure that the cat is in the house somewhere.  
(MUST)
5. An aerial is not required with this radio.  
(HAVE)
6. It is very inconvenient if you can't drive.  
(ABLE)
7. I am sure that John is not the thief.  
(CAN'T)
8. I am certain that Norman will be late.  
(BOUND)
9. All students should report to the main hall at 9:00.  
(ARE)
10. I thought that you would know better!  
(OUGHT)

*Rewrite each sentence so that it contains can, could, must, have to or should. Include not if necessary.*

1. I'm sure that Helen feels rather lonely.  
=>
2. You are not allowed to park here.  
=>
3. It would be a good idea if Harry took a holiday.  
=>
4. I'm sure that Brenda isn't over thirty.  
=>
5. Do I need a different driving license for a motorbike?  
=>
6. What would you advise me to do?  
=>
7. Mary knows how to stand on her head.  
=>
8. You needn't come with me if you don't want to.  
=>
9. It's possible for anyone to break into this house!  
=>
10. The dentist will see you soon. I don't think he'll be long.  
=>

## PART IX : INVERSION AND EMPHASIS IN ENGLISH

### • THEORY

#### • KIẾN THỨC VỀ ĐẢO NGỮ

#### 1. Tại sao lại gọi là ĐẢO NGỮ ?

- Bình thường câu khẳng định và phủ định sẽ có dạng: S (+ Trợ động từ) + ADV + V

Eg : I will never forget them.

**ĐẢO NGỮ là dạng mà TRỢ ĐỘNG TỪ và TRẠNG TỪ bị ĐẢO LÊN ĐẦU CÂU TRƯỚC CHỦ NGỮ.**

Eg : Never will I forget them.

#### 2. Mục đích của việc đảo ngữ là ?

- Được dùng để **nhấn mạnh** một **thành phần** hay **ý** nào đó trong câu.

**Lưu ý:** Câu Hỏi cũng là 1 dạng Đảo Ngữ. (Are you tired? Where did she go?)

#### 3. Bảng thể hiện chi tiết các dạng đảo ngữ.

#### ĐẢO NGỮ CÁC CỤM TỪ "NO"

##### 1. No/Not + N + Trợ động từ + S + Động từ

Eg : Not a tear did she shed when the story ended in a tragedy.

##### 2. At no time = Never = Under/In no circumstances (không bao giờ)

Eg : At no time did he suspect that his girlfriend was an enemy spy

##### 3. By no means (hoàn toàn không)

Eg : By no means is she poor. She only pretends to be.

##### 4. For no reason (không vì lí do gì)

Eg : For no reason will we surrender

##### 5. On no condition = On no account + Trợ động từ + S + Động từ (dù bất cứ lí do gì cũng không)

Eg : On no account should you be late for the exam.

##### 6. No longer (không còn nữa)

Eg : No longer does he make mistakes

##### 7. Nowhere + Trợ động từ + S + Động từ (không nơi nào, không ở đâu)

Eg : No where can the keys be found

#### ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI CÁC TRẠNG TỪ PHỦ ĐỊNH

Never, Rarely, Seldom, Little, Hardly, Scarcely, Barely,...+ trợ động từ + S + V

Eg : Little did he know the truth.

Eg : Never in my life have I been in such an embarrassing situation.

#### ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI ONLY

##### 1. Only after + S + V + Trợ động từ + S + V (chỉ sau khi)

Eg : Only after I had left home did I realize how important my family played a role in my life.

##### 2. Only after + N + Trợ động từ + S + V (chỉ sau khi)

Eg : Only after his father's retirement did he take over the company.

##### 3. Only by + V-ing + Trợ động từ + S + V (chỉ bằng cách)

Eg : Only by studying hard can you pass the exam

##### 4. Only if + S + V + Trợ động từ + S + V (chỉ nếu)

Eg : Only if you promise to keep secret will I tell you about it.

##### 5. Only when + S + V + Trợ động từ + S + V (chỉ khi)

Eg : Only when you grow up can you understand this matter

##### 6. Only with + N + trợ động từ + S + V (chỉ với)

Eg : Only with your help can we manage.

##### 7. Only once/ Only later/ Only in this way/ Only then + Trợ động từ + Chủ ngữ + Động từ

Eg : Only once have I met her.

Eg : Only later did I realize I was wrong.

### ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI HARDLY/NO SOONER

1. **Hardly/barely/scarcely** + had + S + Vp2 + **when** + S + V (quá khứ đơn)

Eg : **Hardly** had I gone to bed when the telephone rang

2. **No sooner** + had + S + Vp2 + than + S + V (quá khứ đơn) (Ngay khi/vừa mới... thì)

Eg : **No sooner** had I gone to bed than the telephone rang.

### ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI NOT ONLY.....BUT ALSO

**Not only** + Trợ động từ + Chủ ngữ + Động từ + **but also** + Chủ ngữ + Động từ (không những... mà còn)

Eg : **Not only** does she sing beautifully but also she learns well.

### ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI SO THAT/SUCH THAT

1. **So** + Tính từ + V + chủ ngữ + that + clause

Eg : **So** beautiful is she that many boys run after her.

2. **Such** + be + N + that + clause/ N + be + such + that + clause (quá... đến nỗi mà)

Eg : Her anger was such that she broke the vase.

= **Such** was her anger that she broke the vase.

### ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI NOT UNTIL/NOT TILL

**Not until/till** + Time/Time clause + Trợ động từ + Chủ ngữ + Động từ (mãi đến khi)

Eg : **Not until/till** midnight did he come home.

Eg : **Not until/till** I was 8 did I know how to ride a bike.

### ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI NEITHER

**Neither** + Trợ động từ + Chủ ngữ + Động từ

Eg : **Neither** is there excitement nor entertainment in this small town.

### ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI CÂU ĐIỀU KIỆN

1. **Câu điều kiện loại I**: Should + S+V, V + O /S + will, can... + V

Eg : **Should** he come, please tell him to see me.

2. **Câu điều kiện loại II**: Were + S + (to V) + ..., S + would/could + V

Eg : **Were** I you, I would apply for that job. **Were** I to have enough money, I would buy that car.

3. **Câu điều kiện loại III**: Had + S + Vp2, S + would/could + have + Vp2

Eg : **Had** the car in the front not stopped so suddenly, the accidents wouldn't have happened.

### ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI ALTHOUGH.

1. **Although/even though/though** + S + V, S + V

= **Much as** + S + V, S + V

= No matter what + S + V, S + V hoặc No matter how + adj/adv + S + V, S + V

Eg : **Although** the exercise is difficult, the boys can solve it.

= **Much as** the exercise is difficult, the boys can solve it.

= **No matter** how difficult the exercise is, the boys can solve it.

= However + adj/adv + S + V = Adj/adv + as/though + S + V, S + V

= **However** difficult the exercise is, the boys can solve it.

= Difficult **as** the exercise is, the boys can solve it.

### ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI NOR

**Nor** + Trợ động từ + Chủ ngữ + Động từ

Eg : He doesn't smoke, **nor** does he drink

### ĐẢO NGỮ CÓ SO/NEITHER

**So/Neither** + Trợ động từ + Chủ ngữ

Eg : I can't sing well, **neither** can my sister. He loves football, **so** do I.

### ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI TRẠNG TỪ CHỈ HƯỚNG/PHƯƠNG, NƠI CHỖ

**Adv of place** + V + S

Eg : **Near** my house is a bus stop.

## ĐẢO NGỮ VỚI CỤM PHÂN TỬ

Cụm phân tử (V-ing/Vp2) + V + S

Eg : **Situated** in the central mountains of Alaska is a peak named Denali.

Eg : **Coming** first in the race was my sister.

### • PRACTICES

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

- Never in her life \_\_\_\_\_ this exhilarating emotion.  
A. she experienced                      B. she did experience  
C. she had experienced                D. had she experienced
- \_\_\_\_\_ seen such awful behavior.  
A. Have I never before                B. Before have I never  
C. Never before I had                 D. Never before have I
- They were wealthy. Money was plentiful, and \_\_\_\_\_ to be very bothered about levels of expenditure.  
A. rarely anyone seemed            B. rarely did anyone seem  
C. did anyone rarely seem            D. rarely anyone did seem
- Not only do I enjoy classical music, \_\_\_\_\_ a season ticket to the symphony.  
A. but I also have                      B. but also have                      C. but also I have                      D. I but also have
- \_\_\_\_\_ so upset!  
A. Has the boss seldom been            B. Seldom the boss has been  
C. Seldom has the boss been            D. Has the boss been seldom
- \_\_\_\_\_ the situation.  
A. Little he understands                B. Little he understood  
C. Little did he understand              D. Did he understand little
- There \_\_\_\_\_  
A. comes my bus                        B. does my bus come  
C. my bus come                         D. did my bus come
- \_\_\_\_\_ his terrible secret.  
A. Did they learn only later            B. Only later they did learn  
C. Only later they learnt                D. Only later did they learn
- I'm from Turkey.  
- \_\_\_\_\_  
A. Am I, too                              B. I am, so                              C. So am I                              D. Either am I
- I cannot swim very well \_\_\_\_\_  
A. and neither my sister can            B. and neither can my sister  
C. and so my sister can                 D. and so can my sister
- So difficult \_\_\_\_\_ that \_\_\_\_\_ three months to prepare.  
A. is the test / do the students need    B. the test is / do the students need  
C. is the test / the students need        D. the test is / the students need
- \_\_\_\_\_ the problem, he wouldn't have committed those mistakes.  
A. Had he understood                 B. He had understood  
C. If had he understood                D. Unless had he understood
- \_\_\_\_\_ a more beautiful sight.  
A. Nowhere hadn't Susan seen            B. Had Susan seen nowhere  
C. Nowhere Susan had seen              D. Nowhere had Susan seen



14. By the gate \_\_\_\_\_  
A. a little girl stood      B. stood a little girl  
C. did a little girl stand      D. a little girl did stand
15. Not until the next morning \_\_\_\_\_ how serious \_\_\_\_\_  
A. she realized / was it      B. she realized / it was  
C. did she realize / was it      D. did she realize / it was
16. Not till \_\_\_\_\_ that he had lost the key.  
A. he got home did he find      B. he got home he found  
C. did he get home did he find      D. did he get home he found
17. Only when \_\_\_\_\_ into smart clothes after the match \_\_\_\_\_ to talk to the TV reporters  
A. the players had changed / they were allowed  
B. the players had changed / were they allowed  
C. had the players changed / were they allowed  
D. had the players changed / they were allowed
18. No sooner \_\_\_\_\_ the door than \_\_\_\_\_ it was locked.  
A. had I reached / did I realize      B. I had reached / did I realize  
C. had I reached / I realized      D. I had reached / I realized
19. \_\_\_\_\_, he can never follow me.  
A. Fast as he runs      B. Fast as does he run  
C. As he runs fast      D. As does he run fast
20. \_\_\_\_\_ John that she talked about him all the time.  
A. Did so much she adore      B. Did she adored so much  
C. So much she adored      D. So much did she adore
21. \_\_\_\_\_ kinder to his employees, his business would not have collapsed.  
A. Mr. Chan had been      B. Had if Mr. Chan been  
C. Had Mr. Chan been      D. If had Mr. Chan been
22. Scarcely \_\_\_\_\_ out of bed when \_\_\_\_\_  
A. had I got / did the doorbell ring      B. had I got / the doorbell rang  
C. I had got / did the doorbell ring      D. I had got / the doorbell rang
23. Little \_\_\_\_\_ how much trouble \_\_\_\_\_ in.  
A. you know / are you      B. you know / you are  
C. do you know / are you      D. do you know / you are
24. On the table \_\_\_\_\_  
A. lay a yellow cat      B. a yellow cat lay  
C. did a yellow cat lie      D. a yellow cat lies
25. Such \_\_\_\_\_ that \_\_\_\_\_ whenever it was on.  
A. the popularity of the film was / the streets were deserted  
B. was the popularity of the film / the streets were deserted  
C. the popularity of the film was / were the streets deserted  
D. was the popularity of the film / were the streets deserted
26. They can neither read nor write, \_\_\_\_\_ such concepts.  
A. they can nor comprehend      B. nor can they comprehend  
C. nor they can comprehend      D. can they nor comprehend
27. Hardly \_\_\_\_\_ before \_\_\_\_\_  
A. had I left / did the trouble start      B. had I left / the trouble started

- C. I had left / the trouble started      D. I had left / did the trouble start
28. Only after \_\_\_\_\_  
A. the teacher understood the situation and did he make a comment  
B. understanding the situation the teacher made a comment  
C. the teacher understood the situation and made a comment  
D. understanding the situation did the teacher make a comment
29. \_\_\_\_\_ to win the election, what \_\_\_\_\_ first?  
A. You were / you would do      B. You were / would you do  
C. Were you / you would do      D. Were you / would you do
30. Down \_\_\_\_\_  
A. fell half a dozen apples      B. half a dozen apples fell  
C. did half a dozen apples fall      D. half a dozen apples fall
31. Only then \_\_\_\_\_ the danger \_\_\_\_\_  
A. did I see / which we were      B. I saw / which we were  
C. did I see / which were we      D. I saw / which were we
32. Not a single word \_\_\_\_\_  
A. said she      B. she says      C. did she say      D. she said
33. Carefully though \_\_\_\_\_, he could not manage to escape the accident.  
A. he drove      B. did he drive      C. does he drive      D. he is driving
34. Not until 1911 \_\_\_\_\_  
A. identified the first of the vitamins  
B. the first of the vitamins identified  
C. was the first of the vitamins identified  
D. the first of the vitamins was identified
35. Only after the film started \_\_\_\_\_ that \_\_\_\_\_ it before.  
A. I realized / I had seen      B. did I realize / I had seen  
C. I realized / had I seen      D. did I realize / had I seen
36. \_\_\_\_\_ will we let you live independently.  
A. Not until do you grow up      B. Until you grow up  
C. Until do you grow up      D. Not until you grow up
37. No sooner \_\_\_\_\_ married than \_\_\_\_\_ to argue.  
A. they had got / did they begin      B. they had got / they began  
C. had they got / did they begin      D. had they got / they began
38. I had to show him my identity card and \_\_\_\_\_  
A. only then he let me in      B. only then did he let me in  
C. did he let me in only then      D. did only then he let me in
39. No matter how \_\_\_\_\_, he cannot make ends meet.  
A. he works hard      B. does he work hard  
C. hard he works      D. hard does he work
40. \_\_\_\_\_ the clothes since her husband bought a washing machine.  
A. Any longer she has washed      B. Any longer has she washed  
C. No longer she has washed      D. No longer has she washed
41. \_\_\_\_\_ us to have private talks in class.  
A. At no time does our teacher allow      B. At no time our teacher allows  
C. At any time does our teacher allow      D. At any time our teacher allows

42. She is beautiful, \_\_\_\_\_  
 A. as her daughter is      B. as is her daughter  
 C. neither is her daughter      D. neither her daughter is
43. \_\_\_\_\_ what surprises we have in store for her.  
 A. Little she knows      B. Does she little know  
 C. Little does she know      D. Does she know little
44. \_\_\_\_\_ this match.  
 A. No way will you win      B. No way you will win  
 C. Any way will you win      D. Any way you will win
45. Whatever reasons \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ them.  
 A. do you state / I never believe      B. do you state / never do I believe  
 C. you state / I never believe      D. you state / never do I believe
46. \_\_\_\_\_ not for his deafness, \_\_\_\_\_ on the phone.  
 A. Were it / could he communicate      B. Were it / he could communicate  
 C. It were / could he communicate      D. It were / he could communicate
47. \_\_\_\_\_ me a shelter \_\_\_\_\_ dinner for us.  
 A. Not only they gave / but did they also prepare  
 B. Not only they gave / but they also prepared  
 C. Not only did they give / but also prepared  
 D. Not only did they give / but they also prepared
48. \_\_\_\_\_ such a more comfortable hotel.  
 A. Nowhere in the area can you find      B. Nowhere in the area you can find  
 C. Anywhere in the area can you find      D. Anywhere in the area you can find
49. Down \_\_\_\_\_ and up \_\_\_\_\_  
 A. the rain came / went the umbrellas      B. came the rain / the umbrellas went  
 C. the rain came / the umbrellas went      D. came the rain / went the umbrellas
50. \_\_\_\_\_ us an apology.  
 A. Not once the manager offered      B. Not once did the manager offer  
 C. Did the manager not once offer      D. Didn't once the manager offer

*Rewrite each of the sentences below, using the words given in the brackets, so that the meaning of each one has an emphasis.*

1. My brother went off without saying a word.      (Off...)  
 =>
2. He went off without saying a word.      (Off...)  
 =>
3. Her toys were along the corridor.      (Along the corridor...)  
 =>
4. The castle stands on a hill.      (On a hill...)  
 =>
5. Your chance to speak out is now.      (Now...)  
 =>
6. We have seldom fished so much here.      (Seldom...)  
 =>
7. They are in no way responsible for what occurred last night.      (In no way...)  
 =>

8. You should not on any account take these pills when you drink alcohol. (On no account...)  
=>
9. She not once offered us her help. (Not once...)  
=>
10. I did not became aware of what was going on until I saw her weeping. (Not until. ..)  
=>
11. We little realised the dangers that were awaiting us. (Little ...)  
=>
12. He was so tired that he slept for fourteen hours. (So tired ...)  
=>
13. My delight was such that I bought everybody a drink. (Such...)  
=>
14. I love him to such an extent that I would even give my life for him. (To such an extent...)  
=>
15. They not only supply us with food, but also with drinks. (Not only...)  
=>
16. We had no sooner eaten it than we had a terrible stomach-ache. (No sooner...)  
=>
17. I had hardly gone to bed when the telephone rang. (Hardly...)  
=>
18. She took him to the zoo and to the cinema as well. (Not only ...)  
=>
19. The cock crows as soon as the day breaks. (No sooner)  
=>
20. She agreed to go out with him only when he bought her some flowers. (Only when...)  
=>
21. If you should need a good make-up remover, please meknow (Should...)  
=>
22. If I were to win the first prize in the national lottery, I would no longer work. (Were...)  
=>
23. If you hadn't flooded the engine, it would have started at once. (Had you...)  
=>
24. If my parents should need me, I will never let them down. (Should...)  
=>
25. If I were in your place, I would try to be more assertive. (Were...)  
=>

*Finish the second sentence so that the meaning has a similar meaning with an emphasis.*

1. You shouldn't in any way consider him as your worst enemy.  
=> In no way
2. You must on no account upset your parents.  
=> On no account
3. Mr and Mrs Adam live across the bridge.  
=> Across the bridge
4. I was so scared that I could not even scream.  
=> So scared

5. The horrific view of the massacre was in front of us.  
=> In front of us
6. The canyon lies behind those mountains.  
=> Behind those mountains
7. He only then became aware of the dangers of the jungle.  
=> Only then
8. She had scarcely begun to study when her boyfriend rang the bell.  
=> Scarcely
9. I won't go trekking with him.  
=> No way
10. My terror was such that I couldn't move.  
=> Such
11. I had no sooner switched on the dishwasher than it broke down.  
=> No sooner
12. As soon as he saw her, he fell in love with her.  
=> No sooner
13. If we had known that you were interested in buying the block of flats, we would have sold it to you.  
=> Had
14. Your mother went down the road.  
=> Down the road
15. She went down the road.  
=> Down the road
16. This disease is common only in hot countries.  
=> Only in hot countries
17. You will never again have such an opportunity.  
=> Never again
18. We not only wrote to her many times, but telephone her twice, too.  
=> Not only
19. Immediately he learnt about his mother's incurable disease, he cried his eyes out.  
=> No sooner
20. We have both put aside some money and stocked up with a lot of groceries from the shop next door.  
=> Not only
21. I did not use suntan lotion, either.  
=> Neither
22. The wood pigeon flew up.  
=> Up
23. If you should increase our wages, we will work overtime.  
=> Should
24. She had hardly taken everything out of the picnic basket when it began to rain.  
=> Hardly
25. If you were to buy a new car, which of these would you choose?  
=> Were
26. You should not press both button at once under any circumstances.

=> Under no circumstances

27. Jean not once offered her boss a word of apology.

=> Not once

28. I didn't realize who he was until later.

=> Only later

29. He never suspected that the money had been stolen.

=> At no time

30. He insisted on a refund.

=> Nothing

## PART X : CONECTIVES

### • THEORY

#### I. LIÊN TỪ KẾT HỢP/ ĐĂNG LẬP

CHỨC NĂNG
- Liên từ kết hợp đăng lập: Là những từ hoặc cụm từ dùng để nối 2 từ, 2 cụm từ hay 2 mệnh đề trong câu hoặc 2 câu với nhau.
ĐẶC ĐIỂM
- Nối các từ hoặc cụm từ/ nhóm từ cùng loại, hoặc những mệnh đề ngang hàng nhau về mặt ngữ pháp (tính từ với tính từ, danh từ với danh từ .) <div style="text-align: center;"><b>For, and, nor, but, or, yet, so (FANBOYS)</b></div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>She is a good <b>and</b> loyal wife.</li> <li>He is intelligent <b>but</b> very lazy.</li> <li>She says she doesn't love me, <b>yet</b> I still love her.</li> <li>We work hard, <b>or</b> we will fail the exam.</li> <li>The shops were closed, <b>so</b> I didn't get any milk.</li> <li>He will surely succeed, <b>for</b> he works hard.</li> <li>That is not what I meant to say, <b>nor</b> should you interpret my statement as an admission of guilt.</li> </ul>
NOTES
- Sau " <b>nor</b> " bắt buộc là 1 động từ, nên nếu chủ ngữ của 2 mệnh đề khác nhau thì khi ghép lại, phải đưa động từ hoặc mượn trợ động từ đứng trước chủ ngữ của mệnh đề thứ 2. He isn't rich, <b>nor do I</b> imagine that he ever will be.

#### II. LIÊN TỪ TƯƠNG QUAN

CHỨC NĂNG	
- Sử dụng theo cặp để liên kết các cụm từ/ mệnh đề có chức năng tương đương.	
MỘT SỐ CẶP LIÊN TỪ TƯƠNG QUAN THƯỜNG GẶP	
<b>Both.....and.....</b> (vừa ... vừa)	- Khi " <b>Both...and</b> " dùng để nối hai chủ ngữ, động từ chia số nhiều <b>Both</b> my father <b>and</b> my mother <b>like</b> dogs.
<b>Either..... or.....</b> (hoặc ... hoặc ...) <b>Neither.....nor.....</b> (không..mà cũng không ..) <b>Not only..... but also.....</b> (không những ..mà còn..)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Quy luật chung</b></li> <li>- <b>Quy luật cân đối</b> : Về đầu/ mệnh đề đầu "<b>either, neither, both, not only</b>" dùng với loại từ nào thì trong vế sau/ mệnh đề sau "<b>or, nor, and, but also</b>" cũng phải dùng với loại từ đó.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>He likes eating <b>both</b> fish <b>and</b> meat.</li> <li>She <b>neither</b> smokes <b>nor</b> drinks.</li> <li>He is <b>not only</b> deaf <b>but also</b> dumb.</li> <li>You can speak <b>either</b> slowly <b>or</b> fast.</li> </ul> </li> <li>- <b>Quy tắc gần nhất</b> : Nếu chủ ngữ khác nhau về số (nhiều hay ít) hay về ngôi (person) thì <b>động từ chia theo chủ ngữ gần nhất</b>.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Not only</b> he <b>but also</b> his friend <b>likes</b> fish.</li> <li><b>Either</b> he <b>or</b> his sisters <b>have</b> been there.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Lưu ý</b> : Not only ...but also = not only ...but...also = not only ... but...as well.</li> <li><b>Not only</b> children <b>but also</b> grown up people love Walt Disney cartoons.</li> <li><b>Not only</b> children <b>but</b> grown up people love Walt Disney cartoons <b>as well</b>.</li> </ul>	
<b>Whether.....or.....</b>	Have you made a decision about <b>whether</b> to go to the movies <b>or not</b> ?
<b>If.....then</b> (nếu ... thì)	<b>If</b> that is the case, <b>then</b> I'm not surprised about what's happening.
<b>Not ..... but</b>	I <b>don't</b> want to do anything <b>but</b> sleep.
<b>No sooner..... than.....</b>	S + had + no sooner + VP2 + than + S + Vqk

<p><b>Hardly/ Barely</b> <b>Scarcely.....when</b></p> <p>(vừa mới....thì đã...)</p>	<p><b>S + had + hardly/ barely/ scarcely + VP2 + when/ before + Vqk</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• I had no sooner arrived home than the phone rang.</li> <li>• I had scarcely arrived home when the phone rang.</li> </ul> <p>- Đảo ngữ với No sooner ...than, Hardly/ Scarcely/Barely...when...</p> <p><b>No sooner + had +S+VP2 + than + S + Vqk</b></p> <p><b>Hardly/Barely/ Scarcely + had +S+VP2 + when/ before + S + Vqk</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• We had <b>no sooner</b> left out <b>than</b> they came in room. → <b>No sooner</b> had we left out <b>than</b> they came in room.</li> <li>• I had <b>hardly</b> arrived home <b>when</b> the phone rang. → <b>Hardly</b> had I arrived home <b>when</b> the phone rang.</li> </ul>
---	--

### III. LIÊN TỪ PHỤ THUỘC

CHỨC NĂNG	
- Nối các cụm từ/ mệnh đề có chức năng khác nhau – mệnh đề phụ với mệnh đề chính trong câu.	
MỘT SỐ LIÊN TỪ PHỤ THUỘC THƯỜNG GẶP	
Though, Although, Even though, Even if	
<p><b>Though</b> (mặc dù)</p>	<p>- <b>Though</b> : liên từ, thường đứng đầu câu hoặc giữa câu. <b>Though</b> he is poor, he is happy = Poor <b>though</b> he is, he is happy. (conjunction)</p> <p>- <b>Though</b> trạng từ, và thường hay đứng cuối câu.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• I am busy today. We could meet tomorrow, <b>though</b>. (adverb)</li> </ul>
<p><b>Although</b> (mặc dù)</p>	<p>- Liên từ chỉ đứng đầu hay giữa câu, không bao giờ đứng cuối câu. - Nghĩa <b>though</b> (thường dùng hơn)/<b>although</b> (trang trọng hơn) giống nhau</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Although/ though</b> I don't like him, I admit that he's a good manager.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Even though</b> (cho dù)</p>	<p>- Có sắc thái ý nghĩa mạnh hơn <b>although</b>, nói về tính tất nhiên sẽ xảy ra dù với điều kiện gì đó. (express a fact)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You keep making that stupid noise <b>even though</b> I've asked you to stop three times.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Even if</b> (thậm chí)</p>	<p>- Diễn tả 1 sự việc có khả năng xảy ra, nhưng dù có hay không, nó cũng không ảnh hưởng đến sự việc ở mệnh đề chính. (used in a supposition or hypothesis).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Even if</b> she studies hard, she won't pass the exam.</li> </ul>
No matter + who/what/which/where/when/how + S +V, clause. (dù có... đi chăng nữa.. thì)	
<p><b>No matter how</b> = <b>however</b> (dù thế nào đi chăng nữa)</p> <p><b>No matter what</b> = <b>whatever</b> (dù gì đi chăng nữa)</p> <p><b>No matter where</b> = <b>wherever</b> (dù nơi nào đi chăng nữa)</p> <p><b>No matter when</b> = <b>whenever</b> (dù khi nào đi chăng nữa)</p> <p><b>No matter which</b> = <b>whichever</b> (dù điều gì đi chăng nữa)</p> <p><b>No matter who</b> = <b>whoever</b> (dù ai đi chăng nữa)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>No matter who</b> telephones, say I'm out.</li> <li>• <b>No matter what</b> you say, I won't believe you.</li> <li>• <b>No matter where</b> we met, I call you friend.</li> </ul>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>LƯU Ý</b></li> <li>• Các cấu trúc này có thể đứng cuối câu mà không cần có mệnh đề theo sau: I will always love you, <b>no matter what</b>.</li> <li>• <b>Cấu trúc: No matter how/ however + adj/ adv + S + V, clause.</b> (cho dù, dù)</li> </ul> <p>No matter <b>how/ however</b> hard I try, I can't solve this problem.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Cấu trúc: Adj/ ady + as though + S+V, clause.</b> (mặc dù).</li> </ul> <p><b>Rich as</b> he is, he is unhappy. = <b>Rich though</b> he is, he is unhappy.</p>	
As, since, because, due to, owing to seeing that, now (that), in as much as... (Bởi vì)	



**Due to + N** (thường dùng sau "be").

**Owing to +N** (thường đứng đầu câu)

- The delay was **due to** the traffic jam.
- **Owing to** the heavy traffic, they were late.
- **Due to** the rise in oil prices, the inflation rate rose by 1.25%.

**Because of/ on account of + N/V-ing**

- The man was detained **on account of** his strange behavior.

**Because/ since/ as/ seeing that/ now (that) due to the fact that +S+V**

- **As/ Since/ because** you weren't there, I left a message.
- **Seeing that** he's been sick, he's unlikely to come.

**For/ in that /in as much as (trọng trọng)**

- The film is unusual **in that** it features only 4 actors.
- I believed her, **for** surely she would not lie to me.

### Giving examples (đưa ra ví dụ)

- **For example/ For instance (chẳng hạn, ví dụ)** .

What would you do, **for instance**, if you found a member of staff stealing?

- **Namely** (cụ thể là): dùng để đề cập đến cái gì đó bằng tên.

There are two problems: **namely**, the expense and the time.

### Adding information(bổ sung thông tin )

**And** (và)

**In addition (to sth)** (ngoài ra)

**As well as** (cũng như)

**Also** (cũng)

**Too** (cũng)

**Furthermore** (hơn nữa)

**Besides** (ngoài ra)

**Moreover** (hơn nữa)

**Apart from** (ngoài)

**In addition to** these arrangements, extra ambulances will be on duty until midnight.

We are interested in costs **as well as** the competition.

**Apart from/ Besides** Rover, we are the largest sports car manufacturer.

He said he hadn't discussed the matter with her. **Furthermore/ Moreover**, he hadn't even contacted her.

### Sequencing ideas(sắp xếp ý tưởng theo trình tự).

**The former, .. the latter** (vấn đề trước), .. (vấn đề sau):dùng khi đề cập 1 trong 2 ý

Marketing and finance are both covered in the course. **The former** is studied in the first term and **the latter** is studied in the final term.

**Firstly, secondly, finally/ lastly, the first point, the second point, the third**

... (đầu tiên là, hai là, cuối cùng là): được dùng để liệt kê các ý.

**The following** (sau đây) là cách hay để bắt đầu một chuỗi liệt kê.

**The following** people have been chosen to go on the training course: Peters, Jones and Owen.

### Giving a reason(đưa ra lý do)

**Due to / Owing to +N**

**Because of/ On account of (+N/ V-ing)**

**Because/ Since/ As/ Seeing that/ now that + clause**

**The reason for + N, The reason why +S+ V**

**The reason why** grass is green was a mystery to the little boy.

**The reason for** the disaster was engine failure, not human error.

**Due to/ Owing to/ Because of** the rise in oil prices, the inflation rate rose by 1.25%

**Due to/ Owing to the fact that** oil prices have risen, the inflation rate has gone up by 1.25%.

**Because /Since/ As/ Seeing that** it was raining,the match was postponed

### Giving a result (Đưa ra 1 kết quả)

**Therefore** (vì vậy)/ **So** (vậy nên)/ **Consequently** (do đó). **Thus/ Hence** (do vậy)

**As a result** (kết quả là) để nhấn mạnh hậu quả của hành động/ sự vật sự việc.

**This means that** (điều này có nghĩa là)

The company is expanding. **Therefore / Consequently**, they are taking on extra staff.  
He was blinded **as a result of** a terrible accident.

### Contrasting ideas (đưa ra ý đối lập)

**But** (những) **However/ Nevertheless/ Nonetheless** (tuy nhiên)

**Although / even though** (mặc dù) **Despite/In spite of (the fact that)**(mặc dù)

**While/ Whereas** (trong khi) **Unlike** (không giống)

**In theory... in practice...** (về lý thuyết trên thực tế...): cho thấy kết quả không mong đợi.

**While** my sister has blue eyes, mine are brown.

**Unlike** in the UK, the USA has cheap petrol.

**In theory**, teachers should prepare for lessons, but in practice, they often don't have enough time.

### Summarising (tóm tắt).

**In short/ brief/ summary/ a nutshell conclusion (nói tóm lại)**

**To summarise/ conclude/ put it in a nutshell**

**In brief/ short/ summary/ conclusion**, the meeting was a disaster.

### CÁC TỪ NỐI THƯỜNG DÙNG NHIỀU TRONG VĂN NÓI

**But frankly speaking...** thành thật mà nói...

**It is worth noting that...** đáng chú ý là...

**According to estimation/ statistics/ survey data...** theo ước tính/ thống kê/ số liệu điều tra...

**As far as I know,...** theo như tôi được biết,...

**In a little more detail...** chi tiết hơn một chút...

**I have a feeling that...** tôi có cảm giác rằng...

**In accordance with sth:** Phù hợp với cái gì...

**What is mentioning is that...:** điều đáng nói là...

**There is no denial that...** không thể chối cãi là...

**It was not by accident that...:** ko phải tình cờ mà...

**On behalf of sb...:** Đại diện cho ai...

**Viewed from different angles, ...** nhìn từ nhiều khía cạnh khác nhau...

### V. MỘT SỐ TỪ DỄ NHẦM LẤN

#### However/ Nevertheless/Nonetheless

**However/ Nevertheless** (trang trọng và nhấn mạnh hơn), **nonetheless** (trong văn nói)

Đứng ở đầu câu, giữa hoặc cuối câu (trước và sau **phải có dấu phẩy**)

Eg. The politician was confident of success. His adviser were not so certain, **however/ nevertheless**.

Eg. The company is doing well. **Nonetheless**, they aren't going to expand this year.

#### However/ But/ Although

- **However** (tuy nhiên) thể hiện sự nhượng bộ, nói về sự trái ngược nhưng không đối nghịch nhau hoàn toàn.

Eg. We could fly via Vienna, **however**, it isn't the only way.

- **However** có thể đứng 1 mình ở đầu câu, với 1 dấu phẩy theo sau nó.

Eg. We decided not to wear our jackets. **However**, the weather was cold.

- **But** (nhưng) nối 2 mệnh đề trái ngược nhau hoàn toàn (phía trước có dấu “,”)

Eg. She did her homework, **but** I didn't. It was midnight, but the restaurant was still open.

- **Although** (mặc dù có thể được dùng ở đầu hoặc giữa câu, nhưng không có một dấu phẩy theo sau.

Eg. **Although** the weather was cold, we decided not to wear our jackets.

#### Yet/ yet ...still/ even so/ in spite of this

Dùng “**yet**” thay thế cho “**but**” khi muốn nhấn mạnh sự đối lập để đạt được 1 hiệu ứng mạnh mẽ hơn

Eg. She can play the piano very well, **yet** she can't read music at all.

Eg. She's really quite ill these days. **Even so / In spite of this**, she remains in good spirits.

Eg. He has over a million pounds in his bank account. **Yet** he **still** gets up at six every morning to go to work.

### Mind you/ still/ but still

Trong văn nói, **mind you, still, but still** đôi khi được dùng như 1 sự thay thế kém trang trọng cho **"yet"**.

Eg. The weather was lousy. It rained every day. **Still**, we managed to enjoy ourselves.

Eg. I don't like the work very much. **Mind you**, the people I work with are very nice.

Eg. You can be very annoying at times, **but** we **still** love you.

### On the other hand/ On the contrary/ In contrast (mặt khác, trái lại)

- **"On the one hand ... On the other hand"**: thể hiện các quan điểm, ý kiến, khía cạnh trái ngược nhau về cùng 1 vấn đề.

Eg. **On the one hand** this car is expensive, **on the other hand**, it's available and we need it right now.

- **On the contrary** (đầu câu) dùng để đưa ra 1 ý kiến trái ngược với ý kiến đã được đưa ra.

Eg. "We thought you didn't like opera." – **"On the contrary**, I love it."

- **In/by contrast**: dùng để chỉ sự khác biệt đáng ngạc nhiên giữa 2 sự kiện rất khác nhau.

Eg. It is hot in the desert in the day, but **in/ by contrast**, it is very cold at night.

### Too/ so – Either/ neither (Cũng cũng không)

- **Too** (cuối câu) **So** (đầu câu): So + trợ động từ + S: dùng cho câu khẳng định.

A: I love you. - B: I love you, **too**. / **So** do I.

- **Either** (cuối câu) **neither** (đầu câu): Neither + trợ động từ + S: dùng cho câu phủ định.

A: I don't like fish. - B: I don't, **either**. / **Neither** do I.

- **Me too/ me neither** (informal)

'Me too' = 'so + trợ động từ + I'

'me neither' = 'neither + trợ động từ + I'.

John: I hate mushrooms. - Me: Me too

Lucy: I don't live in London. - Me: Me neither

### So (vì vậy)

S + V, so + S + V

He wanted to study late, so he drank another cup of coffee.

### Therefore (do đó)

S + V, therefore (,) + S + V

He wanted to study late, **therefore**, he drank another cup of coffee.

### As well – too – also (cũng, thêm vào đó)

- **As well / too** (trang trọng), đặt ở cuối mệnh đề, trong câu khẳng định.

My birthday's on the 6th of June. ~That's funny. My birthday's on the 6th of June **too/ as well**.

- **Also**: đặt trước các động từ thường và sau trợ động từ, hoặc đặt ở đầu câu.

They **also** work hard on Sunday.

### Whereas / while (trong khi – đối lập nhau)

We thought she was arrogant, **whereas** she was just very shy.

'**While** I like all types of fish, my girlfriend always chooses meat dishes when we go out to eat.'

### Besides (bên cạnh)

- **Besides**: bên cạnh giới từ), ngoài ra (trạng từ) + N/ pronoun/ Ving

**Besides** doing the cooking I look after the garden. I can't go now, I'm busy. **Besides**, my passport is out of date.

## • PRACTICES

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. I won't change my mind \_\_\_\_\_ what you say.  
A. whether    B. no matter    C. because    D. although
2. There was nothing they could do \_\_\_\_\_ leave the cat at the roadside where it had broken down.  
A. but    B. instead of    C. than    D. unless
3. You can go to the party tonight \_\_\_\_\_ you are sober when you come home.  
A. as long as    B. as far as    C. as soon as    D. as well as
4. Ancient Egyptians mummified the dead bodies through the use of chemicals, \_\_\_\_\_ ancient Peruvians did through natural processes.  
A. because    B. whereas    C. whether or not    D. even though
5. \_\_\_\_\_ many times I tell him, he always never passes on phone message.  
A. However    B. No matter    C. Whenever    D. Whatever
6. He always did well at school \_\_\_\_\_ having his early education disrupted by illness.  
A. apart from    B. in spite of    C. in addition to    D. because of
7. \_\_\_\_\_ of all of us who are here tonight, I would like to thank Mr. Jones for his talk.  
A. In person    B. Instead    C. On account    D. On behalf
8. John swims very well and \_\_\_\_\_ does his brother.  
A. also    B. even    C. so    D. too
9. We were expecting beautiful weather at the beach, but it was so cold and rainy that, \_\_\_\_\_ getting a suntan, I caught a cold.  
A. compared to    B. just as    C. in case of    D. instead of
10. The firemen did well \_\_\_\_\_ their preparation for catastrophic gas explosions.  
A. although    B. because    C. despite    D. because of
11. \_\_\_\_\_ there have been many changes in his life, he remains a nice man to everyone.  
A. However    B. Although    C. Because    D. Despite
12. \_\_\_\_\_ he is old, he wants to travel around the world.  
A. In spite of    B. Although    C. Despite    D. Because
13. The doctor decided to give her a thorough examination \_\_\_\_\_ he could identify the causes of her illness.  
A. unless    B. after    C. so as    D. so that
14. \_\_\_\_\_ hungry I am, I never seem to be able to finish off a whole pizza  
A. Wherever    B. Whatever    C. Whenever    D. However
15. \_\_\_\_\_ I do okay in the interview, I've got a good chance of getting the job.  
A. Unless    B. In case    C. Only    D. Provided
16. \_\_\_\_\_ quickly they ran, they just couldn't catch up with the van.  
A. However    B. So    C. Even    D. Much
17. She started to laugh, \_\_\_\_\_ herself.  
A. in spite of    B. on account of    C. in addition to    D. even though
18. "You should stop working too hard \_\_\_\_\_ you'll get sick".  
A. or else    B. if    C. in case    D. whereas
19. You may get malaria \_\_\_\_\_ you are bitten by a mosquito.  
A. if    B. so that    C. though    D. Unless
20. She got the job \_\_\_\_\_ the fact that she had very little experience.  
A. although    B. because of    C. despite    D. because
21. I studied English for four years in high school. \_\_\_\_\_, I had trouble talking with people when I was traveling in the US.

A. Therefore    B. Otherwise    C. Although    D. However

22. It was not \_\_\_\_\_ Michael Jackson's death that people around the world understood his contribution in music.

A. since    B. when    C. until    D. Result

23. \_\_\_\_\_ your precious help, I wouldn't have certainly overcome most of the practical difficulties.

A. If not    B. Provided    C. Unless    D. Without

24. Jane's been unfaithful to Jim three times, but he still loves her \_\_\_\_\_ everything.

A. apart from    B. in spite of    C. in addition to    D. because of

25. In Britain, most shops close at 6 pm, \_\_\_\_\_ in other countries they often open in the evening, too.

A. despite    B. moreover    C. nevertheless    D. whereas

26. Parents shouldn't use physical punishment. it negatively influences children's development.

A. because of    B. although    C. because    D. in spite of

27. Children are encouraged to read books \_\_\_\_\_ they are a wonderful source of knowledge.

A. because of    B. in spite of    C. because    D. although

28. \_\_\_\_\_, he walked to the station.

A. In spite being tired    B. Despite of tiredness  
C. Although to be tired    D. Despite being tired

29. \_\_\_\_\_ busy she is, she manages to pick her children up after school every day.

A. However    B. Although    C. Despite    D. Because

30. A newborn baby can neither walk nor crawl. A newborn tiger, \_\_\_\_\_, can run within minutes of birth.

A. therefore    B. even though    C. otherwise    D. however

31. We've had a burglar alarm installed in our holiday cottage \_\_\_\_\_ we will feel happier about leaving it unoccupied for long periods.

A. for fear that    B. so that    C. now that    D. provided that

32. He couldn't ride his bike \_\_\_\_\_ there's no air in one of the tyres.

A. since    B. due to    C. though    D. despite

33. \_\_\_\_\_ his income of current job is relatively low, he finds it difficult to make ends meet.

A. Although    B. As    C. Because of    D. In spite of

34. \_\_\_\_\_ Allan's inexperience as a midfielder, he played well and scored a decisive goal in the final match.

A. Since    B. Although    C. Despite    D. Because of

35. Her eyes are red and puffy \_\_\_\_\_ she has been crying a lot.

A. although    B. since    C. because of    D. despite

36. \_\_\_\_\_ had the restaurant opened \_\_\_\_\_ people were flocking to eat there.

A. Scarcely/ when    B. No sooner/ when    C. No sooner/ then    D. Hardly/ that

37. Peter always takes a map with him \_\_\_\_\_ he loses his way.

A. if    B. in case    C. so that    D. so

38. My parents lent me the money. , I couldn't have afforded the trip.

A. However    B. Otherwise    C. Therefore    D. Unless

39. \_\_\_\_\_ there is not enough information on the effects of smoke in the atmosphere, doctors have proved that air pollution causes lung diseases.

A. In spite of    B. Although    C. Therefore    D. However

40. Nam is motivated to study \_\_\_\_\_ he knows that a good education can improve his life.  
A. because B. so C. so that D. therefore
41. \_\_\_\_\_ his physical disability, he managed to finish the course with good results.  
A. Although B. Since C. Because of D. Despite
42. Students are encouraged to develop critical thinking \_\_\_\_\_ accepting opinions without questioning them.  
A. in addition B. for instance C. instead of D. because of
43. \_\_\_\_\_ most fairy tales have happy endings, the stories usually deal with very frightening situations - children abandoned in the forest, terrifying giants, cruel stepmothers.  
A. Although B. Therefore C. Despite D. Because
44. My uncle tries to spend time playing with his children \_\_\_\_\_ he is very busy.  
A. because of B. although C. despite D. moreover
45. From when they start in preschool, children spend more time watching television than participating in any other activity except sleeping. , this is not necessarily a bad thing.  
A. Due to B. For example C. However D. Because
46. Many students work to earn money \_\_\_\_\_ their parents are rich  
A. because of B. despite C. however D. although
47. The residents of the village are living a happy life \_\_\_\_\_ they lack modern facilities.  
A. despite B. although C. therefore D. because of
48. Research shows that learners who adopt this approach will undoubtedly manage to broaden their language abilities considerably and, \_\_\_\_\_, are more likely to achieve their objectives in the longer term.  
A. because B. in contrast C. though D. as a result
49. We decided to take a late flight \_\_\_\_\_ we could spend more time with our family.  
A. in order B. so that C. so as to D. in order to
50. I walked away as calmly as I could \_\_\_\_\_ they thought I was the thief.  
A. although B. so that C. owing to D. in case

*Rewrite the sentences below with the connectors given in brackets.*

1. He is too short to be a basketball player. (because)  
=>
2. Although I approve of parties, I can't let you give one tonight. (much as)  
=>
3. As you have not performed your duties, you will be expelled from the club. (consequently)  
=>
4. However fast I ran, I was always in the same place,' she dreamt. (although)  
=>
5. His father has died, so he is crying his heart out. (owing to)  
=>
6. These are the rules, but there are exceptions. (nevertheless)  
=>
7. I neither love you nor I want to see you again. (what's more)  
=>
8. Majorca is a paradise for tourists; this is the consequence of its popularity. (hence)  
=>
9. The cause of his death was a heart attack. (due to)

- =>
10. As our business is going from bad to worse, we will have to close down. (as a result)
- =>
11. Many people are dying from lack of food everyday in the Third World. (on account of)
- =>
12. We will have to work hard at it because time is pressing on. (so)
- =>
13. No matter how much you hate them, you will have to live with them. (even if)
- =>
14. We will have to take strict measures, since the unemployment rate has increased. (thus)
- =>
15. You have failed all your exams, so we will not buy you the bike we promised. (since)
- =>
16. The lack of discipline was the reason they lost the battle. (through)
- =>
17. Even though he was happy, he felt lonely at times. (happy though)
- =>
18. In spite of being clever with his hands, he couldn't fix it. (clever as)
- =>
19. The padlock I bought was not big enough for the gate. (but)
- =>
20. He could not live without her, so he consented to all her wishes. (for)
- =>
21. We have considered your proposal thouroughly, but we are afraid to tell you that we cannot assent to it. (however)
- =>
22. We were in a hurry, so we didn't wait for them. (the reason)
- =>
23. Nobody dared to dissent from the decision of the prime minister, but she did. (all the same)
- =>
24. If it hadn't been for her, I would have drowned. (thanks to)
- =>
25. Although she had told him that she would always be true to him, she wasn't. (in spite of)
- =>
26. It was snowing heavily, but they went on climbing. (despite)
- =>
27. Despite being caught driving dangerously, he was not fined. (all the same)
- =>
28. I know you don't love me; but, even so, I'll marry you. (even though)
- =>
29. As well as being well-trained for the post, she is beautiful. (in addition to)
- =>
30. These fairy cakes are not only homemade, but they also have the best-quality ingredients. (besides)
- =>

*Rewrite the sentences below with the connectors given in brackets.*

1. You will have to carry, for example, a hundred pounds. (let's say)  
=>
2. If we don't take into account the people next door, everybody in the neighbourhood is lovely. (except for)  
=>
3. You should attend to your guests. Don't forget you're the hostess. (after all)  
=>
4. Consequently, we can reach the conclusion that something must be done to put an end to violence on the streets and drug trafficking. (summing up)  
=>
5. As well as being a very good guitarist, he also sings beautifully. (apart from)  
=>
6. They lost all their money in a shady business. But this is not all, they took a loan out of the bank and lost it as well (not to mention)  
=>
7. I reckon you should put your cards on the table. (the way I see it)  
=>
8. She likes many romantic poets. For instance, Coleridge, Wordsworth. Byron and Keats. (like)  
=>
9. You're the only person that can make me happy. (except)  
=>
10. They had little confidence in him, so they abandoned him to his fate. (for)  
=>
11. They couldn't reach the peak because it had snowed heavily. (as a result of)  
=>
12. The country's economy is becoming better and better. For example, inflation is stabilising now. (a case in point)  
=>
13. There is no necessity to mention that all applicants must identify themselves before the interview. (needless to say)  
=>
14. For my part, I found his remarks unnecessary. (personally)  
=>
15. Time is short, so we'll have to hurry. (since)  
=>
16. We'll grant you a favour because your days are numbered. (which is why)  
=>
17. Therefore, we can draw the following conclusion: we made a substantial profit last year. (in conclusion)  
=>
18. I think you shouldn't argue with them about politics. (to my way of thinking)  
=>
19. If I can't carry my belongings, how do you expect me to carry yours? (let alone)  
=>



20. Money is what makes the world go round. What I want to say is that the more money you have, the more powerful you become. (that is to say)  
=>
21. Hatred creates even more hatred. What I want to say is that the more you hate somebody, the more they will hate you. (to put it another way)  
=>
22. He is the most important person in this company. What I want to say is that he is the boss. (that is)  
=>
23. If we consider military service in general terms, it is a waste of time and money. (on the whole)
24. I don't mind what time you arrive home. The most important thing is that you arrive safe and sound. (above all)  
=>
25. He has presented several television shows; but, most importantly, he is a journalist. (first and foremost)  
=>
26. If we speak in general terms, this play may be divided into four main parts. (broadly speaking)  
=>
27. If we talk generally, Eivissa is one of the best holiday spots in the world. (by and large)  
=>
28. She told me that the grammar exercises were as easy as falling off a log; but it was untrue, since I found them very difficult. (as a matter of fact)  
=>
29. The weather forecaster said that today would be quite hot, but it is quite chilly. (in fact)  
=>
30. I don't want to see them any more. The truth is that I hate them. (in actual fact)  
=>
31. They said that they had done all the work, but the truth of the matter is that they had done nothing. (in point of fact)  
=>
32. She told me that she was as poor as a church mouse, which was not true, as she was loaded. (actually)  
=>
33. With reference to your application for the job as a sales representative, we are glad to inform you that it will be offered to you. (regarding)  
=>
34. Concerning your brother, he is the most qualified person for the post. (in regard to)  
=>
35. In connection with air pollution, the government should take stronger measures to combat it. (as for)  
=>
36. In connection to what he stated yesterday, we consider it the most appropriate alternative. (apropos)  
=>

37. The government should act at once about the decline in the country's exports. (as far as)

=>

38. Taking everything into account, we must do something to stop burglars. (in a nutshell)

=>

39. We want you to write to us regularly; but, most importantly, don't forget to telephone us.

(above all else)

=>

40. Firstly, it rained heavily that weekend. Secondly, I felt unwell most of the time. (on the one hand, on the other)

=>

## PART XI : ADJECTIVE, ADVERB AND COMPARISON

### • THEORY

#### I. Tính từ và trạng từ

*Tính từ dùng để bổ nghĩa cho danh từ*

+ She is **beautiful**

+ It is a **long** chair

+ The ruler is **short**

*Trạng từ dùng để bổ nghĩa cho động từ hoặc tính từ*

+ She goes **quickly**

+ I speak English **fluently**

+ She is very **good**

*Mối quan hệ giữa tính từ và trạng từ:*

Đa số tính từ thêm đuôi -ly thì trở thành trạng từ: careful (adj) => carefully (adv)

Có một số trường hợp đặc biệt như sau:

1) Tính từ đã có sẵn đuôi -ly, khi chuyển sang trạng từ giữ nguyên tính từ

friendly	elderly	silly
lively	lonely	lovely

2) Các tính từ khi chuyển sang trạng từ vẫn không thay đổi

hard(adj) => hard(adv)

fast(adj) => fast(adv)

3) Các tính từ khi chuyển sang trạng từ hoàn toàn thay đổi

good (adj) => well (adv)

#### II. Trật tự của tính từ

Opinion	Size	Age	Shape	Color	Origin	Material	Purpose
nice, pretty, beautiful, ugly, good, excellent, ...	small, thick, big, huge	young, new, old, ...	square, round, oval, triangular....	pink, white, brown, ...	Chinese, Vietnames, American	golden, wooden, paper, ...	

#### III. Sự so sánh của tính từ và trạng từ trong Tiếng Anh

Các loại so sánh	Công thức	Ví dụ
<b>So sánh bằng</b> (as...as)	Thể khẳng định: <b>S1 + V + <u>as</u> + adj/adv + <u>as</u> + S2 + V</b>	<i>She is <u>as beautiful as</u> her mother.</i> <i>She learns <u>as well as</u> her sister does.</i>
	Thể phủ định: <b>S1 + V(phủ định) + <u>as/so</u> + adj/adv + <u>as</u> + S2 + V</b>	<i>This exercise is not <u>as</u> / <u>so</u> difficult <u>as</u> I think (it is).</i> <i>He doesn't study <u>as/so</u> hard <u>as</u> I do/me.</i>
	Với danh từ đếm được: <b>S1 + V + <u>as many/few</u> + N(số' nhiều) + <u>as</u> + S2 + V</b>	<i>We have <u>as few</u> problems to solve <u>as</u> yesterday.</i>
	Với danh từ không đếm được: <b>SI + V + <u>as much/ little</u> + N(không đếm được) + <u>as</u> + S2+ V</b>	<i>I don't have <u>as much</u> money <u>as</u> you do.</i>

	So sánh gấp nhiều lần: <b>S + V + multiple numbers + as + much/ many/ adj + (N) + as + N/ pronoun</b> * Multiple numbers là những số như half/ twice/ 3,4,5...times; Phân số; Phần trăm.		<i>In many countries in the world with the same job, women only get <u>40 - 50% as much as salary as men.</u></i>	
So sánh hơn (adj-er/ more...than)	<b><u>Thế nào là tính từ/ trạng từ ngắn?</u></b> Tính từ/ trạng từ ngắn là những tính từ/ trạng từ có 1 âm tiết như: big (to), small (nhỏ), hot (nóng), cold (lạnh), thin (gầy), fat (béo),....và có 2 âm tiết tận cùng là 1 trong 5 đuôi sau: - y: happy (hạnh phúc), easy (dễ dàng), early (sớm), heavy (nặng), lazy (lười biếng)... - er: clever (thông minh, lanh lợi). - le: single (độc thân), simple (đơn giản). - ow: narrow (hẹp). - et: quiet (yên tĩnh). <b>Lưu ý: những tính từ / trạng từ 2 âm tiết tận cùng là đuôi -y chỉ được coi là tính từ/ trạng từ ngắn khi bản thân nó có đuôi -y.</b> Ví dụ: lovely (đáng yêu) là tính từ dài vì nó được cấu tạo bởi (love + ly => lovely). quickly (nhanh) là trạng từ dài vì nó được cấu tạo bởi (quick + ly => quickly). <b><u>Thế nào là tính từ/ trạng từ dài?</u></b> Tính từ/ trạng từ dài là những tính từ/ trạng từ có từ 2 âm tiết trở lên nhưng không phải 1 trong 5 đuôi kể trên, như: beautiful (xinh đẹp), handsome (đẹp trai), intelligent (thông minh), hard-working (chăm chỉ)			
	so sánh hơn với tính từ và trạng từ ngắn: <b>S1 + V + adj/adv + er + than + S2 + V</b>		<i>She looks <u>happier than</u> (she did) yesterday.</i>	
	so sánh hơn với tính từ và trạng từ dài: <b>S1 + V + more + adj/adv + than + S2 + V</b>		<i>She is <u>more beautiful than</u> her sister.</i>	
	So sánh hơn với danh từ: <b>S1 + V + more + N + than + S2 + V</b>		<i>She has <u>more money than</u> me.</i>	
So sánh nhất (the adj-est/most + adj)	Với tính từ và trạng từ ngắn: <b>S + V + the + adj/adv + est + (N) + ...</b>		<i>He is <u>the tallest</u> (student) in my class.</i>	
	Với tính từ và trạng từ dài: <b>S + V + the + most + adj/adv + (N) + ...</b>		<i>My mother is <u>the most beautiful</u> (woman) in the world.</i>	
	Với danh từ: <b>S + V + the + most + N + ...</b>		<i>He is a billionaire. He has <u>the most money</u>.</i>	
Ngoại lệ	<b>Tính từ/ trạng từ</b>	<b>Nghĩa</b>	<b>Dạng so sánh hơn</b>	<b>Dạng so sánh nhất</b>
	good/well	tốt, giỏi	Better	the best
	bad	tệ, tồi, dốt	Worse	the worst
	much/many	nhều	More	the most
	little	ít	Less	least

	far	xa	farther/further	farthest/furthest
	old	già, cũ	older/elder	oldest/eldest
So sánh lũy tiến (càng...càng)	Với tính từ ngắn: <b>Adj + er + and + adj + er</b>			<i>The summer is coming. It gets <u>hotter and hotter</u>.</i>
	Với tính từ dài: <b>more/less and more/less + adj</b>			<i>She is <u>more and more attractive</u>.</i>
	Với danh từ: <b>more and more + N</b>			<i>There are <u>more and more people</u> moving to big cities to look for jobs.</i>
So sánh đồng tiến (càng... thì càng)	<b>The + (so sánh hơn) adj/ adv + S + V, the (so sánh hơn) adj/adv + S + V</b>			<i><u>The more difficult</u> the exercise is, <u>the more interesting</u> it is.</i>

• PRACTICES

*Put the adjectives in the brackets into the correct order to have a meaningful noun phrases.*

1. a (rectangular, cream, modern) \_\_\_\_\_ bathroom
2. (silken, pretty, long) \_\_\_\_\_ hair
3. a (dreadful, pink, old) \_\_\_\_\_ chinaware
4. a (processing, new, central, tiny) \_\_\_\_\_ unit
5. a (tired, local, camera) \_\_\_\_\_ crew
6. (vast, green, beautiful) \_\_\_\_\_ plains
7. a (vegetable, large, Greek) \_\_\_\_\_ trailer
8. a (middle-aged, good-looking, black, pop) \_\_\_\_\_ star
9. a (traffic, two-hour) \_\_\_\_\_ jam
10. a (dangerous, New York, gloomy) \_\_\_\_\_ alleyway
11. a(n) (brand-new, sports, mustard, American) \_\_\_\_\_ car
12. a (fantastic, delightful) \_\_\_\_\_ evening
13. You look very (pretty, elegant) \_\_\_\_\_ on that dress. –
14. a (toilet, horrible, lilac) \_\_\_\_\_ bag
15. a(n) (enormous, sky-blue, round) \_\_\_\_\_ spaceship
16. the (wonderful, colourful) \_\_\_\_\_ scenery
17. a(n) (old, breakdown, red, white) \_\_\_\_\_ truck
18. a (leather, brown, pretty, turquoise) \_\_\_\_\_ handbag
19. a(n) (long-distance, obstacle) \_\_\_\_\_ course
20. a (country, magnificent) \_\_\_\_\_ house
21. a (tangerine, silk, lime, dreadful) \_\_\_\_\_ shirt
22. a pair of (Catalan, expensive) \_\_\_\_\_ mocassins
23. a(n) (ice, peach, modern) \_\_\_\_\_ bucket
24. a(n) (Chinese, blue, dining, oval) \_\_\_\_\_ table
25. a pair of (cheap, football, black, yellow) \_\_\_\_\_ boots

*Choose the correct form of the participles used as adjectives in the following sentences*

1. Compassionate friends tried to console the (crying/cried) victims of the accident.
2. When James noticed the (burning / burnt) building, he notified the firedepartment immediately.
3. The (exciting/ excited) passengers jumped into the lifeboats when notified that the ship was sinking.

4. The (smiling/smiled) Mona Lisa is on display in the Louvre in Paris.
5. The wind made such (frightening / frightened) noises that the children ran to their parents' room.
6. The (frightening / frightened) hostages only wanted to be left alone.
7. We saw the (advancing / advanced) army from across the town.
8. Mrs. Harris's (approving / approved) smile let us know that our speeches were well done.
9. Our representative presented the (approving / approved) plan to the public.
10. The (blowing/ blown) wind of the hurricane damaged the waterfront property.
11. We were going to see the movie at the Theater, but our friends told us it was a (boring / bored) movie.
12. Mary's (cleaning / cleaned) service comes every Wednesday.
13. The (cleaning / cleaned) shoes were placed in the sun to dry.
14. We found it difficult to get through the (closing / closed) door without a key,
15. As we entered the (crowding/crowded) room, I noticed my cousin.
16. Dr. Jameson told my brother to elevate his (aching/ ached) foot.
17. I was (disappointing / disappointed) with the film. I had expected it to be better.
18. The (breaking / broken) dishes lay on the floor. |
19. The (trembling / trembled) children were given a blanket for warmth.
20. The interesting / interested) tennis match caused a great deal of excitement.

*Choose the right word, adjective or adverb.*

1. The floor looks clean/ cleanly.
2. The plane landed safel safely on the runway.
3. The man looked honest/ honestly, but he wasn't
4. Jane looked at her book thoughtful/ thoughtfully before she answered the teacher's question.
5. A rose smells good/ well.
6. Beth spoke confident/ confidently when she delivered her speech.
7. Most of the students did good/ well on their tests. |
8. He spoke angry/ angrily
9. He seemed very angry/ungrily.
10. The teacher taught us very careful/ carefully.

*Write the comparativel superlative of a word from the box for each blank.*

<i>Beautifully</i>	<i>early</i>	<i>fast</i>	<i>fluently</i>
<i>hard</i>	<i>late</i>	<i>peacefully</i>	<i>sensitively</i>

1. If we don't walk \_\_\_\_\_ we'll never arrive on time.
2. She sings \_\_\_\_\_ than any one else I've ever heard.
3. Andy's the most intelligent, but Sue works \_\_\_\_\_
4. Eight is late - could you possibly get here any \_\_\_\_\_
5. Of all the children, Helen writes \_\_\_\_\_
6. I would sleep \_\_\_\_\_ if I weren't worried about Tom.
7. For the 10. 20 train, \_\_\_\_\_ we can leave home is 10.
8. Mark speaks French \_\_\_\_\_ of all the boys in his class.

*Make sentences like the one in the example*

**Example.**

He drives fast, he gets nervous.

~ *The faster he drives, the more nervous he gets; and the more nervous he gets, the faster he drives.*

1. He eats ice-cream; he gets fat. (The more ice cream.....)

=>

2. He reads, he forgets.

=>

3. She ignores him; he loves her.

=>

4. She buys shoes; she wants shoes.

=>

5. We spend money; we have friends.

=>

6. I sleep; I'm tired.

=>

*Complete each sentence by choosing the most suitable word or phrase*

1. I really think that apologizing is \_\_\_\_\_ you can do.

A. no as much as    B. a little    C. the least    D. as far as

2. I can't stand this weather. It's getting \_\_\_\_\_

A. more and more    B. worse and worse  
C. coldest and coldest    D. further and further

3. Although Brenda came last, everyone agreed she had \_\_\_\_\_ her best

A. done    B. made    C. had    D. got

4. I wish Charles worked as hard as Mary \_\_\_\_\_

A. did    B. can    C. will    D. does

5. The more you water this plant, the \_\_\_\_\_ it will grow

A. best    B. tall    C. wetter    D. faster

6. From now on, we won't be able to go out as much as we \_\_\_\_\_

A. were    B. had    C. used to    D. will

7. I've never owned \_\_\_\_\_ independent cat as this one.

A. a more than    B. such an    C. a so    D. as much an

8. Brian has been working \_\_\_\_\_ since he was promoted.

A. much harder    B. as harder    C. just as hardly    D. more hardly

9. I've been feeling \_\_\_\_\_ tired lately, doctor.

A. such a    B. the most    C. more and more    D. much

10. This exercise will give you \_\_\_\_\_ practice.

A. farther    B. much more    C. as better    D. a lot

*Rewrite each sentence, beginning as shown, so that the meaning stays the same.*

1. That's the best meal I've ever eaten.

=> I've never eaten

2. Fish and meat are the same price in some countries.

=> Fish costs

3. I've never enjoyed myself so much.

=> I've never had

4. If you run a lot, you will get fitter.

=> The more

5. The doctor can't see you earlier than Wednesday I'm afraid.

=> Wednesday is

6. I must have a rest. I can't walk any more.

- => I must have a rest. I can't go
7. Home computers used to be much more expensive,  
=> Home computers aren't
8. I don't know as much Italian as Sue does.  
=> Sue knows
9. I thought that learning to drive would be difficult, but it isn't.  
=> Learning to drive is
10. Barbara can skate just as well as John can.  
=> John isn't
11. Jill can run faster than Peter.  
=> Peter
12. I thought this journey would last longer than it did.  
=> This journey didn't
13. I didn't arrive as early as I expected.  
=> I arrived
14. You are working too slowly.  
=> You'll have to
15. I have a brother who is older than me.  
=> I have an
16. Martin thought the second part of the film was more interesting.  
=> Martin didn't think the first
17. Paula's work is less careful than Peter's.  
=> Paula has been working
18. There aren't any trains earlier than this one.  
=> This is
19. All other pubs are further away.  
=> This pub
20. Is this the best price you can offer?  
=> Can't you

*Rewrite each sentence so that it contains the word given in capitals.*

1. Your car was cheaper than mine.  
**COST**
2. I'm not as good at maths as you are.  
**BETTER**
3. Keith is slightly taller than Nigel.  
**LITTLE**
4. Bill was growing angrier all the time.  
**AND**
5. Sally tried as hard as she could.  
**BEST**
6. I thought this film would be better.  
**AS**
7. This is the bumpiest road I've ever driven along.  
**SUCH**
8. When you eat a lot, you get fat.



**MORE**

9. George said he couldn't do any better.

**COULD**

10. This year's exam and last year's exam were equally difficult.

**JUST**

## PART XII : GERUND AND INFINITIVE VERBS

- THEORY

### GERUND IN ENGLISH (VING)

#### 1. Form : (Hình thức)

- Danh động từ được thành lập bằng cách thêm đuôi ING vào sau động từ nguyên thể và chúng có chức năng tương đương như một danh từ bình thường.

V+ ING>>> GERUND

Eg : *Work*>> *working*    *study*>> *studying*

#### 2. Cách dùng:

2.1. Danh động từ dùng như “Chủ ngữ của câu”

GERUND+ V(es/s...)/ tobe

Eg: ***Working*** *is interesting*

***Swimming*** *is my hobby*

***Dancing*** *bored her*

2.2. Danh động từ dùng như “Bổ ngữ của động từ”

Eg: *My great passion in life* ***is studying***

*Minh’s hobby* ***is playing football***

2.3. Danh động từ/ động từ nguyên thể có thể là chủ ngữ của một câu khi hoạt động được xem như là một nghĩa chung.

<<<>>>	It is/ was+ adj+ for O + to V
	To V+ .....is/was+ adj + for O
	Ving+.....is/ was+ adj+ for O

2.4. Danh động từ giống như động từ nguyên mẫu, có thể là chủ ngữ của một mệnh đề, đặt sau các động từ: ***believe, consider, discover, expect, think, find, wonder....***

Eg: *I find playing sports interesting*

*I consider that **learning English is great***

\* sau FIND thì ta có thể bỏ THAT và động từ TOBE mà nghĩa của câu không đổi.

Eg: *he found ~~that~~ parking ~~was~~ difficult. = he found parking difficult.*

\* Còn sau các động từ còn lại, để an toàn hơn, ta không nên bỏ TOBE.

2.5. Danh động từ còn được dùng trong các lời CẤM NGẮN GỌN

NO+ VING>>> GERUND

Eg: *no smoking, no parking, no fishing*

**Note:**

- những lời cấm này, không thể có tân ngữ O theo sau. Vì thế mà, những lời cấm có tân ngữ theo sau sẽ được diễn đạt bằng câu mệnh lệnh phủ định.

Eg: *Don’t open the window= ~~No opening the window~~*

- Danh động từ còn được dùng trong các câu châm ngôn.

Eg: ***Seeing is believing*** (thấy mới tin)

2.6. Danh động từ còn được dùng **sau các giới từ** hay các ngữ đi kèm với giới từ.

S+ tobe (chia)	<i>interested in/ fond of/ keen on (thích/ say mê)</i>	+VING/N
	<i>bored with/ fed up with (buồn chán...)</i>	
	<i>tire of (mệt mỏi)</i>	
	<i>afraid of/ frightened of (sợ/e rằng)</i>	
	<i>amused (at/by), surprised (at/by) (ngạc nhiên)</i>	

Eg: *They are **interested in playing** badminton.*

She is **bored with watching** the same program everyday.

Hoa is **afraid of going** out in the dark (alone/ on her own/ by herself)

2.7. Ngoài các cụm từ trên, danh động từ còn được dùng trong các cụm/thành ngữ/ cấu trúc sau:

1	to be for >> to be against ủng hộ >> phản đối	+ VING/N
2	to be sorry for (rất tiếc là...)	+ VING/N
3	to be ashamed of.... (xấu hổ về)	+ VING/N
4	to be good at >> to be bad at... giỏi về>> kém về..	+ VING/N
5	to be good for >> to be bad for tốt cho>> tồi tệ cho...	+ VING/N
6	to have objection to.....(phản đối làm gì) to have no objectio to... (không phản đối làm gì...)	+ VING/N
7	to be weak in.... (yếu về...)	+ VING/N
8	feel like... (cảm thấy thích, muốn...)	+ VING/N
9	to have (difficulty/trouble).... (gặp khó khăn...)	+ VING/N
10	to look forward to.... (trông mong, chờ đợi..)	+ VING/N
11	there is no point.....	+ VING/N
12	it is no use..... it is no good..... (vô ích khi làm điều gì đó...)	+ VING/N
13	appologise to sb(somebody_ người) for..... (xin lỗi ai về vấn đề gì...)	+ VING/N

2.8. Danh động từ còn được dùng **sau một số động từ nhất định** (thường là những động từ chỉ **SỞ THÍCH, SỰ BẮT ĐẦU, KẾT THÚC** của một sự việc nào đó.

CTTQ: S+ <u>V1</u> CHIA+ VING.....						
A	1	admit: thừa nhận	M	25	mention: đề cập	
	2	advise: khuyên		26	miss: nhớ, bỏ lỡ	
	3	allow: cho phép		27	mind: quan tâm, bận tâm..	
	4	appreciate: hoan nghênh		P	28	pardon: tha thứ
	5	avoid: tránh		29	permit: cho phép	
C	6	complete: hoàn thành	Q	30	postpone: trì hoãn	
	7	consider: cân nhắc, xem xét		31	practise: luyện tập (practice)	
	8	continue: tiếp tục		32	quit: từ bỏ, ngừng, nghỉ	
	9	can't help: không thể chịu đựng được		P	33	prefer: thích...hơn
	10	can't bear		34	prevent: ngăn chặn	
D	11	can't stand	R	35	recommend: đề xuất	
	12	delay: trì hoãn		36	recollect: hồi tưởng..	
	13	deny: phủ nhận		37	remember: nhớ lại..., nhớ	
	14	defer: hoãn..		38	resent /rɪ'zent/: giận, oán giận, phật ý	
	15	detest: ghê tởm		39	resist /rɪ'zɪst/: cưỡng lại, chống lại	
E	16	discuss: thảo luận	S	40	risk: mạo hiểm	
	17	dread: ghê sợ		41	start: bắt đầu	
	18	encourage: khuyến khích		42	stop; dùng, kết thúc	
	19	enjoy: thích		43	suggest: đề nghị, gợi ý	
	20	excuse: xin lỗi		T	44	tolerate: khoan dung, tha thứ
F	21	fancy: tưởng tượng, hào hứng...	U	45	understand: hiểu	
	22	finish: kết thúc		P	46	propose: đưa ra, kiến nghị

	23	forbid: cấm đoán			
G	24	give <b>up</b> : từ bỏ			

## INFINITIVE (FULL INFINITIVE LÀ CHỦ YẾU)

### 1. Dạng thức:

- Để thành lập một INFINITIVE, ta thêm TO vào trước V không chia

TO V= INFINITIVE (full infintive)

### 2. Cách sử dụng/ cách dùng:

2.1. Động từ nguyên thể được dùng trong những mẫu câu dưới đây:

1	It is/ was+ adj (tính từ)+ <b>TO V</b> (Thật là như thế nào để làm gì)
2	It is/ was+ adj (tính từ)+ for O+ <b>TO V</b> (Thật là như thế nào đối với/ cho ai đó để làm gì)
3	It is/ was+ adj (tính từ)+ OF+ O+ <b>TO V</b> (Ai đó (O) thật là như thế nào KHI làm gì)) Eg: It is kind of you to help me (YOU thật là KND khi HELP ME) <b>Note: Một số tính từ thường được dùng trong cấu trúc (3):</b> Kind, nice, careless, stupid (cấu trúc 3 dùng để khen và chê)
4	S+ to be/ V thường (chia)+ TOO+ adj+ <b>TO V</b> Ai đó QUÁ như thế nào để làm gì.....
5	S+ to be/ V thường (chia)+ TOO+ adj+ FOR O+ <b>TO V</b> Ai đó QUÁ như thế nào đối với ai đó/ cho ai đó để làm gì.....
6	Cấu trúc <b>ENOUGH</b> : đủ để làm gì S+ to be (chia) + adj+ ENOUGH+ <b>TO V</b> S+ V (chia) + adv(ly)+ ENOUGH+ <b>TO V</b> (Ai đó ĐỦ ĐỂ...làm gì/ KHÔNG ĐỦ ĐỂ làm gì) Nếu không đủ để: thì ta có TO BE+ NOT/ Dạng phủ định của V S+ to be (chia) + adj+ ENOUGH+FOR O + <b>TO V</b> S+ V (chia) + adv(ly)+ ENOUGH+ FOR O+ <b>TO V</b> (Ai đó ĐỦ ĐỂ...làm gì/ KHÔNG ĐỦ cho ai đó/ đối với ai đó ĐỂ làm gì)

\* Các mẫu câu tương đương với nhau (thường gặp trong các bài viết lại câu):

<>	(1) S+ to be/V+ too+ adj/adv+ <b>for O</b> + to V (2) S+ to be NOT/ phủ định của V+ adj/ adv+ ENOUGH+ <b>for O</b> + TO V (chú ý: adj và adv ở 2 phải trái nghĩa với adj/adv ở 1) (3) S+ to be/ V (chia)+ SO+ adj/ adv+ THAT+ can't/could't....+ V (Ai đó quá..... đến nỗi mà.....để làm gì...)
----	---

Eg:

1. Hieu is too **lazy** to learn English (lazy >< hard-working)
2. Hieu is **not hard-working** enough to learn English
3. Hieu is **so lazy that** can't learn English

### 2.2. TO V đứng sau TOBE

TOBE+ TOV = HAVE TO + V/ MUST+ V: PHẢI LÀM GÌ.....

### 2.3. Những động từ theo sau là TO V

CTTQ: S+ **V1** CHIA+ TO V.....

Đọc là: V1 to do st

A	1	afford: có đủ tiền, có khả năng chi	M	17	mean: có ý..., muốn nói....
---	---	-------------------------------------	---	----	-----------------------------

		trả			
	2	agree: đồng ý	O	18	offer: đề nghị
	3	appear: xuất hiện, dường như	P	19	plan: lập kế hoạch, dự định
	4	arrange: sắp xếp		20	prepare: chuẩn bị
	5	ask: yêu cầu		21	pretend: giả vờ, làm ra vẻ
B	6	beg: cầu xin, năn nỉ		22	promise: hứa
C	7	consent : ưng thuận /kən'sent/	R	23	refuse: từ chối
D	8	decide: quyết định	S	24	seem: trông có vẻ, dường như
	9	demand: yêu cầu, đòi hỏi		25	struggle: đấu tranh, gắng sức..
	10	deserve: xứng đáng		26	swear: thề
E	11	expect: mong đợi	T	27	threaten : đe dọa
F	12	fail: trượt, thất bại		28	volunteer: tình nguyện tham gia...
	13	hesitate: do dự, chần chừ	W	29	wait: đợi
H	14	hope: hi vọng		30	want: muốn
L	15	learn: học hỏi		31	wish: ước
	16	manage: xoay sở, quản lí			

### NOTES:

#### \* AFFORD:

S+ can't afford+ TO V  
(không đủ tiền để làm gì.....)

Eg: I can't afford to buy this bike.

#### \* MANAGE TO V:

Manage to V= succeed in Ving: thành công khi làm gì.....

#### \* THREATEN:

Nếu THREATEN chia ở QUÁ KHỨ (câu điều kiện loại 2) thì ta không cần WOULD V0 mà biến thành "THREATENED"

#### 2.4. Những động từ theo sau là tân ngữ và động từ nguyên thể.

<b>CTTQ: S+ V1 CHIA+ O_TÂN NGŨ + TO V.....</b>					
Đọc là: V1 sb (somebody) to do st (something)					
A	1	advise: khuyên		14	invite: mời
	2	allow: cho phép	N	15	need: cần
	3	ask: yêu cầu	O	16	order: ra lệnh
B	4	beg: van nài, cầu xin	P	17	permit: cho phép
C	5	cause: gây ra, khiến cho		18	persuade: thuyết phục
	6	challenge: thách thức	R	19	remind: nhắc nhở
	7	convince : thuyết phục	T	20	teach: dạy
D	8	dares: dám, thách...		21	tell: báo, kể
E	9	encourage: khuyến khích		22	urge: thúc giục
	10	expect: mong đợi	W	23	want: muốn
F	11	forbid: cấm		24	warn : cảnh báo
	12	force: bắt buộc	R	25	recommend: đề xuất, đề nghị
I	13	instruct: chỉ dẫn, hướng dẫn		26	require: yêu cầu, đòi hỏi

NOTES: các động từ "ADVISE, ALLOW, ENCOURAGE, FORBID, PERMIT, RECOMMEND" có thể được sử dụng trong các cấu trúc sau:

CÔNG THỨC		DỄ HIỂU (lấy ADVISE làm mẫu)	
1.	S+ các từ trên (advise....)_chia + Ving	1.	Advise doing st
2.	S+ các từ trên _chia+ O+ to V	2.	Advise sb to do st
3.	S+ các từ trên _ED_Quá khứ+ TO V	3.	Advised to do st

\* **HELP:** S+ HELP\_chia+ O+ V/TO V

Help sb to do st/ help sb do st

**2.5. TO V dùng trong cấu trúc sau:**

S+ V+ N+ TO V/ NOT TO V

(ai đó+ làm việc gì+ nhằm để mục đích gì/ không để.....)

Eg: Hieu does his homework to get the good marks

S V N TO V

Nhấn mạnh đến MỤC ĐÍCH.

\* **NOTE 1: đối với BARE INFINITIVE (V0\_ động từ không có To)**

**CTTQ:** S+ **V1 CHIA**+ **O\_TÂN NGŨ** + V.....

Đọc là: V1 sb (somebody) do st (something)

S	Feel (s)	+ O (TÂN NGŨ)+ V0 (BARE_INFINITIVE)
	Hear (s)/ heard...	
	Listen to	
	Notice	
	See	
	Watch	
	Smell	
	Look (at)	
	Make	
	Let	
	Have/ has	
<b>BỊ ĐỘNG</b>	S+ TO BE+ P2 (VED/V3) + TO V <i>Trong đó: P2 là P2 của các động từ ở khung NGAY TRÊN</i>	

Eg: They **notice** **him** take the money from the house.

S V O V0

>>> **BỊ ĐỘNG:** **HE IS NOTICED TO TAKE THE MONEY FROM THE HOUSE**

\* **NOTE 2: CHÚ Ý VỀ NGHĨA CỦA GERUND VÀ TO INFINITIVE**

V Động từ	TO V	VING
<b>Stop</b>	Ngừng việc gì để làm việc khác	Ngừng hẳn làm gì
<b>Try</b>	Cố gắng làm gì	Thử làm gì
<b>Forget</b>	Quên là <b>phải</b> làm gì	Quên là <b>đã</b> làm gì
<b>Regret</b>	Lấy làm tiếc khi <b>phải</b> làm gì <i>Notes: Cấu trúc này thường theo sau bởi: SAY, TELL, INFORM và chia ở HTĐ</i>	Tiếc là <b>đã</b> làm điều gì
<b>Remember</b>	Nhớ <b>phải</b> làm gì	Nhớ <b>đã</b> làm gì
<b>Go on</b>	Dừng 1 chủ đề đang làm/nói...và chuyển sang một vấn đề khác	Tiếp tục làm gì....
<b>Used to</b>	Quen với làm gì ở QK	Be/get + used to+ Ving Quen với làm gì ở HT
<b>Consider</b>	Nghĩ rằng, cho rằng, tin rằng.....	Nghĩ về, cân nhắc, xem xét

<i>Like</i>	Muốn làm gì	Thích....
<i>Mean</i>	Intend: có dự định, ý định là	Involve : bao gồm, liên quan đến..., nghĩa là...

(PRESENT PERFECT)

(một số vùng/nơi gọi là “phân từ hiện tại”)

1. Hình thức:

- Hiện tại phân từ (HTPT) được thành lập bằng cách thêm đuôi **ING** vào sau động từ và có chức năng tương đương như một **tính từ** bình thường.

V+ ING >> HIỆN TẠI PHÂN TỬ (ADJ)

2. Cách dùng:

2.1. Hiện tại phân từ dùng trong các thời tiếp diễn

2.2. Hiện tại phân từ được dùng như một TÍNH TỪ (ADJ). Nó thường được **đặt trước** một danh từ chỉ VẬT, SỰ VIỆC, và **sau** TOBE. Câu chứa HTPT thường mang ý chủ động.

HTPT+ N (VẬT)  
S(VẬT)+ TOBE+ HTPT (ADJ)

Eg: a *running* dog (chó săn)

2.3. HTPT dùng sau HAVE

S+ HAVE/ HAS/ HAD+ O(người)+ VING (HTPT)  
(ai đó yêu cầu/ đề nghị để làm gì)

Eg: Lam *has* Hung *muting* his microphone.

Lam *had* Nam *changing* his profile picture.

2.4. HTPT được sau các động từ TRI GIÁC: *see, hear, taste, smell, feel, watch, notice, keep, listen to.*

MODEL 1 S+ (see/feel...\_chia động từ)+ O+ Ving (HTPT)  
(ai đó....cái gì/ ai đó...như thế nào)  
Để học: *see sb doing st, feel sb doing st*

Eg: I taste this dish *interesting*

Note:

- Ta dùng HTPT sau các động từ tri giác để diễn tả hành động có thể hoàn tất hoặc chưa hoàn tất (đang diễn ra)
- Sau các động từ “see, hear, feel”, và đôi khi có thể là “listen to, notice, watch” cũng có thể được theo sau bởi TÂN NGŨ\_O, và động từ nguyên thể không có TO (bare\_infinite)

MODEL 2 S+ V (các động từ nói trên)\_chia + O+ V  
Để học: *see sb do st, feel sb do st*

Eg: I *see* Khanh *sleeping* during the lesson.

Note:

- Khi đổi sang dạng bị động với hai cấu trúc trên, thì ta làm như sau:

MODEL 1:

S+ TOBE+ P2(Ved/ V3)+ Ving

MODEL 2:

S+ TOBE+ P2 (Ved/ V3)+ V

2.5. HTPT dùng sau các động từ CATCH, FIND, LEAVE:

S+ CATCH/ FIND/ LEAVE\_Chia+ O+ VING  
Ai đó bắt gặp/ thấy ... như thế nào

Note:

- Sau các từ FIND, có thể là 1 O\_tân ngữ chỉ vật vô tri vô giác. HTPT dùng sau các động từ: GO, COME, SPEND, WASTE, BE BUSY.

### 1. Sau GO, COME

- go/ come+ Ving (go doing st/ come doing st): chỉ hành động mà ai đó làm

Eg: I go shopping, I go swimming

- go/ come+ to + N(place\_nơi chốn): (go to somewhere/ come to somewhere): chỉ chuyển động từ đâu đến đâu

Eg: Khanh goes to school, Minh Dung goes to the zoo with Bao

### 2. Sau WASTE, SPEND

S+ spend/ waste (chia)+ "time/ money"+ Ving (HTPT)  
(ai đó dành/ tiêu/ hoang phí/ lãng phí+ tiền bạc/ thời gian+ để/ vào việc gì...)

Để học: spend time/money doing st

waste money/ time doing st

### Note:

- Khi hai hành động của cùng 1 chủ ngữ, xảy ra gần như đồng thời, ta có thể diễn đạt một trong hai hành động ở dạng thức HTPT

Eg: He rode away. He whistled as he went (Anh ta đạp xe đi khỏi. Anh ta huýt sáo khi anh ta đi)

He rode away whistling (anh ta vừa đi xe vừa huýt sáo)

- Khi một hành động theo sau một hành động khác của cùng 1 chủ ngữ, thì hành động xảy ra trước ta viết/diễn đạt bằng hiện tại phân từ và đặt lên đầu câu/ mệnh đề.

Eg: Tuan Hung opened the drawer and looked out the newspaper.

= Opening the drawer, Tuan Hung looked out the newspaper.

- HTPT có thể thay thế cho "AS/ SINCE/ BECAUSE+ S-V(mệnh đề)

BỎ "AS..."

VING

**Note: ALLOW, PERMIT, ADVISE, ENCOURAGE: (ta gọi những động từ này là D0)**

1) S+ D0\_chia+ VING (ví dụ: allow doing st....)

2) S+ D0\_chia+ O tân ngữ\_người+ TO V (ví dụ: allow sb\_somebody to do st\_something)

3) Chuyển bị động của (2): S+ TOBE\_chia theo thời và theo S+ P2 (của D0)+ TO V

### (PAST PARTICIPLE)

#### 1. Hình thức

- Quá khứ phân từ (QKPT) được thành lập bằng cách thêm "ED" vào sau động từ nguyên mẫu (đối với các động từ theo quy tắc), còn đối với các động từ bất quy tắc, ta học trong cột số 03 của bảng động từ bất quy tắc.

### V+ED/ V3 >>> QUÁ KHỨ PHÂN TỪ

#### 2. Cách dùng

1. QKPT được dùng như một tính từ và nó thường được đặt trước một danh từ để bổ nghĩa cho danh từ đó. (QKP lúc này được coi như là một tính từ\_adj)

QKPT(ADJ) / VED/ V3 + N

#### NOTES:

QKPT có thể theo sau động từ "TOBE", và các động từ nối "become, get, feel, seem, look, smell,.....", nhưng chủ ngữ của câu phải là danh từ hoặc đại từ chỉ NGƯỜI. Câu chứa QKPT



thường mang nghĩa BỊ ĐỘNG.

S+ tobe/ các động từ nối ở trên\_chia+ QKPT+ PREP( giới từ)+ Ving/ N  
(ai đó.....+ ADJ+ khi làm gì.....)

2. QKPT được dùng để tạo thành các thời phân từ hoàn thành, nguyên mẫu hoàn thành, dạng bị động.

HTHT: have/ has+ P2

QKHT: had+ P2

TLHT: will have+ P2

Nguyên mẫu hoàn thành: to have P2

**Bị động: tobe + P2**

3. QKPT có thể thay thế cho cấu trúc:

S+ V(bị động)/ tobe (bị động)+ P2 >>>> P2

Dạng bị động của phân từ hoàn thành "HAVING BEEN". Phân từ hoàn thành được dùng khi ta cần nhấn mạnh rằng hành động do phân từ diễn tả xảy ra trước hành động của động từ kế tiếp sau.

### • PRACTICES

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the correct answer to each of the following questions.

1. They refused \_\_\_\_\_ to Tim's proposal. They decided \_\_\_\_\_ their work.  
A. to listen / continuing      B. to listen / to continue  
C. listening / to continue      D. listening / continuing
2. I enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ to a number of programs on the radio. I am also fond of \_\_\_\_\_ novels.  
A. to listen / to read      B. listening / reading  
C. to listen / reading      D. listening / to read
3. No one will leave the classroom until the guilty student admits \_\_\_\_\_ the money.  
A. steal      B. stealing      C. to steal      D. stolen
4. Jack Anderson was caught \_\_\_\_\_ a match at the time of the fire. He was accused of \_\_\_\_\_ the fire.  
A. to hold / set      B. held / setting      C. holding / to set      D. holding / setting
5. I cannot imagine you \_\_\_\_\_ married to Peter. He might make you \_\_\_\_\_ unhappy.  
A. to get / are      B. get / being      C. got / to be      D. getting / be
6. Her boss promised \_\_\_\_\_ her a raise because she never minds \_\_\_\_\_ the night shift.  
A. offering / work      B. offered / to work      C. to offer / working      D. offer / worked
7. He disagrees \_\_\_\_\_ a new car. He prefers \_\_\_\_\_ by bus to by car.  
A. to buy / travel      B. buying / to travel      C. to buy / travelling      D. bought / traveled
8. The questions are easy \_\_\_\_\_ We hope \_\_\_\_\_ high scores.  
A. to answer / to get      B. answering / to get      C. to answer / getting      D. answered / got
9. The man asked me how \_\_\_\_\_ to the airport. He said he had to \_\_\_\_\_ the 9.00 plane to Paris.  
A. getting / taken      B. to get / take      C. got / taking      D. get / took
10. You were the last one \_\_\_\_\_ the office. Did you see anyone \_\_\_\_\_ the building?  
A. leaving / to enter      B. to leave / enter      C. left / entering      D. leave / entered
11. It is no use \_\_\_\_\_ the car. It would be cheaper \_\_\_\_\_ a new one.  
A. repair / bought      B. repaired / buy      C. to repair / buying      D. repairing / to buy
12. She wanted \_\_\_\_\_ home, but her boss made her \_\_\_\_\_ until the work was finished.  
A. to go / staying      B. go / stayed      C. going / to stay      D. to go / stay
13. I will make an effort \_\_\_\_\_

- A. stopping smoking    B. stop smoke    C. to stop smoking    D. stop smoking
14. I am not sure if I have met Mr. Martino, but I remember \_\_\_\_\_ his name.  
A. hear    B. to hear    C. hearing    D. heard
15. He will never forget \_\_\_\_\_ so much money and time on his first computer. He bought it two years ago and managed \_\_\_\_\_ on it himself.  
A. spending / to work    B. to spend / working  
C. spent / work    D. spend / worked
16. When I lived with my parents, they did not let me \_\_\_\_\_ TV at night. I was made \_\_\_\_\_ a lot.  
A. watching / study    B. watched / studying    C. watch / to study    D. to watch / studied
17. If the printer does not work, try \_\_\_\_\_ everything off and then \_\_\_\_\_ again.  
A. to turn / to start    B. to turn / starting    C. turning / to start    D. turning / starting
18. - Are you thinking of \_\_\_\_\_ London?  
- Oh, yes. I look forward to \_\_\_\_\_ my vacation there next summer.  
A. being visited / spending    B. visit / spend  
C. visiting / spend    D. visiting / spending
19. Everyone likes \_\_\_\_\_ when they have succeeded \_\_\_\_\_ something.  
A. being congratulated / for doing    B. being congratulated / in doing  
C. be congratulating / do    D. to be congratulated / to do
20. The police charged him \_\_\_\_\_ at a wrong space.  
A. park    B. to park    C. parking    D. with parking
21. The workers in our company have raised an objection \_\_\_\_\_ overtime.  
A. to work    B. to working    C. working    D. worked
22. We have discussed \_\_\_\_\_ a new house, but there is no point \_\_\_\_\_ further.  
A. buying / talking    B. to buy / talk  
C. about buying / to talk    D. buy / talked
23. You can open it \_\_\_\_\_ the wrapping paper.  
A. remove    B. to remove    C. removing    D. by removing
24. He recommended that we \_\_\_\_\_ overnight at a hotel, but we felt like \_\_\_\_\_ our journey.  
A. to stay / continued    B. stayed / continue    C. stay / continuing    D. staying/to continue
25. It is twelve o'clock. We should stop \_\_\_\_\_ lunch. We will go on \_\_\_\_\_ our work by 5pm.  
A. having / finish    B. have / finishing    C. to have / to finish    D. had / finished
26. He warned me \_\_\_\_\_ all my money in that company.  
A. not to invest    B. do not invest    C. did not invest    D. not investing
27. I regret \_\_\_\_\_ the lecture, which was not worth \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. attending / to listen    B. to attend / listening  
C. to attend / to listen    D. attending / listening
28. The teacher expected Sarah \_\_\_\_\_ harder. He gave her a lot of homework \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. studied / do    B. studying / done    C. study / doing    D. to study / to do
29. Do you know what \_\_\_\_\_ if there is a fire in the shop where you go \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. doing / to shop    B. to do / shopping    C. do / shop    D. do / shopped
30. This advertisement needs \_\_\_\_\_. We will have Peter \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
A. to redesign / doing    B. redesigning / do  
C. redesigned / did    D. redesign / to do

31. I remember \_\_\_\_\_ John promised \_\_\_\_\_, but now he was nowhere \_\_\_\_\_  
 A. hearing / to come / to be seen    B. hear / coming / being seen  
 C. hearing / to come / to see    D. to hear / come / been seen
32. My father continued \_\_\_\_\_ although the doctor advised him \_\_\_\_\_ the habit several times.  
 A. smoking / to quit    B. to smoke / quit  
 C. smoke / quitting    D. for smoking / of quitting
33. He has arranged \_\_\_\_\_ the visitors at the factory. It is necessary that he \_\_\_\_\_ on time.  
 A. to meet / be    B. meeting / to be    C. meet / being    D. met / was
34. I have an important thing \_\_\_\_\_ you before \_\_\_\_\_ you this document.  
 A. told / given    B. tell / give    C. telling / to give    D. to tell / giving
35. She was hesitant \_\_\_\_\_ the coach of her problem and she thanked her coach \_\_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_\_ with the pressure.  
 A. telling / to help / deal    B. tell / helping / dealing  
 C. told / help / dealing    D. to tell / for helping / to deal
36. Thanks to effective birth control methods, women can delay \_\_\_\_\_ children and they have more time \_\_\_\_\_ part in social work.  
 A. have / taken    B. having / to take    C. had / take    D. to have / taking
37. Avoid \_\_\_\_\_ those mistakes again when \_\_\_\_\_  
 A. to make / write    B. make / to write    C. making / writing    D. made / written
38. We will have our house \_\_\_\_\_. My cousins will come and help us \_\_\_\_\_ the work.  
 A. to repaint/ doing    B. repainted/ do    C. repainting/ to do    D. repainted/ doing
39. We postponed \_\_\_\_\_ any decision in the meeting.  
 A. make    B. to make    C. making    D. made
40. I am busy \_\_\_\_\_ I would rather not \_\_\_\_\_ out for lunch.  
 A. working / go    B. to work / to go    C. worked / going    D. work / going
41. African people are used \_\_\_\_\_ barefoot so they get very rough skin.  
 A. to walk    B. to walking    C. walked    D. walking
42. She was so nice that he couldn't help \_\_\_\_\_ in love with her.  
 A. fall    B. falling    C. to fall    D. fallen
43. I do not mind \_\_\_\_\_ you whenever I finish \_\_\_\_\_ on my reports.  
 A. to help / working    B. helping / to work  
 C. to help / to work    D. helping / working
44. Jean detested \_\_\_\_\_. She often refused \_\_\_\_\_ her photographs taken.  
 A. photographed / have    B. to be photographed / had  
 C. be photographed / having    D. being photographed / to have
45. I happened \_\_\_\_\_ John \_\_\_\_\_ the street yesterday.  
 A. to see / to cross    B. see / crossed    C. to see / crossing    D. seeing / to cross
46. The robbers forced the bank manager \_\_\_\_\_ the safe.  
 A. open    B. to open    C. opening    D. opened
47. Your responsibility includes \_\_\_\_\_ reservations.  
 A. take    B. to take    C. taking    D. taken
48. What about \_\_\_\_\_ home instead of \_\_\_\_\_ the car?  
 A. to walk / taking    B. walking / to take    C. walking / taking    D. to walk / to take
49. The police recommend \_\_\_\_\_ along that street at night.  
 A. not walking    B. not to walk    C. not walk    D. do not walk

50. Neil Armstrong was the first \_\_\_\_\_ in a spaceship. Many people still recall \_\_\_\_\_ the scene when he placed his first step on the Moon.

- A. flew / see    B. to fly / seeing    C. flown / seeing    D. flying / to see

*Complete the following text, putting the verbs into the gerund or the to-infinitive*

1. I like (go) \_\_\_\_\_ to the zoo.
2. The play wasn't very good. The audience started (leave) \_\_\_\_\_ before it was over.
3. After a brief interruption, the professor continued (lecture) \_\_\_\_\_
4. The children love (swim) \_\_\_\_\_ in the ocean.
5. I hate (see) \_\_\_\_\_ any living being suffer. I can't bear it.
6. I'm afraid of flying. When a plane begins (move) \_\_\_\_\_ down the runway, my heart starts (race) \_\_\_\_\_ Oh - oh! The plane is beginning (move) \_\_\_\_\_ and my heart's starting (race) \_\_\_\_\_
7. When I travel, I prefer (drive) \_\_\_\_\_ to (take) \_\_\_\_\_ a plane.
8. I prefer (drive) \_\_\_\_\_ rather than (take) \_\_\_\_\_ a plane.
9. I always remember (turn) \_\_\_\_\_ off all the lights before I leave my house.
10. I can remember (be) \_\_\_\_\_ very proud and happy when I graduated.
11. Did you remember (give) \_\_\_\_\_ Jack my message?
12. I remember (play) \_\_\_\_\_ with dolls when I was a child.
13. What do you remember (do) \_\_\_\_\_ when you were a child?
14. What do you remember (do) \_\_\_\_\_ before you left for class this morning?
15. What did you forget (do) \_\_\_\_\_ before you leave for class every day?
16. I'll never forget (carry) \_\_\_\_\_ my wife over the threshold when we moved into our first home.
17. I can't ever forget (watch) \_\_\_\_\_ our team score the winning goal in the last seconds of the game to capture the national championship.
18. Don't forget (do) \_\_\_\_\_ your homework tonight!
19. I regret (inform) \_\_\_\_\_ you that your loan application has not been approved.
20. I regret (not listen) \_\_\_\_\_ to my father's advice. He was right.

*Supply an appropriate preposition and verb forms*

1. Alice isn't interested \_\_\_\_\_ (look) \_\_\_\_\_ for a new job.
2. Henry is excited \_\_\_\_\_ (leave) \_\_\_\_\_ for India.
3. You are capable \_\_\_\_\_ (do). \_\_\_\_\_ better work
4. I have no excuse (be) \_\_\_\_\_ late.
5. I'm accustomed \_\_\_\_\_ (have) \_\_\_\_\_ a big breakfast.
6. The rain prevented us \_\_\_\_\_ (complete) \_\_\_\_\_ the work
7. Fred is always complaining \_\_\_\_\_ (have) \_\_\_\_\_ a headache.
8. Instead \_\_\_\_\_ (study) \_\_\_\_\_, Margaret went to a ball game with some of her friends.
9. Thank you \_\_\_\_\_ (help) \_\_\_\_\_ me carry the package to the post office.
10. Mrs. Grant insisted \_\_\_\_\_ (know) \_\_\_\_\_ the whole truth.
11. He showed us how to get to his house \_\_\_\_\_ (draw) \_\_\_\_\_ a map.
12. You should take advantage \_\_\_\_\_ (live) \_\_\_\_\_ here.
13. Laura had a good reason \_\_\_\_\_ (not go) \_\_\_\_\_ to class yesterday.
14. Everyone in the neighborhood participated \_\_\_\_\_ (search) \_\_\_\_\_ for the lost child
15. I apologized to Diane \_\_\_\_\_ (make) \_\_\_\_\_ her wait for me.
16. The weather is terrible tonight. I don't blame you \_\_\_\_\_ (not want) \_\_\_\_\_ to go to the meeting.
17. Who is responsible \_\_\_\_\_ (wash) \_\_\_\_\_ and (dry) \_\_\_\_\_ the dishes after dinner?

18. In addition \_\_\_\_\_ (go) \_\_\_\_\_ to school full-time, Sam has a parttime job.
19. The angry look on his face stopped me \_\_\_\_\_ (speak) \_\_\_\_\_ my mind
20. Where should we go for dinner tonight? Would you object \_\_\_\_\_ (go) \_\_\_\_\_ to an Italian restaurant?
21. The mayor made another public statement for the purpose \_\_\_\_\_ (clarify) \_\_\_\_\_ the new tax proposal.
22. The thief was accused \_\_\_\_\_ (steal) \_\_\_\_\_ a woman's purse.
23. The jury found Mr. Adams guilty \_\_\_\_\_ (take) \_\_\_\_\_ money from the company he worked for and (keep) \_\_\_\_\_ it for himself.
24. Bill isn't used \_\_\_\_\_ (wear) \_\_\_\_\_ a suit and tie everyday.
25. I'm going to visit my family during the school vacation. I'm looking forward \_\_\_\_\_ (eat) \_\_\_\_\_ my mother's cooking and (sleep) \_\_\_\_\_ my own bed.

*Supply an appropriate form, gerund or infinitive, of the verbs in brackets.*

1. Mary reminded me (not be) \_\_\_\_\_ late for the meeting.
2. We went for a walk after we finished (clean) \_\_\_\_\_ up the kitchen.
3. I forgot (take) \_\_\_\_\_ a book back to the library, so I had to pay a fine.
4. When do you expect (leave) \_\_\_\_\_ on your trip?
5. The baby started (talk) \_\_\_\_\_ when she was about eighteen months old.
6. I don't mind (wait) \_\_\_\_\_ for you. Go ahead and finish (do) \_\_\_\_\_ your work.
7. I've decided (stay) \_\_\_\_\_ here over vacation and (paint) \_\_\_\_\_ my room.
8. We discussed (quit) \_\_\_\_\_ our jobs and (open) \_\_\_\_\_ our own business.
9. I'm getting tired. I need (take) \_\_\_\_\_ a break.
10. Sometimes students avoid (look) \_\_\_\_\_ at the teacher if they don't want (answer) \_\_\_\_\_ a question.
11. The club members discussed (postpone) \_\_\_\_\_ the meeting until March.
12. Most children prefer (watch) \_\_\_\_\_ television to (listen) \_\_\_\_\_ the radio.
13. My grandfather prefers (read) \_\_\_\_\_
14. Did Carol agree (go) \_\_\_\_\_ (camp) \_\_\_\_\_ with you?
15. As the storm approached, the birds quit (sing) \_\_\_\_\_
16. The taxi driver refused (take) \_\_\_\_\_ a check. He wanted the passengers (pay) \_\_\_\_\_ in cash.
17. The soldiers were ordered (stand) \_\_\_\_\_ at attention.
18. The travel agent advised us (not wait) \_\_\_\_\_ until August.
19. When a student asks a question, the teacher always tries (explain) \_\_\_\_\_ the problems as clearly as possible.
20. I tried everything, but the baby wouldn't stop crying. I tried (hold) \_\_\_\_\_ him. I tried (feed) \_\_\_\_\_ him. I tried (change) \_\_\_\_\_ his diapers. Nothing worked.

*Rewrite each sentence, beginning as shown, so that the meaning stays the same.*

1. I was made to study hard when I was at school.  
=> They
2. If I take the job, I'll have to move to Paris.  
=> Taking the job
3. It's very kind of you to give me a lift.  
=> I appreciate
4. It might be good idea to use honey instead of sugar.

- => Why don't you try
5. I'm quite happy to look after the baby for you.  
=> I don't mind
6. I must see the manager!  
=> I demand .
7. "Go on, Jack, apply for the job," said Sally.  
=> Sally encouraged
8. You wouldn't know where the Hilton is, would you?  
=> Do you happen
9. Parking is not permitted here.  
=> You are
10. "Shall I carry that bag for you, John?" said Pauline.  
=> Pauline offered

*Rewrite each sentences so that it contains the word in capitals, and so that the meaning stays the same.*

1. Jack said that he hadn't cheated in the exam.  
**CHEATING**
2. It was difficult for me not to laugh at Wendy's letter.  
**HELP**
3. I'm sorry but you have not been appointed to the post.  
**REGRET**
4. I needed a drink of water and so I stopped running.  
**TO**
5. Luckily Peter didn't pay a fine.  
**PAYING**
6. I think it would be a good idea to take the train.  
**SUGGEST**
7. Don't forget the lights when you leave.  
**OFF**
8. I can hear voices upstairs.  
**SOMEONE**
9. I think Derek has forgotten the meeting.  
**APPEARS**
10. My neighbor said he would call the police.  
**THREATENED**
11. I'm sorry I didn't go to university.                   **(REGRET)**  
=>
12. Winning the football pools meant we could buy a new car.           **(ENABLED)**  
=>
13. There is a risk that he will miss the plane if he waits.           **(RISKS)**  
=>
14. I believe you were the murderer because of this clue.           **(LED)**  
=>
15. Does using the hotel swimming pool cost extra?           **(PAY)**  
=>

16. I think that this is the right street. (APPEARS)

=>

17. Jean succeeded in finishing all her work on time. (MANAGED)

=>

18. They said they would like me to stay with them in Florida. (INVITED)

=>

19. Calling Jim is pointless, because his phone is out of order. (USE)

=>

20. It is compulsory for all students to leave a cash deposit. (REQUIRED)

=>

## PART XIII : MIXED SENTENCE WRITING EXERCISES(ADVANCED)

Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.

### Exercise 1.

1. I never thought that we'd have legal problems. *crossed*  
=> It .....that we'd have legal problems.
2. I've decided that teaching is not the right profession for me. *conclusion*  
=> I've .....that teaching is not the right profession for me.
3. Could you tell me where you were last night, Mr Johnson? *account*  
=> Could you.....your whereabouts last night, Mr Johnson?
4. The journalist pretended that she was a parent of one of the children. *false*  
=> The journalist.....that she was a parent of one of the children.
5. You have to use logic and lateral thinking in equal measure in this job. *strike*  
=> You have to ..... logic and lateral thinking in this job.
6. I didn't tell Angie because I didn't want to hurt Eddie's feelings. *consideration*  
=> I didn't tell Angie..... Eddie.

### Exercise 2.

1. I'm never going to forget to consider Darren's views when I make a decision again. *account*  
=> That's the last time I .....when I make a decision.
2. I don't know how on earth she thinks of such brilliant plots for her novels. *come*  
=> How on earth .....such brilliant plots for her novels?
3. I'm sure Nancy is still presuming that the party starts at nine. *impression*  
=> I'm sure Nancy..... that the party starts at nine.
4. Sean, do you know yet what you're doing this evening? *mind*  
=> Sean, ..... yet what you're doing this evening?
5. I told Jeanne, thinking that she'd be supportive - how wrong I was! *belief*  
=> I told Jeanne.....that she'd be supportive - how wrong I was!
6. There's no way that you're staying out all night with your friends, I'm afraid. *question*  
=> Your staying out all night with your friends....., I'm afraid.
7. I'm glad you now see sense and agree that your parents are right. *senses*  
=> I'm glad ..... and agree that your parents are right.
8. I think you think - wrongly - that this is all a conspiracy against you. *misapprehension*  
=> I think.....that this is all a conspiracy against you.

### Exercise 3.

1. I started working at eight and I was still working at six in the evening, when you called. *been*  
=> When you called,..... ten hours.
2. We often went to the seaside with our grandparents as children. *would*  
=> Our grandparents..... to the seaside as children.
3. It's about seven years now since Laura started to learn Russian. *learning*  
=> Laura..... seven years.
4. Being with the older children soon stopped being frightening when I went to secondary school. *used*  
=> Secondary school was frightening, but I .....with the older children.
5. Every night for the past week I have had the same dream. *having*



- => I ..... for a week now.
6. I always disliked karate lessons but now I'm starting to enjoy them. *used*
- => I ..... karate lessons, but now I'm starting to.

**Exercise 4.**

1. Don't you think we should decorate the living room soon? *up*
- => Isn't it about time .....the living room?
2. Why should I offer you advice if you won't listen? *use*
- => What's .....you advice if you won't listen?
3. Being in prison seems to have changed Kevin's behaviour for the better. *leaf*
- => Kevin has.....he got out of prison.
4. Don't complain about it to me because it won't make any difference *good*
- => It's..... it because it won't make any difference.
5. You only have a short time to do this work, so don't waste time. *clock*
- => You are..... , so don't waste time.
6. When her dream of meeting Kylie came true after so long, Carol couldn't believe it. *reality*
- => Carol couldn't believe it when her dream of meeting Kylie.....after so long.
7. I often think that Sean is actually his twin brother, Michael. *mix*
- => I often.....his twin brother, Michael.
8. Would you like to do what the form teacher does? *places*
- => Would you like to ..... the form teacher?

**Exercise 5.**

1. Shona will find out if she has been promoted very soon. *just*
- => Shona.....find out if she has been promoted.
2. They will decide very soon whether to close the Paris office. *point*
- => They.....whether to close the Paris office.
3. The plan is that I will give a presentation to the board on Friday morning. *due*
- => I.....a presentation to the board on Friday morning.
4. Are you going home in a minute? *about*
- => Are you ..... home?
5. Actually, there won't be a general election for a while. *verge*
- => Actually, we .....a general election.
6. What time do the inspectors arrive tomorrow? *due*
- => What time.....tomorrow?
7. Keep this a secret. *to*
- => You are.....anyone about this.

**Exercise 6.**

1. The government needs to stop this ridiculous bureaucratic system,. *put*
- => The government needs to.....this ridiculous bureaucratic system.
2. No one except Jake has ever beaten me at a game of chess. *only*
- => Jake.....beat me at a game of chess.
3. It's time we began to sort through these cupboards. *start*
- => It's time we .....through these cupboards.
4. Julie asked for a second's thinking time before she answered. *just*
- => 'Could..... think before I answer?' asked Julie.
5. I can't really remember the last time I had a day off. *ages*

=> It feels..... I had a day off.

6. Scry, Alan, but right now I'm rather busy. *in*

=> Sorry. Alan, but at .....I'm rather busy.

7. They painted the wall very well. *made*

=> They.....the wall

### Exercise 7.

1. That medicine was very effective and I started to feel better immediately. *magic*

=> That medicine.....and I started to feel better immediately.

2. The day started really well when we heard that Bob had been given his own TV series. *flying*

=> The day.....when we heard that Bob had been given his own TV series.

3. I do like this job, but I sometimes wonder if I've chosen the right career path. *again*

=> I do like this job, but..... I wonder if I've chosen the right career path.

4. The headmaster was determined to stop all bullying at the school. *end*

=> The headmaster was determined to.....to all bullying at the school.

5. No one nowadays believes in witches, do they? *age*

=> No one.....believes in witches, do they?

6. We were just about to leave for the airport when we heard all planes had been grounded. *point*

=> We were.....for the airport when we heard all planes had been grounded.

7. I'll just finish this e-mail and then I'll be with you. *second*

=> It.....finish this e-mail and then I'll be with you.

8. Ralph would hand in his resignation immediately if he could find a better job. *hat*

=> Ralph would hand in his resignation.....if he could find a better job.

### Exercise 8.

1. They made me wait for over 20 minutes on the phone! *kept*

=> I ..... for over 20 minutes on the phone!

2. Although people consider Ashley to be a star, she is always friendly towards everyone.

*considered*

=> Despite....., Ashley's always friendly towards everyone.

3. We have had reports that the Prime Minister is making a surprise visit to Syria. *be*

=> The Prime Minister.....a surprise visit to Syria.

4. The manager provided the staff with extra training. *by*

=> The.....the manager.

5. I think someone needs to explain this computer program to me. *explaining*

=> I think I need..... me.

6. They have been building the new stadium for much longer than they originally estimated. *under*

=> The new stadium.....for much longer than they originally estimated.

7. Do you know why they made Craig stay behind after the lesson? *to*

=> Do you know why..... behind after the lesson?

8. Call Lionel and ask him to send the reports up to my office. *have*

=> Call Lionel and..... the reports up to my office.

### Exercise 9.

1. Smith gave the ball to Jones just before the referee blew his whistle. *by*

=> Jones.....Smith just before the referee blew his whistle.

2. Reports say that ponce have arrested a number of people since the robbery. *reported*

=> There.....a number of arrests since the robbery.

3. Try to stay level with the other runners at the start of the race. *fall*  
=> Try..... the other runners at the start of the race.
4. The police have put a barrier around the building to keep people out. *cordoned*  
=> The building..... police.
5. A friend of ours fixed our car for us. *had*  
=> We..... our car.
6. The managing director always likes to welcome new employees on their first day. *point*  
=> The managing director always..... new employees on their first day.
7. After a slow start, the audience were soon laughing at the comedian's jokes. *had*  
=> After a slow start, the comedian.....at his jokes.
8. I just need to finish this work and then I'll call you. *way*  
=> I just need to .....and then I'll call you.

**Exercise 10.**

1. It's possible that Greg didn't go to Swansea after all. *not*  
=> Greg..... to Swansea after all.
2. It's quite likely that Sasha was lying about what Doug said. *well*  
=> Sasha..... about what Doug said.
3. The most likely situation is that they awarded Grandpa the medal during the war. *must*  
=> Grandpa.....during the war.
4. I'd be surprised if Derek has already arrived. *ought*  
=> Derek..... yet.
5. Jake, is it definite that they haven't announced the winner yet? *will*  
=> Jake,.....announced yet?
6. It's highly likely that Stephen was listening. *may*  
=> Stephen..... listening.
7. It's not possible that Andrew is half Spanish. *be*  
=> Andrew..... half Spanish.

*Rewrite each of the following sentences in such a way that it means exactly the same as the sentence printed before it.*

1. Don't act fast, you might make a mistake. **HASTE**  
=>
2. She could not answer the merchants in their own language. **ABLE**  
=>
3. We were asking ourselves if they were really there. **WONDERING**  
=>
4. Don't you think we should ask the price? **HAD BETTER**  
=>
5. We can't buy the house because the down payment is so high. **SO ... THAT**  
=>
6. She is not a young woman which is not important because her admirers find her ageless. **NO MATTER**  
=>
7. It is really difficult to control the increase of vandalism. **RISING TIDE**  
=>

8. Vandals are often youngsters who have done poorly in school and want to take revenge on the administration and the teachers of the schools. **GET EVEN**  
=>
9. The vandals spoil the appearance of the walls and break the windows. **DEFACE**  
=>
10. I think I should take a coat. **HAD BETTER**  
=>
11. Paul won't try because he's afraid of failing. **SO ... THAT**  
=>
12. They were successful in their affairs for a time. **DID WELL**  
=>
13. It is not important who you are because you are expected to obey the law. **NO MATTER**  
=>
14. He feels stupid by comparison because his brothers are very bright. **SUCH**  
=>
15. When the great leader died and they were left on their own, they began to lose their conquests. **IN CHARGE OF**  
=>
16. The scientists said that Voyager would reach Jupiter in March, and it did. **ACCORDING**  
=>
17. She did it because she was kind. **OUT OF**  
=>
18. Your brother is young, but he has enough experience for the job. **DESPITE**  
=>
19. Everything was covered with gold paint except two very small holes. **WITH THE ...**  
=>
20. Washington's example strengthened his soldiers' determination. **STRONGER**  
=>
21. That noise is making people deaf. **DEAFENING**  
=>
22. People ask questions either because they are curious or bored. **OUT OF**  
=>
23. My friends are proud of their sons, but they don't talk about them. **IN SPITE**  
=>
24. Only a mother buffalo finds baby buffalos pretty. **IT TAKES ...**  
=>
25. It is impossible to please everybody. **THERE IS ...**  
=>
26. The offenders are determined to do better. **BENT ON**  
=>
27. Peter has been arrested twice for careless driving. He has decided to be more careful. **HAVING**  
=>
28. Even if you are noticed, your eagerness will be helpful to you. **YOUR FAVOUR**

- =>
29. Be certain that your clothes are clean and well pressed. **MAKE SURE**
- =>
30. Joan tried to explain her ideas, but she could not convince her father. **DESPITE**
- =>
31. The judge listened to their story in silence. He decided to give them a lecture.  
**THE JUDGE WHO**
- =>
32. There's a teacher's meeting tomorrow; several classes are cancelled. **DUE TO**
- =>
33. The boys promised to behave in the future. They were allowed to go home. **ONCE**
- =>
34. The director has a good opinion of people who are early. **VERY HIGHLY**
- =>
35. The boys had nothing to do that evening. They thought it would be fun to smash some windows.  
**SINCE**
- =>
36. The meeting will take place in his office. **IS**
- =>
37. Until now women's vote has not made much difference. **SO FAR,**
- =>
38. He smoked a cigarette. At the same time he waited for the manager. **WHILE**
- =>
39. Employers prefer to hire younger people. That's the truth. **THE FACT**
- =>
40. They can make a mistake if they don't know the people's origins. **AWARE**
- =>
41. Sometimes, manners are related to national customs. **A MATTER OF**
- =>
42. He said that his shyness prevented him from behaving well in society. **KEPT**
- =>
43. He shaved his beard to please his wife. **SHAVING**
- =>
44. George always helped his father in the store. **A HAND**
- =>
45. Do you ever think that geology is a very interesting field? **OCCUR**
- =>
46. Perhaps I can persuade you to study. **TALK ... INTO**
- =>
47. How can I compensate for my mistake? **MAKE UP**
- =>
48. We felt like going out last night. **MOOD**
- =>
49. That book deserves to be read. **WORTH**
- =>

50. Supposedly, oil can be extracted from a rock called shale. **THEORY**  
=>
51. The operation is far from simple. **NOT AT ALL**  
=>
52. Most people are impressed and afraid of nuclear energy. **AWE**  
=>
53. He only went to the concert because Mary wanted him to. **PLEASE**  
=>
54. Your contract says that you are to be here by nine every day. **UNDER**  
=>
55. He looks exactly like his father. **IMAGE**  
=>
56. His arrival was completely unexpected. **TOOK**  
=>
57. I'll be unable to keep my appointment with Mr Marshall. **CANCEL**  
=>
58. If I'd been Jane, I wouldn't have told Andrew about the car accident. **PLACE**  
=>
59. The stories James tells about his war experiences are quite incredible. **BEYOND**  
=>
60. It's no use asking Mrs. Carrouters to sing at the concert, she's going away. **THERE'S**  
=>
61. We shouldn't consider the other theories. **WORTH**  
=>
62. I knew he was our man the moment I saw him. **SET EYES**  
=>
63. My brother speaks French well. **COMMAND**  
=>
64. The flags were sold to help the blind. **AID**  
=>
65. Let me know as soon as you have any news. **THE MINUTE**  
=>
66. I advise you not to believe what you read in the papers about me. **RELY**  
=>
67. We missed the bus because we had overslept. **CONSEQUENCE**  
=>
68. They continued to suggest that I was lying. **PERSISTED**  
=>
69. Both children and adults will enjoy this game. **ALIKE**  
=>
70. Tax contributes to the cost of local services. **PAID**  
=>
71. The milkman appears to be running away from your fierce dog. **AS IF / THOUGH**  
=>
72. I find his clothes the most irritating thing about him. **WHAT**

- =>
73. The discovery of how to light fires gave man a new control over his environment. **ABLE**
- =>
74. However friendly he seems, he's not to be trusted. **THOUGH**
- =>
75. The suitcase was extremely heavy but he managed to lift it. **DESPITE**
- =>
76. This must be true so we should inform the President. **IF**
- =>
77. He will come. It is in his own interest. **BOUND**
- =>
78. Although I was told that I would be unhappy I married him. **IN SPITE**
- =>
79. Mr Smith won't attend the meeting. **UNDER**
- =>
80. Although they are poor they can afford beer. **THOUGH**
- =>
81. She answered the policeman's questions as accurately as she could. **ACCURATE**
- =>
82. Romantic love must be present, or the marriage will seem insincere. **OTHERWISE**
- =>
83. What I like about him is his honesty. **MORE THAN**
- =>
84. We were late because we missed the train. **THROUGH**
- =>
85. She said I was a liar. **ACCUSED**
- =>
86. To be fair to him, I don't think he really meant to deceive you. **JUSTICE**
- =>
87. The cook is brilliant but knows nothing about French sauces. **AS / THOUGH**
- =>
88. A mistake of this kind could cause the wrong person to be arrested. **RESULT IN**
- =>
89. The company may well make a profit next year. **SURPRISING**
- =>
90. I seldom go to pop concerts. **ONLY ON ...**
- =>
91. This matter is too serious to be dealt with hurriedly. **A MATTER**
- =>
92. Don't repeat this to anyone, but Jones has been sacked. **LET**
- =>
93. How do you feel about capital punishment? **WHAT ARE ...**
- =>
94. I can't believe the Prime Minister really means to resign. **I FIND ...**
- =>

95. My knowledge of medieval art is very limited. **I DON'T ...**  
=>
96. It is impossible to prove that Louis was in the flat on the night of the murder. **EVIDENCE**  
=>
97. The value of this Spanish coin is about 200 pounds. **WORTH**  
=>
98. The raising of the school-leaving age has resulted in unforeseen difficulties. **ARISING**  
=>
99. Do you agree with the Council's plans to widen the High Street? **AGREEMENT**  
=>
100. As these are your conditions, I have no choice but to abide by them. **BEING**  
=>



# CHAPTER III : PHONETICS

## PART I : PRONUNCIATIONS

### • THEORY

- Vowels : nguyên âm
- Consonants : phụ âm
- Monophthongs: nguyên âm đơn
- Diphthongs: nguyên âm đôi

### International Phonetic Alphabet(IPA)(BẢNG PHIÊN ÂM QUỐC TẾ)

VOWELS	Monophthongs				Diphthongs			
	i: sheep	ɪ ship	ʊ good	u: shoot	iə here	ei wait		
	e ten	ə teacher	ɜ: bird	ɔ: door	ʊə tourist	ɔi boy	əʊ show	
æ cat	ʌ cup	ɑ: far	ɒ on	eə hair	ai my	aʊ cow		
CONSONANTS	p pea	b boat	t tea	d dog	tʃ cheese	dʒ June	k car	g go
	f fly	v video	θ think	ð this	s see	z zoo	ʃ she	ʒ television
	m man	n now	ŋ Singer	h hat	l love	r red	w wet	j yes

### CÁCH ĐỌC PHIÊN ÂM

Viết	Cách đọc phiên âm tiếng Việt	Ví dụ phổ biến
i:	Đọc là ii nhưng dài, nặng và nhấn mạnh	Feet /fi:t/ See /si:/ Sheep
i	Đọc như i bình thường giống Tiếng Việt	Alien /eiliən/ xa lạ. Happy /'hæpi/
ɪ	Đọc như i nhưng ngắn, dứt khoát	Fit /fɪt/ hợp, vừa. Sit /sɪt/
e	Đọc như e bình thường	Bed /bed/. Ten /ten/
æ	Đọc là ea nối liền nhau và nhanh	Bad /bæd/ Hat /hæt/
ɑ:	Đọc là aa nhưng dài, nặng, nhấn mạnh	Arm /ɑ:m/ . Fast /fɑ:st/
ɒ, ɔ	Đọc là o dứt khoát	Got /gɒt/ . Shot /ʃɒt/
ɔ:	Đọc là oo dài, nặng và nhấn mạnh	Saw /sɔ:/ cưa, cái cưa. Short /ʃɔ:t/
ʊ	Đọc là u ngắn và dứt khoát	Foot /fʊt/. Put /pʊt/
u:	Đọc là uu dài, nặng, mạnh	Food /fu:d/. Too /tu:/

<b>u</b>	Đọc là u bình thường	<b>Actual</b> /'æktʃuəl/. <b>Visual</b> /'viʒuəl/
<b>ʌ</b>	Đọc là â trong Tiếng Việt	<b>Cup</b> /cʌp/. <b>Drum</b> /drʌm/ cái trống
<b>ɜ:</b>	Đọc là ơ dài, nặng, nhấn mạnh	<b>Bird</b> /bɜ:d/. <b>Nurse</b> /nɜ:s/
<b>ə</b>	Đọc là o bình thường trong TV	<b>Ago</b> /ə'gəʊ/. <b>Never</b> /'nevə(r)/
<b>ei</b>	Đọc là êi hoặc ây trong Tiếng Việt	<b>Page</b> /peɪdʒ/. <b>Say</b> /sei/
<b>əʊ, ou</b>	Đọc là âu trong Tiếng Việt	<b>Home</b> /həʊm/. <b>Low</b> /ləʊ/
<b>ai</b>	Đọc là ai trong Tiếng Việt	<b>Five</b> /faɪv/. <b>Sky</b> /skai/
<b>aʊ</b>	Đọc là ao trong Tiếng Việt	<b>Flower</b> /'flaʊə(r)/. <b>Now</b> /naʊ/
<b>ɔɪ</b>	Đọc là ooi trong Tiếng Việt	<b>Boy</b> /bɔɪ/. <b>Join</b> /dʒɔɪn/
<b>iə</b>	Đọc là iơ hoặc là ia trong Tiếng Việt	<b>Here</b> /hiə(r)/. <b>Near</b> /niə(r)/
<b>eə</b>	Đọc là eo liền nhau, nhanh, ơ hơi câm	<b>Care</b> /keə(r)/. <b>Hair</b> /heə(r)/
<b>ʊə</b>	Đọc là uơ hoặc ua trong Tiếng Việt	<b>Pure</b> /pjʊə(r)/ tinh khiết. <b>Tour</b> /tʊə(r)/
<b>p</b>	Đọc là pơ ò trong Tiếng Việt	<b>Pen</b> /pen/. <b>Soup</b> /su:p/
<b>b</b>	Đọc là bờ nhanh, dứt khoát	<b>Bad</b> /bæd/. <b>Web</b> /web/
<b>t</b>	Đọc là thờ nhanh, gọn, dứt điểm	<b>Dot</b> /dɒt/. <b>Tea</b> /ti:/
<b>d</b>	Đọc là đồ nhanh, gọn, dứt điểm	<b>Did</b> /dɪd/. <b>Stand</b> /stænd/
<b>k</b>	Đọc là kha nhanh, gọn(giống caa)	<b>Cat</b> /kæt/. <b>Desk</b> /desk/
<b>g</b>	Đọc là gờ nhanh, dứt khoát	<b>Bag</b> /bæg/ cái cặp sách. <b>Got</b> /gɒt/
<b>tʃ</b>	Đọc là chờ nhanh, gọn, dứt điểm	<b>Chin</b> /tʃɪn/. <b>Match</b> /mætʃ/ diêm
<b>dʒ</b>	Đọc là giơ ngắn, dứt khoát	<b>June</b> /dʒu:n/. <b>Page</b> /peɪdʒ/
<b>f</b>	Đọc là phờ nhanh, dứt điểm	<b>Fall</b> /fɔ:l/. <b>Safe</b> /seɪf/
<b>v</b>	Đọc là vờ nhanh, gọn, dứt điểm	<b>Voice</b> /vɔɪs/. <b>Wave</b> /weɪv/
<b>θ</b>	Đọc là tờ đờ nối liền, nhanh, tờ hơi câm	<b>Bath</b> /bɑ:θ/. <b>Thin</b> /θɪn/
<b>ð</b>	Đọc là đồ nhanh, nhẹ	<b>Bathe</b> /beɪð/. <b>Then</b> /ðen/

<b>s</b>	Đọc là sờ nhanh, nhẹ, phát âm gió	<b>Rice</b> /raɪs/. <b>So</b> /səʊ/
<b>z</b>	Đọc là dờ nhẹ và kéo dài	<b>Rose</b> /rəʊz/. <b>Zip</b> /zip/ tiếng rít
<b>ʃ</b>	Đọc là sờ nhẹ, kéo dài hơi gió	<b>She</b> /ʃiː/. <b>Wash</b> /wɒʃ/
<b>ʒ</b>	Đọc là giờ nhẹ, phát âm ngắn	<b>Measure</b> /'meʒə/. <b>Vision</b> /'viʒn/
<b>h</b>	Đọc là hờ nhẹ, âm ngắn, gọn	<b>How</b> /haʊ/. <b>Who</b> /huː/
<b>m</b>	Đọc là mơ nhẹ, âm ngắn, gọn	<b>Man</b> /mæn/. <b>Some</b> /sʌm/
<b>n</b>	Đọc là nờ nhẹ, âm ngắn, gọn	<b>No</b> /nəʊ/. <b>Mutton</b> /'mʌtn/ thịt cừu
<b>ŋ</b>	Đọc là ngo nhẹ, dứt điểm	<b>Singer</b> /'sɪŋə/. <b>Tongue</b> /tʌŋ/ cái lưỡi
<b>l</b>	Đọc là lơ nhẹ, ngắn, dứt điểm	<b>Leg</b> /leg/. <b>Metal</b> /'metl/ kim loại
<b>r</b>	Đọc là rờ nhẹ, ngắn, dứt khoát	<b>Red</b> /red/. <b>Train</b> /treɪn/
<b>j</b>	Đọc là iờ liền nhau, nối dài	<b>Menu</b> /'menjuː/. <b>Yes</b> /jes/
<b>w</b>	Đọc là guờ liền nhau, nhanh, gọn	<b>Wet</b> /wet/. <b>Why</b> /wai/

### ÂM CÂM

Một số chữ cái trong một số từ bao gồm phụ âm và nguyên âm không được phát âm thành tiếng được gọi là âm câm (silent sounds). Sau đây là một số âm câm thường gặp:

Chữ cái – Trường hợp thường gặp	Ví dụ
<b>b</b> đứng cuối trong một số từ (thường đi sau m) <b>b</b> đứng trước t	climb, dumb, comb, doubt, debt
<b>c</b> đứng trước k <b>c</b> đứng sau s trong một số từ	snack, dock scene, muscle, science
<b>d</b> trong một số từ	handsome, Wednesday
<b>h</b> trong một số từ	hour, exhausted
<b>gh</b> trong một số từ (đặc biệt là sau i)	weigh, sight
<b>k</b> đứng trước n	know, knee, knife
<b>l</b> trong một số từ	half, could
<b>n</b> đứng sau m	autumn, condemn
<b>p</b> đứng đầu một từ, theo sau là một phụ âm và một số trường hợp khác	psychology, receipt
<b>r</b> đứng trước một phụ âm khác hoặc đứng cuối từ đó	card, park, farm, burn, neighbour, volunteer
<b>t</b> trong một số từ	listen, castle
<b>w</b> đứng trước r hoặc h trong một số từ	wreck, who

### CÁCH PHÁT ÂM ĐUÔI “-ED” CUỐI

	Quy tắc
--	---------

( Dựa vào phát âm chứ không phải chữ cuối )	
/ɪd/	t , d : tình đầu Ex: wanted , ended
	Ngoại lệ: Đuôi "ed" trong các tính từ sau được đọc là /ɪd/ naked                    aged                    learned                    wicked dogged                    blessed                    beloved                    crooked
/t/	K , SS , X, CH , F , CE , P , GH , SH ( Khúc sông xưa chuyển phà củ phải ghé sang ) Ex: worked , kissed, faxed , watched, laughed , faced , helped , roughed, washed => s hoặc -ss thì luôn đúng, <b>nhưng -se</b> có thể đọc /t/ hoặc /d/ tùy theo từ.
/d/	b , g , l , m , n , r , v , y , I , e..... Ex: played , loved , happened.....

### CÁCH PHÁT ÂM " -S /ES" CUỐI :

Quy tắc	
/s/	Thời phong kiến phương tây Ex: cloths, beliefs, books , cups , cats
/ɪz/	Chúng xô số zói sh sẽ ce ge Ex: watches, boxes, buses, buzzes crashes, focuses , resources , bridges
/z/	Ex: robs, bags, pools, costumes, begins , floors , leaves

#### • PRACTICES

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word whose underlined part differs from the other three in pronunciation in each of the following questions.*

#### • Phát âm đuôi -s/es

- A. nationss      B. speakerss                    C. languagess                    D. mindss
- A. proofss      B. lookss                    C. lendss                    D. stopss
- A. datess      B. bagss                    C. photographss                    D. speakss
- A. parentss      B. brotherss                    C. weekendss                    D. feelingss
- A. choress      B. dishess                    C. housess                    D. coachess
- A. workss      B. shopss                    C. shiftss                    D. playss
- A. coughss      B. singss                    C. stopss                    D. sleepss
- A. signss      B. profitss                    C. becomess                    D. survivess
- A. proofss      B. bookss                    C. pointss                    D. dayss
- A. phoness      B. streetss                    C. bookss                    D. makess
- A. proofss      B. regionss                    C. liftss                    D. rockss
- A. involvess      B. believess                    C. suggestss                    D. stealss
- A. rememberss      B. cookss                    C. wallss                    D. pyramidss
- A. miless      B. wordss                    C. accidentss                    D. namess
- A. sportss      B. playss                    C. choress                    D. mindss
- A. walkss      B. stepss                    C. shutss                    D. playss
- A. wishess      B. practicess                    C. introducess                    D. leavess
- A. grassess      B. stretchess                    C. comprisess                    D. potatoess
- A. deskss      B. mapss                    C. plantss                    D. chairss
- A. penss      B. bookss                    C. phoness                    D. tabless

21. A. dips      B. deserts      C. books      D. camels  
 22. A. knees      B. peas      C. trees      D. niece  
 23. A. cups      B. stamps      C. books      D. pens  
 24. A. houses      B. faces      C. hates      D. places  
 25. A. miles      B. attends      C. drifts      D. glows  
 26. A. mends      B. develops      C. values      D. equals  
 27. A. repeats      B. classmates      C. amuses      D. attacks  
 28. A. humans      B. dreams      C. concerts      D. songs  
 29. A. manages      B. laughs      C. photographs      D. makes  
 30. A. dishes      B. oranges      C. experiences      D. chores

• **Phát âm đuôi -ed**

31. A. lifted      B. lasted      C. happened      D. decided  
 32. A. believed      B. prepared      C. involved      D. liked  
 33. A. coughed      B. phoned      C. booked      D. stopped  
 34. A. talked      B. looked      C. naked      D. worked  
 35. A. developed      B. ignored      C. laughed      D. washed  
 36. A. phoned      B. stated      C. mended      D. old-aged  
 37. A. clapped      B. attracted      C. lifted      D. needed  
 38. A. involved      B. believed      C. praised      D. locked  
 39. A. remembered      B. cooked      C. raised      D. cleaned  
 40. A. smiled      B. regarded      C. suggested      D. naked  
 41. A. collected      B. changed      C. formed      D. viewed  
 42. A. walked      B. entertained      C. reached      D. looked  
 43. A. watched      B. stopped      C. pushed      D. improved  
 44. A. admired      B. looked      C. missed      D. hoped  
 45. A. proved      B. changed      C. pointed      D. played  
 46. A. helped      B. laughed      C. cooked      D. intended  
 47. A. smoked      B. followed      C. titled      D. implied  
 48. A. failed      B. reached      C. absorbed      D. solved  
 49. A. invited      B. attended      C. celebrated      D. displayed  
 50. A. smiled      B. denied      C. divorced      D. agreed  
 51. A. planned      B. developed      C. valued      D. recognized  
 52. A. approved      B. answered      C. passed      D. uttered  
 53. A. doubted      B. wedded      C. connected      D. passed  
 54. A. managed      B. laughed      C. captured      D. signed  
 55. A. washed      B. exchanged      C. experienced      D. mixed  
 56. A. filled      B. added      C. started      D. intended  
 57. A. removed      B. washed      C. hoped      D. missed  
 58. A. looked      B. laughed      C. moved      D. stepped  
 59. A. wanted      B. parked      C. stopped      D. watched  
 60. A. laughed      B. passed      C. suggested      D. placed

• **Phát âm nguyên âm/phụ âm**

61. A. unlike      B. university      C. unit      D. union  
 62. A. ister      B. ose      C. ouses      D. ouse  
 63. A. ather      B. anything      C. another      D. although

64. A. feeling B. weekend C. reading D. ready  
 65. A. secure B. future C. mature D. culture  
 66. A. banquet B. sacrifice C. ambulance D. husband  
 67. A. polite B. idea C. police D. oblige  
 68. A. famy B. father C. happy D. frankly  
 69. A. hosital B. confidence C. biologist D. home  
 70. A. night B. children C. shift D. quit  
 71. A. mother B. brother C. although D. enough  
 72. A. prepare B. caring C. repair D. farther  
 73. A. leave B. week C. live D. police  
 74. A. pollute B. busy C. solution D. conclusion  
 75. A. chores B. children C. mischievous D. school  
 76. A. sacrifice B. determine C. involve D. different  
 77. A. attitude B. wisdom C. determine D. unwise  
 78. A. of B. leaf C. famy D. confide  
 79. A. hand B. demand C. happy D. hat  
 80. A. house B. thousand C. young D. mouth  
 81. A. equal B. arrest C. reject D. envelope  
 82. A. culture B. under C. conduct D. bushes  
 83. A. change B. teacher C. school D. each  
 84. A. good B. groom C. school D. roof  
 85. A. thin B. think C. many D. under  
 86. A. how B. shower C. now D. below  
 87. A. great B. feature C. leaf D. lead  
 88. A. symbol B. physical C. apply D. ceremony  
 89. A. wedding B. exchange C. guest D. ancestor  
 90. A. guest B. grateful C. groom D. generation

## PART II : STRESS

### • THEORY

Khi phát âm, mỗi từ trong tiếng Anh được cấu thành bởi một hoặc nhiều âm tiết.

Example:

Từ 1 âm tiết (one syllable)	Từ 2 âm tiết (2 syllables)	3 syllables (từ 3 âm tiết)
Mum /mʌm/	Mother /'mʌðə/	Grandmother /'græn,mʌðə/

Nếu một từ có từ 2 âm tiết trở lên, bạn sẽ phải nhấn trọng âm khi phát âm từ đó. Cần chú ý là:

- mỗi từ chỉ có một trọng âm chính
- Trọng âm được nhấn vào nguyên âm, không phải phụ âm của âm tiết.

Khi nhấn trọng âm cho một âm tiết trong từ, ta phát âm âm tiết đó dài hơn, rõ hơn và cao hơn.

Examples:

SATurday /'sætədeɪ/

MORning /'mɔːnɪŋ/

SUNday /'sʌndeɪ/

### 1. Một số quy tắc nhấn trọng âm trong các từ có 2 âm tiết.

- Hầu hết các danh từ và tính từ hai âm tiết có trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ nhất.

**Ví dụ:**

Nouns	Adjectives
BROther	HAPpy
MONey	PRETty
SHOWer	SUNny

- Hầu hết các động từ hai âm tiết có trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết thứ hai, trừ các động từ 2 âm tiết kết thúc bằng "er" và "en".

**Ví dụ:**

Động từ 2 âm tiết (2-syllable verbs)	Ngoại lệ Exceptions
rePEAT /ri'pi:t/ alLOW /ə'laʊ/ enJOY /in'dʒɔi/	ANswer/'ɑ:nsə/ OFfer/'ɔfə/ LISten/'lɪsn/

- Một số từ 2 âm tiết vừa là động từ, vừa là danh từ. Khi là danh từ, trọng âm được nhấn vào âm tiết thứ nhất. Khi là động từ, trọng âm được nhấn vào âm tiết thứ 2.

Tuy nhiên, có một số ngoại lệ đối với nguyên tắc này.

**Ví dụ:**

Động từ (Verbs)	Danh từ (Nouns)	Exceptions (Verbs and Nouns)
reCORD	REcord	ANswer
conTRAST	CONtrast	PROMise
exPORT	EXport	TRAVel
deSERT	DEsert	Visit
obJECT	OBject	reply
preSENT	PREsent	PICTure
proDUCE	PROduce	
reBEL	REbeL	
proTEST	PROtest	

## 2. Một số quy tắc nhấn trọng âm đối với các từ ghép (compound words). Từ ghép là từ được tạo thành bằng cách ghép 2 từ đơn với nhau.

- Hầu hết các danh từ ghép (compound nouns) 2 âm tiết đều có trọng âm chính rơi vào âm tiết thứ nhất.

**Ví dụ:**

Danh từ ghép (Compound Nouns)	
BLACKboard	NOTEbook
ARMchair	TOOTHpaste
BOOKcase	MAILbox
RAILway	KEYboard
HIGHway	PLAYground
FOOTball	HOTdog

- Hầu hết các tính từ ghép (compound adjectives) có phần thứ nhất là tính từ hoặc trạng từ thì trọng âm chính rơi vào phần thứ hai.

Nhiều tính từ ghép bắt đầu bằng danh từ, có trọng âm rơi vào phần thứ nhất.

**Ví dụ:**

Trọng âm rơi vào phần thứ 2	Trọng âm rơi vào phần thứ 1
old-Fashioned	HOMEsick
well-DRESS	HEART-broken

good-LOOKING fast-CHANGING	LOVEsick
-------------------------------	----------

- Hầu hết các **động từ ghép** (compound verbs) có trọng âm chính rơi vào phần thứ 2.

Ví dụ

Động từ ghép (compound verbs)	
overFLOW	underSTATE
underSTAND	overWEIGH

**3. Một số trường hợp mà trọng âm của từ phái sinh từ một từ gốc có trọng âm giống trọng âm của từ gốc.**

- Một số từ có 2 âm tiết được tạo ra từ một từ gốc 1 âm tiết.

Ví dụ:

art      ˌɑːtɪst  
drive     ˈdraɪvə  
move     ˈriːmʊv  
come     ˈbiːkʌm

Với những từ này, trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết của từ gốc

art      ˌɑːTɪst  
drive     ˌdraɪVə  
move     ˌriːmʊV  
come     ˌbiːkʌM

**4. Một số tiền tố và hậu tố mà trọng âm của từ gốc không bị thay đổi khi được ghép với chúng, dù từ mới được tạo ra là từ hai âm tiết hay một từ dài có từ ba âm tiết trở lên.**

Trọng âm của từ gốc không bị thay đổi khi ghép với tiền tố và hậu tố sau :

Rules	Examples
Trọng âm của một từ không bị thay đổi khi ghép với các tiền tố "under", "in", "im" và "un"	Underpay, unemPLOYed, imPOSSible
Trọng âm của từ không bị thay đổi khi ghép với các hậu tố "able", "al", "er", "or", "ful", "ing", "ise", "ize", "ish", "less", "ly", "ment", "ness", và "ship", "ed"	DRINKable, Musical, emPLOYment, Colourful, CHILDhood, RUNning, CIVilise, CHILDisH, TASTEless, FRIENDly, HAPpiness, emPLOYment, FRIENDship, emPLOYed

Tuy nhiên, khi ta chuyển loại từ, thì một số hậu tố hay đuôi từ lại chuyển trọng âm của từ sang một âm tiết khác. Dưới đây là một số quy tắc về chuyển trọng âm trong các từ dài.

Rules	Examples
- Những từ kết thúc bằng cụm chữ "ic", "ical" "ics" và "sion", "tion", "tional" và "cian" thường có trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết trước nó.	EDucateˌedʊkəˈteɪʃən MUSicˈmjuːʃiən eLECtricˌlecˈtriːʃiən DECorateˌdekoˈreɪʃən InVITeˌɪnvɪˈteɪʃən eCOMomicˌekoˈnɒmɪk
- Những từ kết thúc bằng "-ity", "-aphy", "-logy" có trọng âm rơi vào âm tiết trước nó.	PUBLICˌpʌblɪˈsɪti PHOTographˌfəʊˈtɒɡrəfi NATIONALˌnəʃənəlɪti CLIMATEˌklaɪˈmɪtɒlədʒi

## • PRACTICES

*Mark the letter A, B, C, or D on your answer sheet to indicate the word that differs from the rest in the position of the main stress in each of the following questions.*



1. A. produce B. product C. actress D. dentist
2. A. pollute B. supply C. provide D. healthy
3. A. compare B. single C. include D. consult
4. A. prepare B. section C. problem D. reason
5. A. admit B. account C. conquer D. decree
6. A. address B. involve C. respect D. access
7. A. language B. involve C. foreign D. succeed
8. A. poison B. timber C. immense D. contour
9. A. private B. regard C. approach D. permit
10. A. release B. cancer C. human D. surgeon
11. A. focus B. notice C. absorb D. interest
12. A. gather B. protect C. suggest D. reform
13. A. legal B. custom C. reverse D. travel
14. A. special B. feeling C. secure D. caring
15. A. possible B. annoying C. together D. attempting
16. A. interesting B. personal C. relation D. hospital
17. A. confidence B. decision C. important D. another
18. A. hurry B. rushes C. secret D. collect
19. A. member B. repair C. frankly D. closely
20. A. reversed B. prepared C. crowded D. discussed
21. A. daughter B. although C. attempt D. prepare
22. A. photograph B. expensive C. anyway D. holiday
23. A. grandfather B. progressive C. supportive D. recently
24. A. different B. family C. importance D. motorbike
25. A. about B. study C. middle D. busy
26. A. mischievous B. obedient C. solution D. supportive
27. A. join B. frankly C. attempt D. pressure
28. A. begin B. happen C. become D. release
29. A. combine B. weaken C. occur D. emit
30. A. carriage B. custom C. decree D. success
31. A. without B. doctor C. pasture D. cover
32. A. decide B. expect C. extra D. believe
33. A. extreme B. able C. poison D. drainage
34. A. goodbye B. except C. themselves D. gesture
35. A. nature B. future C. picture D. manure
36. A. fellow B. follow C. yellow D. allow
37. A. intend B. district C. traffic D. center
38. A. produce B. product C. nation D. chemist
39. A. spoken B. people C. master D. regard
40. A. friendly B. guidance C. expect D. wonder
41. A. vapor B. carry C. garbage D. exhaust
42. A. welfare B. resource C. surgeon D. timber
43. A. conserve B. conscious C. preserve D. prevent
44. A. magic B. weaken C. happen D. begin
45. A. enrich B. enter C. enlarge D. enclose

46. A. costume B. learning C. engine D. device  
 47. A. biologist B. generally C. obedient D. mischievousness  
 48. A. support B. obey C. busy D. caring  
 49. A. solution B. confidence C. supportive D. develop  
 50. A. pressure B. willing C. household D. ensure  
 51. A. project B. garbage C. active D. enjoy  
 52. A. hospital B. afternoon C. suitable D. family  
 53. A. begin B. visit C. consist D. include  
 54. A. cancer B. treatment C. tissue D. disease  
 55. A. begin B. happen C. become D. decree  
 56. A. decree B. discard C. dispose D. delete  
 57. A. without B. tractor C. future D. actor  
 58. A. decree B. carriage C. conquer D. follow  
 59. A. forest B. supply C. garbage D. oxide  
 60. A. translate B. transform C. transact D. tragedy

## CHAPTER IV : COMMUNICATION SKILLS

### • THEORY

#### CÁC TÌNH HUỐNG GIAO TIẾP THƯỜNG GẶP

##### 1. Lời mời và cách đáp lại lời mời

Tình huống mẫu	Đồng ý	Từ chối
<p>- <b>Would you like</b> a cup of coffee? (Bạn có muốn một tách cà phê không?)</p> <p>- <b>Would you like to come</b> to my party this Saturday? (Bạn có muốn tới bữa tiệc của mình thứ Bảy tuần này không?)</p> <p>- <b>Would you care to join</b> us? (Bạn muốn tham gia cùng chúng tôi không?)</p> <p>- <b>Do you want to go</b> out with me tonight? (Bạn có muốn đi chơi cùng mình tối nay không?)</p> <p>- <b>Do you feel like going</b> for a walk? (Bạn có muốn đi dạo không?)</p>	<p>- Yes, please. (Vâng, cảm ơn).</p> <p>- I'd love to, thanks. (Mình rất hân hạnh, cảm ơn).</p> <p>- That's very kind of you, thanks. - It's very nice of you, thanks. (Bạn thật tốt, cảm ơn).</p> <p>- That sounds lovely, thanks. (Nghe thú vị đó, cảm ơn).</p> <p>- Thank you for your kind invitation. (Cảm ơn vì lời mời của bạn).</p> <p>- I'll be glad to do so. (Tôi rất vui được làm thế).</p> <p>- Thanks, I'd like that very much. (Cảm ơn nhé, tôi thích như vậy lắm).</p> <p>- That's a great idea. (Thật là ý tưởng tuyệt vời).</p> <p>- Thanks for inviting me. (Cảm ơn đã mời tôi).</p> <p>- Many thanks for your kind invitation. I'll join you. (Cảm</p>	<p>- I'm sorry to refuse your invitation. (Tôi rất tiếc phải từ chối lời mời của bạn).</p> <p>- I can't, sorry. I have to work. (Tôi không thể, xin lỗi nhé. Tôi có việc rồi).</p> <p>- Thanks for your invitation but I'm busy now. (Cảm ơn bạn đã mời nhưng giờ tôi bận rồi).</p> <p>- I'm afraid I won't be able to come. (Tôi e là không thể tới được).</p> <p>- I'm afraid I am busy tomorrow. (Tôi e là ngày mai tôi bận rồi).</p> <p>- Sorry, I'd love to but I have an appointment. (Xin lỗi nha, tôi rất thích nhưng tôi có cuộc hẹn rồi).</p> <p>- I really don't think I can, sorry. (Mình nghĩ là mình không thể rồi).</p>

	<p>on rất nhiều vì lời mời. Tôi sẽ tới).</p> <p>- With pleasure! (Rất sẵn lòng).</p> <p>- Sure. (Chắc chắn rồi).</p> <p>- Yeah, why not! (Vâng, sao lại không nhỉ).</p> <p>- Sounds good. (Nghe thú vị đấy).</p>	<p>Xin lỗi nha).</p> <p>- That's very kind of you, but I can't accept your invitation. (Bạn thật tốt nhưng mình lại không nhận lời được rồi).</p>
--	--	---

## 2. Lời yêu cầu, đề nghị và cách đáp lại

### 2.1. Hỏi xin phép làm gì và cách đáp lại

Tình huống mẫu	Đồng ý	Từ chối
<p>- <b>Can I</b> borrow your books? (Mình có thể mượn những cuốn sách của bạn không?)</p> <p>- <b>Could I</b> have some cake? (Con có thể ăn một chút bánh không?)</p> <p>- <b>Could I possibly</b> sit here? (Tôi có thể ngồi ở đây không?)</p> <p>- <b>Is it OK/ all right if I</b> open the window? (Có được không nếu tôi mở cửa sổ ra?)</p>	<p>- Yes, sure. / Yes, of course. (Chắc chắn là được chứ.)</p> <p>- Yes, that' fine. (Được mà).</p> <p>- Certainly. (Chắc chắn rồi)</p> <p>- Of course, you can. (Chắc chắn là có thể rồi).</p>	<p>- Well, I'm afraid...(+ lý do) (Mình e là.....)</p> <p>- Well, the problem is... (Ồ, vấn đề là....)</p>
<p>- <b>Do you mind if I</b> turn on the TV? (Bạn có phiền không nếu tôi bật ti vi lên?)</p>	<p>- No, not at all. (Không, không sao đâu).</p> <p>- No, of course not. (Tất nhiên là không rồi).</p>	<p>- Sorry, but... (Xin lỗi nhưng.....)</p>
<p>- <b>May I</b> help you? (Mình có thể giúp bạn không?)</p>	<p>-Yes, please. (Vâng. Làm ơn).</p>	<p>- Thank you. I'll do it. (Cảm ơn. Mình sẽ tự làm).</p>
<p>- <b>Can I</b> have the bill? (Cho tôi cái hóa đơn được không?)</p>	<p>- Just a moment/ minute. (Chờ một phút ạ).</p>	
<p>- <b>Can I</b> bring my friends to the party? (Mình có thể đưa bạn tới bữa tiệc cùng không?)</p>	<p>- The more the merrier. (Càng đông càng vui).</p>	

### 2.2. Lời đề nghị, yêu cầu và cách đáp lại

Tình huống mẫu	Đồng ý	Từ chối
<p>- <b>Can you</b> help me with this exercise? (Bạn có thể giúp tôi bài tập này không?)</p> <p>- <b>Could you</b> close the door ? (Bạn có thể đóng cửa vào không?)</p> <p>- <b>Will you</b> help me give this</p>	<p>Yes, sure.</p> <p>Yes, of course.</p> <p>Certainly. (Tất nhiên là được rồi).</p> <p>No, not at all.</p> <p>Of course not. (Tất nhiên là không rồi).</p>	<p>Well, I'm afraid + (lý do).</p> <p>Well, the problem is... (Ồ, mình e là...)</p> <p>(Ồ, vấn đề là...)</p> <p>Sorry, but.... (Xin lỗi, nhưng.....)</p>

<p>letter to him? (Bạn sẽ giúp tôi đưa lá thư này cho anh ấy chứ?)</p> <p>- <b>Would you</b> make dinner today? (Bạn sẽ nấu bữa tối nay nhé?)</p> <p>- <b>Do you mind</b> turning off the lights before going out? (Bạn có thể tắt hết điện trước khi ra khỏi nhà không?)</p> <p><b>Would you mind</b> cleaning the house? (Anh có thể lau nhà được không?)</p>		
---	--	--

### 3. Lời gợi ý và cách đáp lại

Tình huống mẫu	Đồng ý	Từ chối
<p>- <b>Let's go out for</b> lunch. (Cùng ra ngoài ăn trưa đi.)</p> <p>- <b>What about</b> going to the beach this summer? (Thế đi tới bãi biển mùa hè này thì sao?)</p> <p>- <b>How about</b> cooking at home? (Thế thì nấu cơm ở nhà nhé?)</p> <p>- <b>Why don't we</b> eat some fruit now? (Sao chúng ta không ăn một ít trái cây nhỉ?)</p> <p>- <b>Couldn't we</b> go to the park? (Chúng ta có thể tới công viên không?)</p> <p>- <b>Shall we</b> go by train? (Hãy cùng đi tàu nhé?)</p> <p>- <b>Does it matter if</b> we leave a bit earlier? (Có sao không nếu chúng ta rời đi sớm hơn?)</p>	<p>- Yes, I'd love to. /Yes, I'd like to. (Minh rất thích).</p> <p>- What a good idea! (Đúng là ý tưởng hay).</p> <p>- Why not? (Sao lại không nhỉ)</p> <p>- Yes, that sounds like a great idea. (Được, nghe có vẻ là ý kiến hay đấy).</p> <p>- Yes, that's not a bad idea. (Được, ý tưởng không tồi).</p> <p>- Count me in too. (Minh tham gia cùng nhé)</p> <p>- Yes, let's. (Được, cùng làm nhé.)</p> <p>- It sounds good to me/ Sounds good to me. (Nghe hay đó).</p> <p>- I'm up for it. (Minh đồng ý nha).</p> <p>- Let's do that. (Quyết định vậy đi).</p> <p>- I can't agree more. (Đồng ý tuyệt đối).</p>	<p>- No, let's not. (Không, đừng làm thế).</p> <p>- Well, I'd rather/ I prefer... (Ồ, mình thích... hơn)</p> <p>- I don't feel like it. (Minh thấy không thích lắm).</p> <p>- No, thanks. (Không cảm ơn).</p> <p>- I'm not sure. (Minh cũng không chắc).</p> <p>- I don't think that's a good idea. (Tớ không nghĩ đó là ý hay đâu).</p> <p>- We had better not... (Tốt nhất là ta không nên...)</p> <p>- We had better/ we should ... (chúng ta nên).</p>

### 4. Lời xin lỗi và cách đáp lại:

Tình huống mẫu	Chấp nhận lời xin lỗi
Sorry, I'm late.	- It doesn't matter (Chuyện đó không có gì quan trọng đâu).

(Xin lỗi mình đến muộn).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Don't apologize (Không cần phải xin lỗi đâu).</li> <li>- That's all right, (Ổn thôi).</li> <li>- It's alright. (Ổn thôi).</li> <li>- It's okay. (Không sao).</li> <li>- Don't mention it. (Không sao đâu).</li> <li>- Never mind. (Đừng bận tâm).</li> <li>- No worries. (Đừng lo gì nhé).</li> <li>- I quite understand. (Tôi thông cảm mà/ Tôi hiểu mà).</li> </ul>
--------------------------	--

### 5. Lời cảm ơn và cách đáp lại

Tình huống mẫu	Cách đáp lại
<b>Thank you</b> for helping me. (Cảm ơn vì đã giúp mình).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- That's all right! (Không có gì cả đâu!)</li> <li>- You're welcome. (Không có gì).</li> <li>- Don't mention it. (Đừng nhắc đến việc đó./không có gì đáng phải bận tâm đâu).</li> <li>- Not at all. (Không có gì cả đâu!)</li> <li>- It's nothing. (Không có gì).</li> <li>- My pleasure. (Giúp đỡ anh/chị là niềm vinh hạnh cho tôi).</li> </ul>

### 6. Khi đưa ý kiến và cách đáp lại

#### Tình huống mẫu:

- **I think we should** start with the observation. (Mình nghĩ chúng ta nên bắt đầu từ việc quan sát).
- **In my opinion**, this should be kept confidential! (Theo tôi, việc này nên được giữ bí mật).

Đồng ý	Đồng ý một phần	Phản đối
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- I completely/ absolutely agree with you. (Tôi hoàn toàn đồng ý với bạn).</li> <li>- There is no doubt about it that... (Hoàn toàn không có nghi ngờ gì về điều đó).</li> <li>- I can't/couldn't agree (with you) more. (Tôi không thể đồng ý hơn được nữa).</li> <li>- I completely agree. (Tôi hoàn toàn đồng ý).</li> <li>- That's so true. (Điều đó đúng đấy).</li> <li>- Absolutely. (Hoàn toàn là như vậy).</li> <li>- Exactly. (Chính xác).</li> <li>- Of course. (Tất nhiên).</li> <li>- You're absolutely right. (Bạn hoàn toàn đúng).</li> <li>- Yes, I agree. (Vâng, tôi đồng ý).</li> <li>- I think so too. (Tôi cũng nghĩ vậy).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- I agree up to a point, but... (Tôi đồng ý một mặt với việc này, nhưng...)</li> <li>- That's true but... (Điều đó đúng, nhưng...)</li> <li>- You could be right. (Có thể bạn đúng...)</li> <li>- It sounds interesting, but... (Điều đó nghe thú vị, nhưng...)</li> <li>- I see your point, but... (Tôi hiểu quan điểm của anh nhưng...)</li> <li>- That's partly true, but... (Điều đó đúng một phần, nhưng...)</li> <li>- I can agree with that only with reservations. (Tôi chỉ có thể đồng ý với anh một cách hạn chế)</li> <li>- That seems obvious, but... (Điều đó có vẻ hiển nhiên, nhưng).</li> <li>- That is not necessarily so. (Cái đó cũng không cần thiết phải như</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- I totally disagree. (Tôi hoàn toàn phản đối).</li> <li>- I don't think so! (Mình không nghĩ thế).</li> <li>- No way (Không đời nào!)</li> <li>- I'm afraid, I can't agree with you. (Tôi e là tôi không thể đồng tình với bạn).</li> <li>- To be honest,... (Thành thực mà nói thì)</li> <li>- On the contrary,... (Ngược lại...)</li> <li>- I don't agree with you. (Tôi không đồng ý với anh).</li> <li>- I'm sorry, but I disagree. (Rất tiếc nhưng tôi không đồng ý).</li> <li>- It's out of question. (Điều đó là không thể).</li> <li>- That's different. (Cái đó khác).</li> <li>- However,... (Tuy nhiên)</li> </ul>

<p>- That's a good idea. (Đó là một ý kiến hay).</p> <p>- I don't think so either. (Tôi cũng không nghĩ vậy - đồng ý với việc ai phản đối điều gì)</p> <p>- So do I. (Tôi cũng vậy).</p> <p>- I'd go along with that. (Tôi thuận theo điều đó).</p> <p>- That's true. (Đúng đấy).</p> <p>- Neither do I. (Tôi cũng không nghĩ vậy - đồng ý với việc ai phản đối điều gì).</p> <p>- I agree with you entirely. (Tôi hoàn toàn đồng ý với bạn).</p> <p>- That's just what I was thinking. (Đó cũng là điều tôi đang nghĩ).</p> <p>- You can say that again!</p>	<p>vậy).</p> <p>- It is not as simple as it seems. (Nó không đơn giản như vậy đâu).</p> <p>- I agree with you in principle, but... (Nói chung, tôi đồng ý với bạn, nhưng...)</p> <p>- I agree with you in part, but... (Tôi một phần đồng ý với bạn, nhưng).</p> <p>- Well, you could be right. (ừm, bạn có thể đã đúng).</p>	<p>- That's not entirely true. (Cái đó hoàn toàn không đúng)</p> <p>- Yes, but don't you think... (Vâng, nhưng sao bạn không nghĩ là...)</p> <p>- That's not the same thing at all. (Không phải lúc nào cũng như vậy).</p> <p>- I'm not so sure about that. (Tôi không chắc về điều đó).</p> <p>- The problem is that... (Vấn đề là...)</p> <p>- I (very much) doubt whether... (Tôi nghi ngờ rất nhiều liệu rằng).</p>
---	---	---

### 7. Một số tình huống khác

Tình huống mẫu	Cách đáp lại
<p><b>Khi gặp ai đó lần đầu tiên:</b></p> <p>- Hello. Nice to meet you! (Xin chào, rất vui được gặp bạn).</p>	<p>- Nice/ Glad to meet you, too. (Mình cũng rất vui khi được gặp bạn).</p> <p>- How do you do? (Hân hạnh được làm quen).</p>
<p><b>Khi gặp ai đó và chúc:</b></p> <p>- Have a nice day! (Chúc một ngày tốt lành!)</p>	<p>- You too.</p> <p>- The same to you!</p> <p>- Thank you, the same to you.</p> <p>- You do the same! (Cảm ơn. Bạn cũng vậy nhé!)</p>
<p><b>Khi ai đó khen/ chúc mừng điều gì:</b></p> <p>- What a nice car! (Xe đẹp quá)</p> <p>- You look so lovely! (Trông bạn rất đáng yêu!)</p> <p>- I appreciate your contribution! (Tôi đánh giá cao đóng góp của anh!)</p> <p>- Congratulations! (Xin chúc mừng).</p>	<p>- I'm glad you like it. (Mình vui khi bạn thích nó).</p> <p>- I'm glad you think so. (Mình vui khi bạn nghĩ vậy).</p> <p>- Thank you. (Cảm ơn nhé).</p> <p>- It' (very) nice of you to say so. (Bạn thật tốt khi nói như vậy)-</p> <p>- Thank you (very much) for saying so. (Cảm ơn bạn vì đã nói vậy).</p>
<p><b>Trước khi ăn:</b></p> <p>- Bon appetite! (Chúc ngon miệng)</p>	<p>- Bon appetite!</p> <p>- Enjoy your meal! (Chúc ngon miệng).</p>
<p><b>Khi ai đó nhờ đưa vật gì:</b></p> <p>- Could you please pass me the</p>	<p>- Here you are! (Của bạn đây).</p>

<p>salt? (Bạn có thể đưa cho tôi lọ muối không?)</p>	
<p><b>Khi được tặng quà</b></p>	<p>- That's very kind (nice/thoughtful) of you! (Bạn thật tốt/ chu đáo).</p>
<p><b>Khi người bán hàng hỏi:</b> - Do you need anything else?</p>	<p>- That's all. Thank you! (Vây là đủ rồi. Xin cảm ơn).</p>
<p><b>Khi ai đó thông báo tin vui:</b> - I've passed my driving exam. (Mình đã đỗ kỳ thi lái xe.)</p>	<p>- That's great. Congratulations! (Tuyệt quá. Chúc mừng nhé).</p>
<p><b>Khi ai đó hỏi:</b> - How are you? (Bạn thế nào?)</p>	<p><b>Trạng thái rất tốt:</b> - Very well, thanks. (And you?) <i>Rất tuyệt, cảm ơn cậu. (Còn cậu?)</i> - Pretty fair. (Rất tuyệt). - I'm on the top of the world. (Mình đang rất sung sướng đây). - Can't complain. (Không chê vào đâu được).</p> <p><b>Trạng thái bình thường, không có gì đặc biệt:</b> - I'm fine/ good/ great, thanks/ So so, thanks/ I'm OK, thanks. (Tôi ổn, cảm ơn cậu). - I'm alright. (Tôi bình thường).</p> <p><b>Trạng thái không tốt lắm:</b> - Really bad. (Rất tệ). - I'm not on a good mood. (Không được tốt lắm).</p>
<p><b>Khi ai đó phàn nàn về điều gì</b></p>	<p><b>Đáp lại một cách tích cực:</b> - I'm so sorry, but this will never occur / happen again. (Tôi xin lỗi, chuyện này sẽ không bao giờ lặp lại nữa). - I'm sorry, we promise never to make the same mistake again. (Tôi xin lỗi, chúng tôi hứa sẽ không mắc lại lỗi đó nữa). - I'm really sorry; we'll do our utmost/best not to do the same mistake again. (Chúng tôi thành thật xin lỗi. Chúng tôi sẽ cố gắng để không lặp lại lỗi đó).</p> <p><b>Đáp lại một cách tiêu cực:</b> - Sorry, there is nothing we can do about it. (Xin lỗi. Chúng tôi không thể làm gì với điều đó). - I'm afraid, there isn't much we can do about it. (Tôi rất tiếc. Chúng tôi không thể làm gì nhiều hơn). - We are sorry but the food is just alright.</p>

• PRACTICES

Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the sentence that best completes each of the following exchanges.

1. David is talking to Lucy about her painting.

- David: "What a beautiful painting!"

- Lucy: " \_\_\_\_\_ "

- A. No problem                      B. It's on the wall  
C. I'm glad you like it              D. You're welcome.
2. Peter and Dane are talking about environmental protection.  
- Peter: "We should limit the use of plastic bags."  
- Dane: "\_\_\_\_\_. We can use paper bags instead."  
A. I completely agree.              B. It's not true.  
C. I don't quite agree              D. You're wrong.
3. David is apologising to his teacher for being late.  
- David: "Sorry I'm late! The traffic is so heavy."  
- Teacher: "\_\_\_\_\_. Come in and sit down."  
A. You're so kind    B. It's alright    C. Me neither    D. Thank you
4. Peter and Mary are talking about social networks.  
- Peter: "Using social networks may have negative effects on students."  
- Mary: "\_\_\_\_\_. It distracts them from their studies."  
A. I'm not sure about that    B. I don't quite agree  
C. You're wrong              D. That's quite true
5. Linda and Peter are talking about safe driving.  
- Linda: "I think drink-driving should be severely punished."  
- Peter: "\_\_\_\_\_. It may cause accidents or even deaths."  
A. You must be kidding    B. I don't think so  
C. I don't understand what you mean    D. I absolutely agree with you
6. A porter is talking to Mary in the hotel lobby.  
- Porter: "May I help you with your suitcase?"  
- Mary: "\_\_\_\_\_"  
A. What a shame    B. Me too    C. You're welcome    D. Yes, please
7. John is having dinner at Linda's house.  
- John: "This roast beef is so delicious."  
- Linda: "\_\_\_\_\_"  
A. sure. I'd love to              B. I'm glad you like it.  
C. No, don't worry.              D. I don't either.
8. Joana and David, two lecturers, are talking about library skills.  
- Joana: "I think we should teach our students how to use the library."  
- David: "\_\_\_\_\_"  
A. You're absolutely wrong    B. You must be kidding  
C. I couldn't agree with you more    D. That's not a good idea
9. A shop assistant is talking to a customer.  
- Shop assistant: "Do you need anything else?"  
- Customer: "\_\_\_\_\_"  
A. That's all. Thanks    B. Good job!    C. With pleasure    D. You're welcome
10. Ann and Peter are talking about housework.  
- Ann: "I think children should be paid for doing the housework."  
- Peter: "\_\_\_\_\_. It's their duty in the family."  
A. That's what I think              B. You're exactly right  
C. There's no doubt about it    D. I don't think so
11. Ken and Tom are high-school students. They are discussing where their study group will meet.



- Ken: "Where is our study group going to meet next weekend?"

- Tom: "\_\_\_\_\_."

- A. Studying in a group is great fun.      B. We are too busy on weekdays.  
C. Why don't you look at the atlas?      D. The library would be best.

**12.** Mike and Lane are university students. They are talking about Lane's upcoming high-school reunion.

- Mike: "So, you have your fifth high-school reunion coming up?"

- Lane: "

- A. Oh, the school reunion was wonderful.      B. No. You're in no mood for the event.  
C. The food at the reunion was excellent.      D. Yeah. I'm really looking forward to it.

**13.** A waiter in a restaurant is talking to a customer who has just finished his meal there.

- Waiter: "Here's your bill, sir."

- Customer: "\_\_\_\_\_"

- A. Don't mention it.      B. Can I pay by credit card?  
C. What do you have?      D. You're welcome.

**14.** Two close friends Tom and Kyle are talking about Kyle's upcoming birthday.

- Tom: "Can I bring a friend to your birthday party?"

- Kyle: "\_\_\_\_\_"

- A. It's my honour.      B. Let's do it then.      C. The more the merrier.      D. That's right.

**15.** Two friends Diana and Anne are talking about Anne's new blouse.

- Diana: "That blouse suits you perfectly, Anne."

- Anne: "\_\_\_\_\_".

- A. Never mind.      B. Don't mention it.      C. Thank you.      D. You're welcome.

**16.** Mary is talking to a porter in the hotel lobby.

- Porter: "Shall I help you with your suitcase?"

- Mary: "\_\_\_\_\_"

- A. Not a chance.      B. That's very kind of you.  
C. I can't agree more.      D. What a pity!

**17.** Susan accidentally stepped on Denise's foot.

- Susan: "Oops! I'm sorry, Denise."

- Denise: "\_\_\_\_\_"

- A. You shouldn't do that.      B. It's alright.  
C. You are welcome.      D. It's nonsense.

**18.** Hana and Jenifer are talking about a book they have just read.

- Hana: "The book is really interesting and educational."

- Jenifer: "\_\_\_\_\_"

- A. I'd love it.      B. That's nice of you to say so.  
C. I couldn't agree more.      D. Don't mention it.

**19.** Jolie and Tom are meeting at the supermarket.

- Jolie: "Hi, Tom. How are you doing?"

- Tom: "\_\_\_\_\_. How about you?"

- A. I'm waiting for my sister      B. I'm shopping for food  
C. I'm doing nothing      D. I'm doing well

**20.** Maria and Alex are talking about the environment.

- Maria: "Our environment is getting more and more polluted. Do you think so?"

- Alex: "\_\_\_\_\_. It's really worrying."  
A. I'll think about that      B. I don't agree  
C. I don't think so              D. I can't agree more
21. Liz is telling Andrew about her first novel.  
- Liz: "Guess what? My first novel has just been published."  
- Andrew: "\_\_\_\_\_"  
A. It's my pleasure.              B. Congratulations!  
C. Better luck next time!      D. It's very kind of you.
22. Jenny and her teacher are meeting at the bus stop.  
- Jenny: "Good afternoon, Miss. How are you?"  
- Teacher: "\_\_\_\_\_. And you?"  
A. I'm going home      B. I'm leaving now      C. I'm thirty years old      D. Fine, thank you
23. Linda is thanking Daniel for his birthday present.  
- Linda: "Thanks for the book. I've been looking for it for months."  
- Daniel: "\_\_\_\_\_"  
A. You can say that again      B. Thank you for looking for it  
C. I like reading books      D. I'm glad you like it
24. David and his teacher are meeting at the school gate.  
- David: "Good morning, Mr Deakin. How are you?"  
- Mr Deakin: "\_\_\_\_\_. And you?"  
A. I'm busy now              B. I'm fine. Thank you  
C. I'm going home              D. I'm having a class now
25. Mrs Smith and her students are visiting the zoo.  
- Mike: "Can I feed the gorilla, Mrs Smith?"  
- Mrs Smith: "\_\_\_\_\_. The sign says 'No feeding the animals'."  
A. Of course you can              B. I don't think it works  
C. I'm sure about that              D. I'm afraid not
26. Andrew is talking to a waiter in a restaurant.  
- Andrew: "Can I have the bill, please?"  
- Waiter: "\_\_\_\_\_"  
A. You are very kind              B. Just a minute, please  
C. My pleasure              D. You're exactly right
27. Silas is talking to his roommate, Salah, about the Olympic Games.  
- Silas: "Do you think our country can host the Olympic Games some day in the future?"  
- Salah: "\_\_\_\_\_. We can't afford such a big event."  
A. You can say that again      B. I can't agree with you more  
C. Yes, you're right              D. No, I don't think so
28. Laura is telling Bob about her exam results.  
- Laura: "\_\_\_\_\_"  
- Bob: "That's great. Congratulations!"  
A. I hope I'll pass the exam tomorrow.      B. I've passed the exam with an A.  
C. I'll get the exam results tomorrow.      D. I didn't do well in the exam.
29. Nancy and James are talking about their school days.  
- Nancy: "I think school days are the best time of our lives."  
- James: "\_\_\_\_\_. We had sweet memories together then."

A. I'm afraid so    B. Absolutely.    C. That's nonsense    D. I doubt it

30. John and Mike are talking about Mike's new car.

- John: "\_\_\_\_\_"

- Mike: "Thanks. I'm glad to hear that."

A. Where did you buy your car?    B. What a nice car!

C. Your car is new, isn't it?    D. My car is very expensive.

31. Two students are talking about the school curriculum.

- Ted: "Swimming should be made part of the school curriculum."

- Kate: "\_\_\_\_\_. It is an essential life skill."

A. Oh, that's a problem.    B. I can't agree with you more.

C. Not at all    D. You can make it.

32. Jane is talking to Mike, who has just helped her with her luggage.

- Jane: "\_\_\_\_\_"

- Mike: "It's my pleasure."

A. It's too heavy.    B. It's not my duty.

C. Thanks a lot, indeed.    D. Welcome back.

33. Adam and Janet are at the school canteen.

- Adam: "\_\_\_\_\_"

- Janet: "Yes, please."

A. Do you mind if I sit here?    B. Can you pass me the salt, please?

C. It's a bit hot in here, isn't it?    D. Would you like a cup of coffee?

34. Jenny and Jimmy are talking about university education.

- Jenny: "I think having a university degree is the only way to succeed in life."

- Jimmy: "\_\_\_\_\_. There are successful people without a degree."

A. That's life    B. That's all right

C. I don't quite agree    D. I can't agree more

35. John was in Hanoi and wanted to send a parcel to his parents. He asked a local passer-by the way to the post-office.

- John: "Can you show me the way to the nearest post office, please?"

- Passer-by: "\_\_\_\_\_"

A. Not way, sorry.    B. Just round the corner over there.

C. Look it up in a dictionary!    D. There's no traffic near here.

36. Lora has just bought a new skirt that she likes very much.

- Jane: "You look great in that red skirt, Lora!"

- Lora: "\_\_\_\_\_"

A. No, I don't think so.    B. Oh, you don't like it, do you?

C. Thanks, I bought it at Macy's.    D. Thanks, my mum bought it.

37. John and Mary are talking about what to do after class.

- John: "\_\_\_\_\_ - Mary: "Yes, I'd love to."

A. Do you often have time for a drink after class?

B. Would you like to have a drink after class?

C. Do you often go out for a drink after class?

D. Would you like tea or coffee after class?

38. Paul and Daisy are discussing life in the future.

- Paul: "I believe space travel will become more affordable for many people in the future."

- Daisy: " \_\_\_\_\_ ."

- A. It doesn't matter at all.      B. There's no doubt about that.  
C. It is very kind of you to say so.      D. I am sorry to hear that.

**39.** Jack is inviting Mary to his party.

- Jack: "Would you like to come to my party this weekend?"

- Mary: " \_\_\_\_\_ ."

- A. Yes, I'd love to      B. No, don't worry  
C. You're welcome      D. I'm afraid so

**40.** Laura and Mitchell are talking about their school curriculum.

- Laura: "I think Art should be a compulsory subject."

- Mitchell: " \_\_\_\_\_ . Art helps develop creativity."

- A. I quite agree      B. You must be kidding  
C. I'm of the opposite opinion      D. I don't think that's a good idea

# CHAPTER V : COMPREHENSIVE READING

## • THEORY

### CÁC DẠNG BÀI KIỂM TRA KỸ NĂNG ĐỌC HIỆU

Sau đây là số dạng bài kiểm tra đọc hiểu phổ biến:

- Đọc đoạn văn hay đoạn hội thoại và trả lời câu hỏi.
- Đọc và tìm một từ phù hợp văn cảnh điền vào chỗ trống (gap-filling).
- Đọc các câu cho sẵn và sắp xếp chúng thành bài hội thoại hợp lý.
- Đọc và tìm ý chính của đoạn văn.
- Đọc đoạn văn, đoạn hội thoại và sắp xếp các thứ tự thông tin.
- Đọc đoạn văn, đoạn hội thoại và đặt câu hỏi với từ gợi ý và trả lời.
- Đọc đoạn văn, đoạn hội thoại và điền thông tin còn khuyết theo bản tóm tắt.
- Đọc đoạn văn, đoạn hội thoại và hoàn thành các câu cho sẵn hay xác định các câu đúng (TRUE) hay Sai (FALSE) hay Không chứa thông tin (NO INFORMATION) từ bài đọc
- Đọc đoạn văn, đoạn hội thoại và tìm hay giải thích nghĩa của từ trong văn cảnh.
- Đọc đoạn văn và chọn đáp án đúng để trả lời từng câu hỏi (multiple-choice)
- Đọc một đoạn văn dài và chú ý các thông tin chi tiết, các quan điểm, thái độ và nối các sự lựa chọn phù hợp cho từng đoạn văn ngắn (multiple-matching)

### MỘT SỐ THỦ THUẬT LÀM BÀI THI ĐỌC HIỆU

Theo các chuyên gia ngôn ngữ, để làm tốt bài thi đọc hiểu cần đọc trước câu hỏi để định hướng nội dung cần tìm trong bài đọc hiểu: Thí sinh nên tập trung đọc những thông tin cần cho câu trả lời, chứ không nên cố gắng đọc và hiểu hết tất cả các từ trong đoạn văn, đọc mà không có định hướng gì chiếm rất nhiều thời gian và gây ra sự khó hiểu. Tùy theo các dạng bài kiểm tra đọc hiểu mà chúng ta có các cách làm khác nhau.

## • PRACTICES

*Form 01 : Fill in each space in the following passage with one suitable word.*

### PASSAGE 1

It is forecast that we can look forward to working (1)\_\_\_\_\_ hours in the future, but it is necessary for health and tranquility to work a certain (2)\_\_\_\_\_ of hours per week, ideally doing a variety of jobs - something schools have always known. It may be that house building will meet this need. It is a very basic human instinct. Gardening is a related activity. It is already (3)\_\_\_\_\_ to cultivate many herbs and vegetables than to buy them in the shops and the house of the next decade should take this into (4)\_\_\_\_\_

(5)\_\_\_\_\_ important question is that of energy conservation. The proportion of income (6)\_\_\_\_\_ on keeping warm is steadily going up, and, with the cost of energy likely to double in real terms during the next ten years or (7)\_\_\_\_\_ many large badly-insulated old houses will become extremely expensive to use. The demand will be (8)\_\_\_\_\_ small, well-insulated homes located in warm protected areas and making the best (9)\_\_\_\_\_ of the sun's warmth. Efficient heating units will be of prime importance. At (10)\_\_\_\_\_, we waste a lot of space in planning rooms which are awkward to use.

### PASSAGE 2

We live surrounded by objects and systems that we take for (1) \_\_\_\_\_, but which profoundly affect the way we behave, think, work, play, and in general lead our (2)\_\_\_\_\_. Look, for example, at the place in which you are reading this now, and see how much of (3)\_\_\_\_\_ surrounds you is understandable, how much of it you could actually build yourself or repair

(4)\_\_\_\_\_ it cease to function. When we start the car or press the (5)\_\_\_\_\_ in the elevator, or buy food in the supermarket, we gave no (6)\_\_\_\_\_ to the complex devices or systems that make the car move, or the elevator rise, or the food appear on the shelves.

Throughout this century we have become increasingly dependent on the products of (7)\_\_\_\_\_. They have already changed our lives: at the simplest (8)\_\_\_\_\_, the availability of transport has made us physically less fit than our ancestors. Many people are alive only because they have been given (9)\_\_\_\_\_ to disease through drugs. The vast majority of the world's population relies on the ability of technology to provide and transport food. We are unable to feed and clothe or keep (10)\_\_\_\_\_ warm without technology.

### PASSAGE 3

The 2015 Nepal earthquake, which (1)\_\_\_\_\_ more than 8,000 people and injured more than 18,000, occurred at 11:56 on 25<sup>th</sup> April. The earthquake (2)\_\_\_\_\_ about twenty seconds. Its epicenter was the village of Barpak, Gorkha district, and its hypocenter was at a depth (3)\_\_\_\_\_ approximately 15km. It was the worst (4)\_\_\_\_\_ disaster to strike Nepal since the 1934 Nepal-Bihar earthquake.

Hundreds of thousands of people became (5)\_\_\_\_\_ when their houses collapsed, entire villages were flattened. Many old buildings were completely (6)\_\_\_\_\_. The country also had a continued risk of landslides.

Two other powerful earthquakes struck Nepal at 06:11 and 06:45. The (7)\_\_\_\_\_ earthquake measured 7.9 M<sub>w</sub> and its epicenter was identified at a distance of 80km to the northwest of Kathmandu, the capital of Nepal. Bharatpur was (8)\_\_\_\_\_ nearest major city to the main earthquake, 53km from the epicenter. The second one was somewhat less powerful (9)\_\_\_\_\_ the first one. It occurred 65km east of Kathmandu. These (10)\_\_\_\_\_ were really terrible.

*Form 02 : Choose the letter A, B, C, or D that best fits each blank in the passage.*

### PASSAGE 1

When a work project offered me the opportunity to return to New Zealand, I spent several weeks (1)\_\_\_\_\_ a country I had left in my early twenties. I'd forgotten about the petrol stations where men in smart uniforms (2)\_\_\_\_\_ to you. They fill your tank, check your oil and still charge you less than one third of the British price for fuel. And the people rush to your assistance if they see you (3)\_\_\_\_\_ over a map. Or the blissful (4)\_\_\_\_\_ of tips. Locals simply cannot understand why anybody should expect to pay extra for friendly efficient service.

Given that New Zealand has about 3,000 kilometers of coastline, it should come as no (5)\_\_\_\_\_ that social life (6)\_\_\_\_\_ around the sea. When Auckland office workers leave their desks at the end of the working day, they don't (7)\_\_\_\_\_ home. Instead, they (8)\_\_\_\_\_ a beeline for the marina and spend the evening (9)\_\_\_\_\_ sail on the Hauraki Gulf. There are more yachts in Auckland than in any other city in the world- no wonder it's called the City of Sails. Even those who can't afford a vessel of their own will always know someone who has one, or at the (10)\_\_\_\_\_ least, will windsurf the offshore breezes at speeds that make the commuter ferries appear to stand still.

1. A. regaining      B. recapturing      C. refamiliarising      D. rediscovering

2. A. assist      B. attend      C. supply      D. serve

3. A. pointing      B. doubting      C. clamouring      D. puzzling

4. A. absence      B. shortage      C. removal      D. neglect

5. A. wonder      B. surprise      C. amazement      D. news

6. A. centers      B. revolves      C. turns      D. gathers

7. A. move    B. aim    C. head    D. divert  
 8. A. have    B. do    C. get    D. make  
 9. A. under    B. by    C. with    D. on  
 10. A. simple    B. single    C. utmost    D. very

## PASSAGE 2

### Homeopathy

Homeopathy (1) \_\_\_\_\_ to have gained a lot more respectability in society than a number of GPs believe it really deserves. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ there being no evidence that it is effective, according to a recent UK government report, many prominent people (3) \_\_\_\_\_ to support it. In view of this, perhaps the most surprising fact of all is that homeopathy is offered (4) \_\_\_\_\_ treatment on the NHS (National Health Service) in the UK. Like many other alternative forms of medicine, homeopathy has become so accepted (5) \_\_\_\_\_ there are few who question its use. People have become (6) \_\_\_\_\_ to seeing homeopathy as a treatment for illness and disease. However, many researchers insist (7) \_\_\_\_\_ claiming that it is not a valid treatment because the medicines contain no active ingredients.

The real question is why it is so popular. Many patients swear that was an effective cure for their disease whilst the report maintains this is simply (8) \_\_\_\_\_ to the placebo effect. In other words, just the act of taking the medicine is a good enough reason for patients to (9) \_\_\_\_\_ feeling better. In short, while homeopathy may be useful for helping people get over minor illnesses, it is (10) \_\_\_\_\_ that anyone with serious illnesses should seek out conventional treatment.

1. A. feels    B. suggests    C. seems    D. shows
2. A. Except    B. Although    C. However    D. Despite
3. A. maintain    B. keep    C. carry    D. continue
4. A. as    B. from    C. on    D. to
5. A. until    B. that    C. enough    D. when
6. A. accustomed    B. familiar    C. acquainted    D. fond
7. A. for    B. on    C. by    D. in
8. A. due    B. up    C. result    D. because
9. A. have    B. start    C. get    D. become
10. A. regarded    B. referred    C. recovered    D. recommended

## PASSAGE 3

### HEARING IN COLOUR

A number of scientists around the world are now investigating a phenomenon called *synaesthesia* that may (1) \_\_\_\_\_ as many as one in 2,000 people. The name (2) \_\_\_\_\_ from the Greek words for *together* and *perception* and means that some people's senses work in combination. For example, some people (3) \_\_\_\_\_ colour when they hear particular sounds. Similarly, a smell or taste may be (4) \_\_\_\_\_ as a reaction to information received from the eyes. However, the most common form of synaesthesia occurs among people who (5) \_\_\_\_\_ certain letters or words with colours. Scientists at Cambridge University conducted experiments to determine whether this is actually a product of mental activity or if some individuals are just (6) \_\_\_\_\_ imaginative. They discovered that synaesthetes, people who experience synaesthesia, (7) \_\_\_\_\_ associate the same letters or words with the same colours. Brain scans revealed (8) \_\_\_\_\_ activity in the brain when subjects were listening to words, suggesting that it is a physical condition. The most plausible explanation is that synaesthetes have slightly different connections between the areas of the brain which control their (9) \_\_\_\_\_. Synaesthesia is not a medical problem, however, and synaesthetes

often (10) \_\_\_\_\_ from an unusually good memory, probably because they have extra information to help them **recall** things like names and numbers.

1. A.effect B. infect C.suffer D. affect
2. A.reminds B. derives C.prescribes D. distracts
3. A.differ B. view C.see D. mind
4. A.retained B. perceived C.thought D. responded
5. A.associate B. elaborate C.conceive D. comply
6. A.deeply B. utterly C.highly D. fully
7. A.perfectly B. earnestly C.practically D.consistently
8. A.unusual B. infallible C.insecure D.incapable
9. A.consciences B. attitudes C.senses D.conditions
10. A.approve B. sting C.cure D.benefit

*Form 03 : Read the passage and choose the best answer (A, B, C, or D) for each of the questions.*

### PASSAGE 1

The radical change in the land's surface that results when rural areas are transformed into cities is a significant cause of the rise in temperature in cities that is known as urban heat island.

First, the tall buildings and the concrete and asphalt of the city absorb and store greater quantities of solar radiation than do the vegetation and soil typical of rural areas.

In addtton, because the concrete and asphalt are impermeable, the runoff of water fdowing a rain is rapid, resulting in a severe reduction in the evaporation rate. So heat that once would have been used **convert** liquid water to a gas goes instead to increase the surface temperature further.

At night, although both city and countryside cool through radiation losses, the stone-like surface of the city gradually releases the additional heat accumulated during the day, keeping the urban air warmer than **that** of the outlying areas.

Part of the urban temperature rise must also be attributed to waste heat from such sources as home heating and air conditioning, power generation, industry, and transportation. Many studies have shown that the **magnitude** of human-made energy in metropolitan areas is equal to a significant percentage of the energy received from the Sun at the surface.

Investigations in Sheffield, England, and Berlin showed that the annual heat production in these cities was equal to approximately one-third of that received from solar radiation. Another study of the densely built-up **Manhattan** section of New York City revealed that during the winter, the quantity of heat produced from combustion alone was two and one-half times greater than the amount of solar energy reaching the ground. In summer, the figure dropped to one-sixth.

It is interesting to note that during the summer there is a mutual reinforcement between the higher nightttime temperatures of the city and the human-made heat that helped create them. That is, the higher temperatures result in the increased use of air-conditioners, which, in turn, use energy and further increase the amount of urban heat. During the winter the nighttime warmth of urban areas, produced in large part by heavy energy consumption, is **beneficial** because less energy needed to heat buildings.

1. What does the passage mainly discuss?
  - A. The loss of farmland to urban development
  - B. The causes of increased heat in cities
  - C. Waste heat generated by home heating and air conditioning
  - D. How seasonal change affects the temperature of cities
2. All of the following contribute to the urban heat island effect **EXCEPT** \_\_\_\_\_.



- A. absorption of heat from the Sun  
 B. storage of heat from the Sun  
 C. an increased rate of evaporation after a rainfall  
 D. the release of heat at night from city surfaces
3. The word "**convert**" in the passage is closest in meaning to\_\_\_\_\_.
- A. reverse    B. transform    C. reduce    D. compare
4. The word "**that**" in the passage refers to\_\_\_\_\_.
- A. city    B. heat    C. day    D. air
5. In which of the following locations would the rate of evaporation probably be highest?
- A. A rural area    B. A small town    C. A medium-sized city    D. A big city
6. The word "**magnitude**" in the passage is closest in meaning to\_\_\_\_\_.
- A. calculation    B. comprehension    C. extent    D. formation
7. The author mentions Manhattan to order to demonstrate that\_\_\_\_\_.
- A. heat in urban areas can be reduced  
 B. the conclusions of the investigation in Sheffield were wrong  
 C. its heat production is smaller than that of Berlin  
 D. human-made heat can exceed the solar energy that reaches the ground in winter
8. According to the passage, an important consequence of the use of air-conditioners at night is. \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. greater energy costs    B. higher levels of urban heat  
 C. serious problems with the energy supply    D. less need for air conditioning in the morning
9. The word "**beneficial**" in the passage is closest in meaning to\_\_\_\_\_.
- A. predictable    B. powerful    C. hazardous    D. advantageous
10. Which of the following is true about cities at night in the winter?
- A. Solar energy has an increased impact on the urban heat island.  
 B. They tend to be colder than rural areas.  
 C. Less energy is required to heat buildings  
 D. Human-made energy created a larger area of total heat than solar energy.

### PASSAGE 2

Among all the abilities with which an individual may be endowed, musical talent appears earliest in life. Very young children can exhibit musical **precocity** for different reasons. Some develop exceptional skills as a result of a well-designed instructional regime, such as the Suzuki method for the violin. Some have a good fortune to be born into a musical family in a household filled with music. In a number of interesting cases, musical talent is part of an otherwise disabling condition such as autism or mental retardation. *A musically gifted child has an inborn talent; however, the extent to which the talent is expressed publicly will depend upon the environment in which the child lives.*

Musically gifted children master at an early age the principal elements of music, including pitch and rhythm. Pitch – or – melody – is more central cultures, for example, in Eastern societies that make use of tiny quarter – tone interval... Rhythm, sounds produced at certain auditory frequencies and grouped according to a prescribed system, is emphasized in sub – Saharan African, where the rhythmic ratios can be very complex.

All children have some aptitude for making music. During infancy, normal children sing as well as babble, and they can produce individual sounds and sounds patterns. Infants as young as two months can match their mother's songs in pitch, loudness, and melodic shape, and infants at four

months can match rhythmic structure as well. Infants are especially *predisposed* to acquire these core aspects of music, and they can also engage in sound play that clearly exhibits creativity.

Individual differences begin to merge in young children as they learn to sing. Some children can match large segments of a song by the age of two or three. Many others can only approximate pitch at this age and may still have difficulty in producing accurate melodies by the age of five or six. However, by the time they reach school age, most children in any culture have a schema of what a song should be like and can produce a reasonably accurate imitation of the songs commonly heard in their environment.

The early appearance of superior musical ability in some children provides evidence that musical talent may be a separate and unique form of intelligence. There are numerous tales of young artists who have a remarkable “ear” or extraordinary memory for music and a natural understanding of musical structure. In many of these cases, the child is average in every other way but displays an exceptional ability in music. Even the most gifted child, however, takes about ten years to achieve the levels of performance or composition that would constitute mastery of the musical sphere.

Every generation in music history has its famous prodigies – individuals with exceptional musical powers that emerge at a young age. In the eighteenth century, Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart began composing and performing at the age of six. As a child, Mozart could play the piano like an adult. He had perfect pitch, and at the age of nine, he was also a master of the art of modulation – transitions from one key to another – which became one of the hallmarks of his style. By the age of eleven, he had composed three symphonies and 30 other major works. Mozart’s well – developed talent was preserved into adulthood.

Unusual musical ability is a regular characteristic of certain anomalies such as autism. In one case, an autistic girl was able to play “Happy birthday” in the style of various composers, including Mozart, Beethoven, Verdi, and Schubert. When the girl was three, her mother called her by playing incomplete melodies, which the child would complete with the appropriate tone in the proper octave. For the autistic child, music may be the primary mode of communication, and the child may cling to music because it represents a *haven* in a world that is largely confusing and frightening.

1. The word “*precocity*” in paragraph 1 is closest in meaning to\_\_\_\_\_.

- A. strong interest      B. good luck      C. advanced skill      D. personal style

2. Which sentence below best expresses the essential information in the highlighted sentence in paragraph 1?

A. Children may be born with superior musical ability, but their environment will determine how this ability is developed.

B. Every child is naturally gifted, and it is the responsibility of the public schools to recognize and develop these talents.

C. Children with exceptional musical talent will look for the best way to express themselves through music – making.

D. Some musically talented children live in an environment surrounded by music, while others have little exposure to music.

3. The author makes the point that musical elements such as pitch and rhythm\_\_\_\_\_.

- A. distinguish music from other art forms      B. vary in emphasis in different cultures  
C. make music difficult to learn      D. express different human emotions

4. The word “*predisposed*” in paragraph 3 is closest in meaning to\_\_\_\_\_.

- A. inclined      B. gifted      C. pushed      D. amused

5. According to the passage, when does musical talent usually begin to appear?

- A. When infants start to babble and produce sound patterns.
  - B. Between the ages of two and four months.
  - C. When children learn to sing at two or three years old.
  - D. Between ten years old and adolescence.
6. According to the passage, which of the following suggests that musical talent in the separate form of intelligence?
- A. Exceptional musical ability in an otherwise average child.
  - B. Recognition of the emotional power of music.
  - C. The ability of all babies to acquire core elements of music.
  - D. Differences between learning music learning language.
7. Why does the author discuss Mozart in paragraph 6?
- A. To compare past and present views of musical talent.
  - B. To give an example of a well – known musical prodigy.
  - C. To list musical accomplishments of the eighteenth century.
  - D. To describe the development of individual musical skill.
8. In music, the change from one key to another is known as\_\_\_\_\_.
- A. rhythm     B. prodigy     C. perfect pitch     D. modulation
9. The word “*haven*” in paragraph 7 is closest in meaning to\_\_\_\_\_.
- A. beautiful art     B. safe place     C. personal goal     D. simple problem
10. Which of the following can be inferred from the passage about exceptional musical ability?
- A. It occurs more frequently in some cultures than in others.
  - B. It is evidence of a superior lever of intelligence in other areas.
  - C. It has been documented and studied but is little understood.
  - D. It is the result of natural talent and a supportive environment.

### PASSAGE 3

#### SMART ENERGY

The next few decades will see great changes in the way energy is supplied and used. In some major oil producing nations, 'peak oil' has already been reached, and there are increasing fears of global warming. Consequently, many countries are focusing on the switch to a low carbon economy. This transition will lead to major changes in the supply and use of electricity. [A] Firstly, there will be an increase in overall demand, as consumers switch from oil and gas to electricity to power their homes and vehicles. [B] Secondly, there will be an increase in power generation, not only in terms of how much is generated, but also how it is generated, as there is growing electricity generation from renewable sources. [C] To meet these challenges, countries are investing in Smart Grid technology. [D] This system aims to provide the electricity industry with a better understanding of power generation and demand, and to use this information to create a more efficient power network.

Smart Grid technology basically involves the application of a computer system to the electricity network. The computer system can be used to collect information about supply and demand and improve engineer's ability to manage the system. With better information about electricity demand, the network will be able to increase the amount of electricity delivered per unit generated, leading to potential reductions in fuel needs and carbon emissions. Moreover, the computer system will assist in reducing operational and maintenance costs.

Smart Grid technology offers benefits to the consumer too. They will be able to collect real-time information on their energy use for each appliance. Varying tariffs throughout the day will give customers the incentive to use appliances at times when supply greatly exceeds demand, leading to

great reductions in bills. For example, they may use their washing machines at night. Smart meters can also be connected to the internet or telephone system, allowing customers to switch appliances on or off remotely. Furthermore, if houses are fitted with the apparatus to generate their own power, appliances can be set to run directly from the on-site power source, and any excess can be sold to the grid.

With these changes comes a range of challenges. The first involves managing the supply and demand. Sources of renewable energy, such as wind, wave and solar, are notoriously unpredictable, and nuclear power, which is also set to increase as nations switch to alternative energy sources, is inflexible. With oil and gas, it is relatively simple to increase the supply of energy to match the increasing demand during peak times of the day or year. With alternative sources, this is far more difficult, and may lead to blackouts or system collapse. Potential solutions include investigating new and efficient ways to store energy and encouraging consumers to use electricity at off-peak times.

A second problem is the fact that many renewable power generation sources are located in *remote* areas, such as windy uplands and coastal regions, where there is currently a lack of electrical infrastructure. New infrastructures therefore must be built. Thankfully, with improved smart technology, this can be done more efficiently by reducing the reinforcement or construction costs.

Although Smart Technology is still in its infancy, pilot schemes to promote and test it are already *underway*. Consumers are currently testing the new smart meters which can be used in their homes to manage electricity use. There are also a number of demonstrations being planned to show how the smart technology could practically work, and trials are in place to test the new electrical infrastructure. It is likely that technology will be added in 'layers', starting with 'quick win' methods which will provide initial carbon savings, to be followed by more advanced systems at a later date. Cities are prime candidates for investment into smart energy, due to the high population density and high energy use. It is here where Smart Technology is likely to be promoted first, utilising a range of sustainable power sources, transport solutions and an infrastructure for charging electrically powered vehicles. The infrastructure is already changing fast. By the year 2050, changes in the energy supply will have transformed our homes, our roads and our behaviour.

1. According to paragraph 1, what has happened in some oil producing countries?

- A. They are unwilling to sell their oil any more.
- B. They are not producing as much oil as they used to.
- C. The supply of oil is unpredictable.
- D. Global warming is more severe here than in other countries.

2. Where in Paragraph 1 can the following sentence be placed?

*'There is also likely more electricity generation centres, as households and communities take up the opportunity to install photovoltaic cells and small scale wind turbines.'*

- A. In [A]
- B. In [B]
- C. In [C]
- D. In [D]

3. Which of the following is **NOT** a benefit of Smart Grid technology to consumers?

- A. It can reduce their electricity bills.
- B. It can tell them how much energy each appliance is using.
- C. It can allow them to turn appliances on and off when they are not at home.
- D. It can reduce the amount of energy needed to power appliances.

4. According to paragraph 4, what is the problem with using renewable sources of power?

- A. They do not provide much energy.
- B. They often cause system failure and blackouts.

- C. They do not supply a continuous flow of energy.  
 D. They can't be used at off-peak times.
5. In paragraph 5, what can be inferred about cities in the future?  
 A. More people will be living in cities in the future than nowadays.  
 B. People in cities will be using cars and buses powered by electricity.  
 C. All buildings will generate their own electricity.  
 D. Smart Grid technology will only be available in cities.

6. The word 'remote' in paragraph 5 could be best replace by:  
 A. isolated    B. crowded    C. attractive    D. alone

7. The word 'underway' in paragraph 6 is closest in meaning to:  
 A. permanent    B. complete    C. beneficial    D. in progress

8. What is the main idea of the final paragraph? (paragraph 6)  
 A. To describe who will benefit from Smart Grid technology first.  
 B. To outline the advantages of Smart Grid technology.  
 C. To summarize the main ideas in the previous paragraphs.  
 D. To describe how, where and when Smart Technology will be introduced.

9. In paragraph 6, what can be inferred about the introduction of Smart Grid Technology?  
 A. The technologies which produce most benefits will be introduced first.  
 B. The cheapest technologies will be introduced first.  
 C. The technologies which are most difficult to put into place will be introduced first.  
 D. Technologically advanced systems will be introduced first.

10. Which of the aspects below is **NOT** answered in the passage?  
 A. The ways Smart Grid technology will affect the way consumers use energy.  
 B. The problems which will have to be overcome in switching to Smart Grid Technology.  
 C. How consumers are likely to respond to Smart Grid technology.  
 D. The reasons why Smart Grid technology will be needed in the future

*Form 04 : Choose the correct heading for paragraphs, fill in the blanks with an appropriate one to complete the passage or sentence (or Write True/False/Not given)*

### READING 1

**Choose the correct heading for paragraphs A, B, C, D, and E from the list of the headings below.**

**Write your answers in answer box below (1 to 5)**

#### List of Headings

<b>i</b>	Mushrooms that glow in the dark
<b>ii</b>	Bright creatures on land and in the sea
<b>iii</b>	Evolution's solution
<b>iv</b>	Cave-dwelling organisms
<b>v</b>	Future opportunities in biological engineering
<b>vi</b>	Nature's gift to medicine
<b>vii</b>	Bioluminescence in humans
<b>viii</b>	Purposes of bioluminescence in the wild
<b>ix</b>	Luminescent pets

1. Paragraph A \_\_\_\_\_

- |    |             |       |
|----|-------------|-------|
| 2. | Paragraph B | _____ |
| 3. | Paragraph C | _____ |
| 4. | Paragraph D | _____ |
| 5. | Paragraph E | _____ |

**A.**

In the pitch-black waters of the ocean's aphotic zone – depths from 1,000m to the sea floor – Rood eyesight does not count for very much on its own. Caves, in addition, frequently present a similar problem: the complete absence of natural light at any time of the day. This has not stopped some organisms from turning these inhospitable environments into their homes, and in the process many have created their own forms of light by developing one of the stunning visual marvels of the biological universe – bioluminescence.

**B.**

Many people will encounter bioluminescence at some point in their life, typically in some form of glowworm, which is found on most continents. North and South America are home to the “firefly”, a glowing beetle which is known as a glow-worm during its larvae stage. Flightless glowing beetles and worms are also found in Europe, Asia, Australia, and New Zealand. Less common flies, centipedes, molluscs, and snails have bioluminescent qualities as well, as do some mushrooms. The most dramatic examples of bioluminescence, however, are found deep below the ocean's surface, where no sunlight can penetrate at all. Here, anglerfish, cookie-cutter sharks, flashlight fish, lantern fish, gulper eels, viperfish, and many other species have developed bioluminescence in unique and creative ways to facilitate their lives.

**C.**

The natural uses of bioluminescence vary widely, and organisms have learnt to be very creative with its use. Fireflies employ bioluminescence primarily for reproductive means – their flashing patterns advertise a firefly's readiness to breed. Some fish use it as a handy spotlight to help them locate prey. Others use it as a lure; the anglerfish, for example, dangles a luminescent flare that draws in gullible, smaller fishes which get snapped up by the anglerfish in an automated reflex. Sometimes, bioluminescence is used to resist predators. Vampire squids eject a thick cloud of glowing liquid from the tip of its arms when threatened, which can be disorientating. Other species use a single, bright flash to temporarily blind their attacker, with an effect similar to that of an oncoming car which has not dipped its headlights.

**D.**

Humans have captured and utilized bioluminescence by developing, over the last decade, a technology known as Bioluminescence Imaging (BLI). BU involves the extraction of a DNA protein from a bioluminescent organism, and then the integration of this protein into a laboratory animal through trans-geneticism. Researchers have been able to use luminized pathogens and cancer cell lines to track the respective spread of infections and cancers. Through BLI, cancers and infections can be observed without intervening in a way that affects their independent development. In other words, while an ultra-sensitive camera and bioluminescent proteins add a visual element, they do not disrupt or mutate the natural processes. As a result, when testing drugs and treatments, researchers are permitted a single perspective of a therapy's progression.

**E.**

Once scientists learn how to engineer bioluminescence and keep it stable in large quantities, a number of other human uses for it will become available. Glowing trees have been proposed as replacements for electric lighting along busy roads, for example, which would reduce our

dependence on non-renewable energy sources. The same technology used in Christmas trees for the family home would also eliminate the fire danger from electrical fairy lights. It may also be possible for crops and plants to luminesce when they require watering, and for meat and dairy products to “tell us” when they have become contaminated by bacteria. In a similar way, forensic investigators could detect bacterial species on corpses through bioluminescence. Finally, there is the element of pure novelty. Children’s toys and stickers are often made with glow-in-the dark qualities, and a biological form would allow rabbits, mice, fish, and other pets to glow as well.

**Choose NO MORE THAN THREE WORDS to complete the sentences below.(6 to 10)**

6. It is surprising that we can find the most dramatic examples of bioluminescence deep below the \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The luminescent fluid that a vampire squid emits has a \_\_\_\_\_ effect on its predator.
8. In order to use bioluminescence in a trans-genetic environment, \_\_\_\_\_ must first be removed from a bioluminescent creature.
9. One advantage of BLI is that it could allow researchers to see how a treatment is working without altering or disturbing \_\_\_\_\_.
10. In the future, \_\_\_\_\_ may be able to use bioluminescence to identify evidence on dead bodies.

**READING 2**

**Choose the correct heading for each paragraph from the list of the headings below. Write the correct number i-v, in boxes 1 – 5 on your answer sheet.**

*List of headings*

<b>i</b>	The importance of getting the timing right
<b>ii</b>	Young meets old
<b>iii</b>	Developments to the disadvantage of tortoise populations
<b>iv</b>	Planning a bigger idea
<b>v</b>	Tortoises populate the islands
<b>vi</b>	Carrying out a carefully prepared operation
<b>vii</b>	Looking for a home for the islands’ tortoises
<b>viii</b>	The start of the conservation project

1. Paragraph	<b>A</b>	_____
2. Paragraph	<b>B</b>	_____
<i>Example</i> Paragraph	<b>C</b>	- viii
3. Paragraph	<b>D</b>	_____
4. Paragraph	<b>E</b>	_____
<i>Example</i> Paragraph	<b>F</b>	- vi
5. Paragraph	<b>G</b>	_____

**Flying Tortoises**

*An airborne reintroduction programme has helped conservationists take significant steps to protect the endangered Galapagos tortoise.*

<b>A</b>	Forests of spiny cacti cover much of the uneven lava plains that separate the interior of the Galapagos island of Isabela from the Pacific Ocean. With its five distinct volcanoes, the island resembles a lunar landscape. Only the thick vegetation at the skirt of the often cloud-covered peak of Sierra Negra offers respite from the barren terrain below. This inhospitable environment is home to the giant Galapagos tortoise. Some time after the Galapagos’s birth, around five million years ago, the islands were colonised by one or more tortoises from mainland South America. As these ancestral tortoises settled on the individual islands, the different populations adapted to their unique environments, giving rise to at least 14 different subspecies.
----------	---

	<p>Island life agreed with them. In the absence of significant predators, they grew to become the largest and longest-living tortoises on the planet, weighing more than 400 kilograms, occasionally exceeding 1,8 metres in length and living for more than a century</p>
<b>B</b>	<p>Before human arrival, the archipelago's tortoises numbered in the hundreds of thousands. From the 17th century onwards, pirates took a few on board for food, but the arrival of whaling ships in the 1790s saw this exploitation grow exponentially. Relatively immobile and capable of surviving for months without food or water, the tortoises were taken on board these ships to act as food supplies during long ocean passages. Sometimes, their bodies were processed into high- grade oil. In total, an estimated 200,000 animals were taken from the archipelago before the 20th century. This historical exploitation was then exacerbated when settlers came to the islands. They hunted the tortoises and destroyed their habitat to clear land for agriculture. They also introduced alien species - ranging from cattle, pigs, goats, rats and dogs to plants and ants - that either prey on the eggs and young tortoises or damage or destroy their habitat.</p>
<b>C</b>	<p>Today, only 11 of the original subspecies survive and of these, several are highly endangered. In 1989, work began on a tortoise-breeding centre just outside the town of Puerto Villamil on Isabela, dedicated to protecting the island's tortoise populations. The centre's captive-breeding programme proved to be extremely successful, and it eventually had to deal with an overpopulation problem.</p>
<b>D</b>	<p>The problem was also a pressing one. Captive-bred tortoises can't be reintroduced into the wild until they're at least five years old and weigh at least 4,5 kilograms, at which point their size and weight - and their hardened shells - are sufficient to protect them from predators. But if people wait too long after that point, the tortoises eventually become too large to transport.</p>
<b>E</b>	<p>For years, repatriation efforts were carried out in small numbers, with the tortoises carried on the backs of men over weeks of long, treacherous hikes along narrow trails. But in November 2010, the environmentalist and Galapagos National Park liaison officer Godfrey Merlin, a visiting private motor yacht captain and a helicopter pilot gathered around a table in a small cafe in Puerto Ayora on the island of Santa Cruz to work out more ambitious reintroduction. The aim was to use a helicopter to move 300 of the breeding centre's tortoises to various locations close to Sierra Negra.</p>
<b>F</b>	<p>This unprecedented effort was made possible by the owners of the 67-metre yacht White Cloud, who provided the Galapagos National Park with free use of their helicopter and its experienced pilot, as well as the logistical support of the yacht, its captain and crew. Originally an air ambulance, the yacht's helicopter has a rear double door and a large internal space that's well suited for cargo, so a custom crate was designed to hold up to 33 tortoises with a total weight of about 150 kilograms. This weight, together with that of the fuel, pilot and four crew, approached the helicopter's maximum payload, and there were times when it was clearly right on the edge of the helicopter's capabilities. During a period of three days, a group of volunteers from the breeding centre worked around the clock to prepare the young tortoises for transport. Meanwhile, park wardens, dropped off ahead of time in</p>



	remote locations, cleared landing sites within the thick brush, cacti and lava rocks.
G	Upon their release, the juvenile tortoises quickly spread out over their ancestral territory, investigating their new surroundings and feeding on the vegetation. Eventually, one tiny tortoise came across a fully grown giant who had been lumbering around the island for around a hundred years. The two stood side by side, a powerful symbol of the regeneration of an ancient species.

Complete the notes below. Choose ONE WORD ONLY from the passage for each answer.

### The decline of the Galapagos tortoise

- Originally from mainland South America
- Numbers on Galapagos islands increased, due to lack of predators
- 17th century: small numbers taken onto ships used by (6) \_\_\_\_\_
- 1790s: very large numbers taken onto whaling ships, kept for (7) \_\_\_\_\_ and also used to produce (8) \_\_\_\_\_
- Hunted by (9) \_\_\_\_\_ on islands
- Habitat destruction: for the establishment of agriculture and by various species not native to the islands, which also fed on baby tortoises and tortoises' (10) \_\_\_\_\_

### READING 3

The Reading Passage has five paragraphs (A-E). Choose the most suitable heading for each paragraph from the list of headings below. Write the appropriate numbers (i-vi) in boxes 1-5 on your answer part

NB There are more headings than paragraphs so you will not use all of them.

### PAPER RECYCLING

#### A.

Paper is different from other waste produce because it comes from a sustainable resource: trees. Unlike the minerals and oil used to make plastics and metals, trees are replaceable. Paper is also biodegradable, so it does not pose as much threat to the environment when it is discarded. While 45 out of every 100 tones of wood fibre used to make paper in Australia comes from waste paper, the rest comes directly from virgin fibre from forests and plantations. By world standards this is a good performance since the world-wide average is 33 per cent waste paper. Governments have encouraged waste paper collection and sorting schemes and at the same time, the paper industry has responded by developing new recycling technologies that have paved the way for even greater utilization of used fibres. As a result, industry's use of recycled fibres is expected to increase at twice the rate of virgin fibres over the coming years.

#### B.

Already, waste paper constitutes 70% of paper used for packaging and advances in the technology required to remove ink from the paper have allowed a higher recycled content in newsprint and writing paper. To achieve the benefits of recycling, the community must also contribute. We need to accept a change in the quality of paper products; for example stationery may be less white and of a rougher texture. There also needs to be support from the community for waste paper collection programs. Not only do we need to make the paper available to collectors but it also needs to be separated into different types and sorted from contaminants such as staples, paperclips, string and other miscellaneous items.

#### C.

There are technical limitations to the amount of paper which can be recycled and some paper products cannot be collected for re-use. These include paper in the form of books and permanent

records, photographic paper and paper which is badly contaminated. The four most common sources of paper for recycling are factories and retail stores which gather large amounts of packaging material in which goods are delivered, also offices which have unwanted business documents and computer output, paper converters and printers and lastly households which discard newspapers and packaging material. The paper manufacturer pays a price for the paper and may also incur the collection cost.

**D.**

Once collected, the paper has to be sorted by hand by people trained to recognise various types of paper. This is necessary because some types of paper can only be made from particular kinds of recycled fibre. The sorted paper then has to be repulped or mixed with water and broken down into its individual fibres. This mixture is called stock and may contain a wide variety of contaminating materials, particularly if it is made from mixed waste paper which has had little sorting. Various machineries are used to remove other materials from the stock. After passing through the repulping process, the fibres from printed waste paper are grey in colour because the printing ink has soaked into the individual fibres. This recycled material can only be used in products where the grey colour does not matter, such as cardboard boxes but if the grey colour is not acceptable, the fibres must be de-inked. This involves adding chemicals such as caustic soda or other alkalis, soaps and detergents, water-hardening agents such as calcium chloride, frothing agents and bleaching agents. Before the recycled fibres can be made into paper they must be refined or treated in such a way that they bond together.

**E.**

Most paper products must contain some virgin fibre as well as recycled fibres and unlike glass, paper cannot be recycled indefinitely. Most paper is down-cycled which means that a product made from recycled paper is of an inferior quality to the original paper. Recycling paper is beneficial in that it saves some of the energy, labour and capital that go into producing virgin pulp. However, recycling requires the use of fossil fuel, a non-renewable energy source, to collect the waste paper from the community and to process it to produce new paper. And the recycling process still creates emissions which require treatment before they can be disposed of safely. Nevertheless, paper recycling is an important economical and environmental practice but one which must be carried out in a rational and viable manner for it to be useful to both industry and the community.

<b>i</b>	Process of paper recycling
<b>ii</b>	Less threat of waste paper to the environment
<b>iii</b>	Collection of paper for recycling
<b>iv</b>	Sources of paper for recycling
<b>v</b>	Bad sides of paper recycling
<b>vi</b>	Contribution of community to recycling paper

**Your answer**

<b>1.</b> Paragraph A	_____
<b>2.</b> Paragraph B	_____
<b>3.</b> Paragraph C	_____
<b>4.</b> Paragraph D	_____
<b>5.</b> Paragraph E	_____

**Complete the summary below.**

**Complete the summary below of the first two paragraphs of the Reading Passage. Choose ONE OR TWO WORDS from the Reading Passage for each answer.**

From the point of view of recycling, paper has two advantages over minerals and oil in that firstly it comes from a resource which is (6)\_\_\_\_\_ and secondly it is less threatening to our environment when we throw it away because it is (7)\_\_\_\_\_. Although Australia's record in the re-use of waste paper is good, it is still necessary to use a combination of recycled fibre and (8)\_\_\_\_\_ to make new paper. The paper industry has contributed positively and people have also been encouraged by (9)\_\_\_\_\_ to collect their waste on a regular basis. One major difficulty is the removal of ink from used paper but (10)\_\_\_\_\_ are being made in this area.

#### READING 4

Read the passage and do the following tasks.

#### List of headings

i.	American water withdrawal
ii.	Economic pricing
iii.	What the future holds
iv.	Successful measures taken by some
v.	The role of research
vi.	The thirsty sectors
vii.	Ways of reducing waste
viii.	Interdependence of natural resources
ix.	The demands of development
x.	The consequences for agriculture

#### THE WATER CRISIS

1

Per capita water usage has been on an upward trend for many years. As countries industrialise and their citizens become more prosperous, their individual water usage increases rapidly. Annual per capita water withdrawals in the USA, for example, are about 1,700 cubic metres, four times the level in China and fifty times the level in Ethiopia. In the 21st century, the world's limited supply of renewable fresh water is having to meet demands of both larger total population and increased per capita consumption. The only practicable ways to resolve this problem in the longer term economic pricing in conjunction with conservation measures.

2

Agriculture consumes about 70% of the world's fresh water, so improvements in irrigation can make the greatest impact. At present, average efficiency in the use of irrigated water in agriculture may be as low as 50%. Simple changes could improve the rate substantially, though it is unrealistic to expect very high levels of water-use efficiency in many developing countries, faced as they are with a chronic lack of capital and a largely untrained rural workforce. After agriculture, industry is the second biggest user of water and, in terms of value added per litre used, is sixty times more productive than agriculture. However, some industrial processes use amounts of water. For example, production of 1 kg of aluminium might require 1,500 litres of water. Paper production too is often very water-intensive. Though new processes have greatly reduced consumption, there is still plenty of room for big savings in industrial uses of water.

3

In rich countries, water consumption has gradually been slowed down by price increases and the use of modern technology and recycling. In the USA, industrial production has risen fourfold since 1950, while water consumption has fallen by more than a third. Japan and Germany have similarly improved their use of water in manufacturing processes. Japanese industry, for example, now recycles more than 75% of process water. However, industrial water consumption is continuing to

increase sharply in developing countries. With domestic and agricultural demands also increasing, the capacity of water supply systems is under growing strain.

4

Many experts believe that the best way to counter this trend is to impose water charges based on the real cost of supplies. This would provide a powerful incentive for consumers to introduce water-saving processes and recycling. Few governments charge realistic prices for water, especially to farmers. Even in rich California, farm get water for less than a tenth of the cost of supply. In many developing countries there is virtually no charge for irrigation water, while energy prices are heavily subsidized too (which means that farmers can afford to run water pumps day and night). Water, which was once regarded as a free gift from heaven, is becoming a commodity which must be bought and sold on the open market just like oil. In the oil industry, the price increases which hit the market in the 1970s, coupled with concerns that supplies were running low, led to new energy conservation measures all over the world. It was realised that investing in new sources was a far more costly option than improving efficiency of use. A similar emphasis on conservation will be the best and cheapest option for bridging the gap between water supply and demand.

5

One way to cut back on water consumption is simply to prevent leaks. It is estimated that in some of the biggest cities of the Third World, more than half of the water entering the system is lost through leaks in pipes, dripping taps and broken installations. Even in the UK, losses were estimated at 25% in the early 1990s because of the failure to maintain the antiquated water supply infrastructure. In addition, huge quantities of water are consumed because used water from sewage pipes, storm drains and factories is merely flushed away and discharged into rivers or the sea. The modern approach, however, is to see used water as a resource which can be put to good use - either in irrigation or, after careful treatment, as recycled domestic water. Israel, for instance, has spent heavily on used water treatment.

Soon, treated, recycled water will account for most farm irrigation there. There are other examples in cities such as St Petersburg, Florida, where all municipal water is recycled back into domestic systems.

6

Another way of conserving water resources involves better management of the environment generally. Interference with the ecosystem can have a severe effect on both local rainfall patterns and water run-off. Forest clearings associated with India's Kabini dam project reduced local rainfall by 25%, a phenomenon observed in various other parts of the world where large-scale deforestation has taken place. Grass and other vegetation acts as a sponge which absorbs rainfall both in the plants and in the ground. Removal of the vegetation means that rainfall runs off the top of the land, accelerating erosion instead of being gradually fed into the soil to renew ground water.

7

Global warming is bound to affect rainfall patterns, though there is considerable disagreement about its precise effects. But it is likely that, as sea levels rise, countries in low-lying coastal areas will be hit by seawater penetration of ground water. Other countries will experience changes in rainfall which could have a major impact on agricultural yield - either for better or for worse. In broad terms, it is thought that rainfall zones will shift northwards, adding to the water deficit in Africa, the Middle East and the Mediterranean - a grim prospect indeed.

**Questions 8 - 10**

**Complete the summary below.**

Choose NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS from the text for each answer.

Other ways of protecting supplies are to reduce water loss resulting from 8. \_\_\_\_\_ in the supply systems and to find ways of utilising used water. Longer term measures, such as improved environmental 9. \_\_\_\_\_ would protect the ecosystem and ensure the replenishment of ground water for future generations. Without such measures, future supplies are uncertain, especially when global warming is expected to interfere with rainfall patterns and to worsen the 10. \_\_\_\_\_ already suffered by many countries today.

Form 05 : Read the text and decide whether the following is true (T) or false (F).

### READING 1

#### THE FIRST COMPUTER PROGRAMMER

Ada Lovelace was the daughter of the poet Lord Byron. She was taught by Mary Somerville, a well-known researcher and scientific author, who introduced her to Charles Babbage in June 1833. Babbage was an English mathematician, who first had the idea for a programmable computer.

In 1842 and 1843, Ada translated the work of an Italian mathematician, Luigi Menabrea, on Babbage's Analytical Engine. Though mechanical, this machine was an important step in the history of computers; it was the design of a mechanical general-purpose computer. Babbage worked on it for many years until his death in 1871. However, because of financial, political, and legal issues, the engine was never built. The design of the machine was very modern; it anticipated the first completed general-purpose computers by about 100 years.

When Ada translated the article, she added a set of notes which specified in complete detail a method for calculating certain numbers with the Analytical Engine, which have since been recognized by historians as the world's first computer program. She also saw possibilities in it that Babbage hadn't: she realised that the machine could compose pieces of music. The computer programming language 'Ada', used in some aviation and military programs, is named after her.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Ada Lovelace's teacher introduced her to Charles Babbage.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Babbage programmed the first computer.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Ada translated the article in 1842..
4. \_\_\_\_\_ The Analytical Engine was electronic.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Luigi Menabrea designed the first computer.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Babbage finished the machine before he died.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Babbage's design was ahead of its time.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Ada's work was instantly recognised as being the first computer program.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ Babbage saw that his machine could write music.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ Ada wrote military and aviation computer programs.

### READING 2

#### THE DIGITAL DIVIDE

A recent survey has shown that the number of people in the United Kingdom who do not intend to get internet access has risen. These people, who are know as 'net refuseniks', make up 44% of UK households, or 11.2 million people in total.

The research also showed that more than 70 percent of these people said that they were not interested in getting connected to the internet. This number has risen from just over 50% in 2005, with most giving lack of computer skills as a reason for not getting internet access, though some also said it was because of the cost. More and more people are getting broadband and high speed net is available almost everywhere in the UK, but there are still a significant number of people who refuse to take the first step.

The cost of getting online is going down and internet speeds are increasing, so many see the main challenge to be explaining the relevance of the internet to this group. This would encourage them to get connected before they are left too far behind. The gap between those who have access to and use the internet is the digital divide, and if the gap continues to widen, those without access will get left behind and miss out on many opportunities, especially in their careers.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ More people in the UK do not intend to get internet access than before.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ The majority of people in the UK are 'net refuseniks'.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Most of those without internet access want to get it.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ The minority of the people surveyed in 2005 weren't interested in having internet access.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ The main reason for not getting internet access is the cost.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ High speed internet is not available everywhere in the UK.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Both costs and speeds are increasing.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Many people think that getting the costs down is the key to this problem.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ The digital divide is widening in the UK.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ Not having access to the internet will only affect people's careers.

### READING 3

#### THE ZX SPECTRUM

In April 1982 a British company, headed by Sir Clive Sinclair, launched the ZX Spectrum computer on the market and sparked an IT revolution.

The tiny black computer with its rubber keys ignited the home computer age both in the UK and elsewhere, which led to an boom in computer manufacturing and developed software programmers whose talent is still evident today.

The ZX Spectrum was the brainchild of the entrepreneur Clive Sinclair, who had previously developed one of the first cheap and slim pocket calculators. The Spectrum was Sinclair's fourth computer, but was by far the most successful.

For many people, the ZX Spectrum was their first experience of using a computer and it soon gained a loyal following. In fact, it would not be a great exaggeration to credit Clive Sinclair and his ZX Spectrum with almost single-handedly creating the IT industry in the UK and providing the first learning tools for the programmers who shape today's video games and information technology.

Even today, there are programs being written for the Spectrum, though it has not been made for years. The computer was so successful that there are many nostalgic users all over the world, who look back on this machine with great affection.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ The ZX Spectrum had an ordinary keyboard.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ The computer had a great impact only in the UK.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ The impact of the computer is still noticeable today.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Clive Sinclair had not worked in electronics before making the computer.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ He only made computers.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ A lot of people had not used a computer before they bought the ZX Spectrum.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ The IT industry in the UK owes a lot to Clive Sinclair.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The computer was influential in the area of video games.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ People are writing programs for it because the computer is still on the market.

10. \_\_\_\_\_ Many people have fond memories of this computer

#### READING 4

### BULLY FOR YOU

The makers of a controversial computer game about bullying have decided to go ahead and launch it despite calls for it to be banned. In the game, players take on the role of a new students at a school and have to fight the bullies, by punching them or hitting them with a baseball bat.

Critics have said that the game encourages violence, but the makers deny this and say that, while there is violence in the game, it is just an amusing look at school life, besides which, the violence in the game is directed against the bullies to protect pupils who are being bullied. The makers also say that players will learn to stand up to bullies.

A British politician, a former minister, has called for it to be banned as it might: affect the way young people perceive violence.

Anti-bullying charities have said that the game might make people respond violently to bullies, which might make things more complicated and result in injuries.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ The makers of the computer game decided not to release it.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ In the game, the player takes on the role of a bully.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ The game is set in a university.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Everyone agrees that the game encourages violence.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ A British politician has spoken in favour of the game.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The politician used to be a minister.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ The politician thinks it might make young people look at violence differently.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The anti-bullying charity thinks the game is good because it might make pupils stand up to bullies.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ The anti-bullying charity thinks that people might get hurt because of this game.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ The makers of the game have changed the contents before releasing it in the UK.

#### READING 5

### SHAMBO

Shambo, the bull at the centre of a three-month legal fight, has been killed. After a positive test for TB, an order was made for his slaughter, in keeping with the law. However, the multi-faith community where he lived went to court to try to save him as he was a sacred animal to Hindus.

A High Court judge said that the order to kill him was unlawful, but the decision was overturned in the Appeal Court. Police had to be called in as worshippers had formed a human shield around the animal to stop him being taken away. Opinion is very divided on the issue- some believe that he was a danger to the national herd and needed to be killed, while others feel that religious beliefs should be respected and the community had offered to provide sufficient measures to ensure that he would not infect any other animals if he contracted the disease as they planned to isolate him. The authorities cut through the security fence and led the bull away. The following morning they announced that he had been given a lethal injection.

The debate on the issue is unlikely to end with the death of Shambo and may widen into a debate about the policy of killing cows that test positive for TB.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Shambo lived in a religious community.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ The community did not do much to try to save him.;
3. \_\_\_\_\_ The case went to more than one court.

4. \_\_\_\_\_ Police went in because there were violent protests.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Everybody feels that he needed to be killed.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ The community wanted Shambo to mix with other animals despite the TB test.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ Shambo was definitely ill with TB.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ The authorities entered the place where Shambo was kept without any problems.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ Shambo was shot dead.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ From now on, no cows that test positive will be killed.



# CHAPTER VI : WRITING SKILLS

## PART I : OVERVIEW OF A LETTER

### • THEORY

#### A. KHÁI NIỆM

##### I. Định nghĩa

Thư tín là văn bản chứa đựng những thông tin mà một người muốn báo cho một (hoặc nhiều) người khác biết.

##### II. Văn phong

###### 1. Thư có thể thức

- Với thư có thể thức hay thư trang trọng (formal letters), người nhận là một tổ chức, ví dụ một công ty, hay là một người khác mà bạn không biết rõ.

- Ngôn ngữ trang trọng và lịch sự.

###### 2. Thư bán thể thức

- Với thư bán thể thức hay thư gần trang trọng (semi-formal letters), người nhận là bạn bè, gia đình, người cấp dưới.

- Ngôn ngữ sẽ thân thiện hơn và ít trang trọng hơn so với thư có thể thức.

###### 3. Thư phi thể thức

- Với thư phi thể thức hay thư thân mật (informal letters), người nhận là bạn bè, gia đình nhưng thân mật hơn.

- Ngôn ngữ thân mật, gần gũi hơn.

##### III. Bố cục

<b>Ngày tháng (Date)</b>	- Viết bên tay phải của bức thư. Ví dụ: May 24, 2008 hoặc 1 Aug, 2018 hoặc 24th May, 2018
<b>Chào hỏi (Salutation)</b>	- Khi người nhận là người bạn biết rõ, sử dụng tên gọi của người nhận (To the recipient you know well, address his/ her first name) Ví dụ: <i>Dear Linda,</i> <i>Dear John,</i> - Khi người nhận là người cấp trên, nói rõ chức danh và tên họ của người nhận (To the recipients who are superior to you, address their title formally and their surname) Ví dụ: <i>Dear Mr. Adam,</i> <i>Dear Mrs./ Miss./Ms. CirLaurence,</i> người nhận là người bạn không biết rõ (To the person you don't know) Ví dụ: <i>Dear Sir(s),</i> <i>Dear Madam,</i> <i>Dear Sir or Madam,</i> <i>To Whom It May Concern,</i> - Khi bạn biết chức danh của người nhận (If you know the title of the recipient) Ví dụ: <i>Dear Professor,</i> <i>Dear Editor,</i> <i>Dear Manager,</i> <i>Dear Dean,</i>
<b>Phần mở đầu (Introduction)</b>	- Giới thiệu bản thân (Nếu cần thiết) - Lí do của bức thư Ví dụ: <i>I'm writing to ask you for a favour.</i>

	- Giới thiệu tình huống, thông tin chung chung
<b>Phần thân (Body)</b>	- Đưa ra thông tin cụ thể về vấn đề/ tình huống (Give more detail about the problem/ case) - Trình bày phần thân của bài viết thư thành nhiều đoạn nhỏ, trong đó mỗi đoạn trả lời một ý được hỏi ở đề bài (Divide the body into several parts and each part covers one main idea stated in the instruction.)
<b>Phần kết thư (Complimentary Close)</b>	- Nếu bắt đầu thư bằng "Dear Sir" hoặc "Madam" (đối với thư từ liên quan đến công việc thì kết thư bằng: <i>Kind regards,</i> <i>Yours truly,</i> <i>Respectfully,</i> <i>Respectfully yours,</i> <i>Faithfully yours,</i> - Nếu bắt đầu thư bằng "Dear + tên cụ thể" thì kết thư bằng: <i>Yours sincerely,</i> <i>Sincerely yours,</i> <i>Regards,</i> <i>Most sincerely,</i> - Nếu viết thư cho người bạn biết rõ thì kết thư bằng: <i>Best wishes,</i> <i>All the best,</i> <i>Take care,</i> <i>Cordially,</i> - Nếu viết thư cho người bạn thân hoặc các thành viên trong gia đình thì kết thư bằng: <i>Yours,</i> <i>Love,</i> <i>Love always,</i> <i>See you,</i> <i>Have a nice day,</i> <i>Lots of love,</i> <i>With all my love,</i> <i>My best,</i>
<b>Phần ký tên (Signature)</b>	- Ký tên ở sau phần kết thư và viết tên đầy đủ của người viết

## B. CÁC DẠNG BÀI VIẾT THƯ

### I. Thư phàn nàn (Letter of complaint)

#### 1. Định nghĩa

Thư phàn nàn là dạng thư có mục đích phàn nàn, đưa ra góp ý hoặc khiếu nại tới mỗi công ty, tổ chức, hay cá nhân về một dịch vụ, sản phẩm hoặc tình huống mà người vi, thư không hài lòng.

#### 2. Bố cục

<b>Phần mở đầu</b>	- Nêu lên những vấn đề cần phàn nàn và bất cứ thông tin quan trọng nào có liên quan - Đưa ra những thông tin chính sau: + Thời gian, địa điểm xảy ra vụ việc + Tên người chịu trách nhiệm bán hàng hoặc cung cấp dịch vụ liên quan + Vấn đề gặp phải là gì + Các thông tin liên quan đến dịch vụ hay sản phẩm gồm: tên sản phẩm, số hiệu, mẫu mã * <b>Lưu ý:</b> ở phần mở đầu, chỉ nêu lên thông tin, tránh đề cập đến cảm xúc cá nhân
<b>Phần thân</b>	- Nêu lên những nguyên nhân và hậu quả của vấn đề cần phàn nàn - Mô tả vấn đề và hậu quả gặp phải: tập trung vào ý chính như thời gian cụ thể khi mua sản phẩm hay sử dụng dịch vụ, thời điểm và hoàn cảnh chi tiết xảy ra vấn đề
<b>Phần kết</b>	- Nêu lên phương án muốn thực hiện để giải quyết vấn đề - Cũng có thể đưa ra thời gian hợp lý để dàn xếp, giải quyết vấn đề

### 3. Bài mẫu

**You have bought an alarm clock through the mail order catalogue of a company but found it went wrong after a few days. Write a letter to the manager and ask for compensation.**

Dear Sir/Madam,

I am writing to you about the voice-controlled alarm clock which I ordered through your mail order catalogue on Feb.20, 2012, and the order number is AC-124.

The alarm clock arrived safely five days ago and worked perfectly well for the first few days but now it has gone wrong. When I shout at the alarm, it keeps on buzzing. While according to the catalogue introduction, the buzzing is supposed to halt simultaneously with a loud noise made. I was careful to follow the instructions set the alarm correctly and place it on my bed-stand whose stop is 'flat and dry' as instructed in the brochures last now, I reset the clock following the Breakdown Clearance procedures in me brochure, the same thing happened again.

I guess this is a rare problem as other than the alarm clock I ordered this time, I ha always found your products to be excellent

Now, I am returning the alarm clock with this letter and would be grateful if you could wareplacement and refund my postage.

I am looking forward to your favorable reply at your earliest convenience.

Yours faithfully,

Jack Nicholson

### 4. Ngôn ngữ, diễn đạt gợi ý

<b>Phần mở đầu</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- I attended a training course and found it terrible. đầu</li><li>- I found the service of ... Department Store poor.</li><li>- Much to my regret, I write this letter to place a complaint against ...</li><li>- I am writing to draw your attention to ...</li><li>- I wish to complain in the strongest terms about ...</li><li>- I am writing to express my dissatisfaction with ...</li><li>- I regret to inform you that ...</li><li>- I am sorry to point it out, but ...</li><li>- I suppose you can imagine my feelings when I discovered that ...</li><li>- I guess you can understand my disappointment when I realized that ...</li></ul>
<b>Phần thân</b>	<p><b>Nêu lên vấn đề (Reporting on the problem)</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- I was careful to follow the instructions for use, honestly.</li><li>- Unfortunately, your product has not performed well because ...</li><li>- That the product does not work properly is not what I expected.</li><li>- That the service was not performed correctly is not what I expected.</li><li>- I was billed the wrong amount.</li><li>- Something was not disclosed clearly or was misrepresented.</li></ul> <p><b>Thể hiện sự thông cảm (Showing positive understanding)</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- I realize that mistakes happen.</li><li>- I am not blaming anyone.</li><li>- Other than the three I've had to return recently, I've always found your products to be excellent.</li><li>- Your engineers have been excellent as always, but without the correct parts they can't do the job required.</li></ul>
<b>Phần kết</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- I'd be grateful if you could send a replacement and refund my postage.</li></ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- To resolve the problem, I would appreciate it if you could send technicians over to repair the machine as soon as possible.</li> <li>- When the matter is resolved, I'd be grateful for a suitable refund of some of my service contract costs.</li> <li>- I look forward to a positive reply from you.</li> <li>- Please make sure that appropriate measures are taken to solve the problem.</li> <li>- I expect a courtesy of a prompt reply from you and the necessary remedial measures to be taken.</li> </ul>
--	--

## 5. Đề luyện tập

### Đề 1:

You bought a TV a week ago but when you got home you discovered it did not work properly. You called customer service to report the problem but you have not yet received any help.

Write a letter to the company and in your letter:

- introduce yourself
- explain the problem
- state what action you would like from the company

Write at least 150 words.

### Đề 2:

You are a student at a language school in New Zealand studying Business English. Part of the course is a summer work placement programme. Unfortunately, you have just learnt from the school that this programme has now been cancelled.

Write a letter to the School Principal and in your letter:

- state your reason for writing - describe the problem and your concerns
- explain what you would like the Principal to do.

Write at least 150 words.

## II. Thư xin lỗi (Letter of apology)

### 1. Định nghĩa

Thư xin lỗi là dạng thư có mục đích bày tỏ sự hối tiếc và muốn xin lỗi về một sai lầm mà người viết đã mắc phải.

### 2. Bố cục

<b>Phần mở đầu</b>	- Nhận lỗi và trách nhiệm cho hành động của mình
<b>Phần thân</b>	- Đưa ra câu hỏi liệu có thể giải quyết được vấn đề không và nếu có sẽ giải quyết như thế nào
<b>Phần kết</b>	- Đưa ra lời xin lỗi một lần nữa - Nên đưa ra lời hứa sẽ không tái phạm lỗi

### 3. Bài mẫu

**One of your close friends is coming to visit your city for a couple of days. You have made arrangements so that you can spend some time with your friend. However, for some unforeseeable reasons, you won't be available any more. Write to your friend to apologize and explain the reason, and tell him/her what to do.**

*Dear Linda,*

*I am terribly sorry that I can't spend any time with you during your stay in Ho Chi Minh city and I'm writing to make my apology.*

*I have already made some arrangements for your visit and planned to accompany you to Cu Chi Tunnels and the Ben Thanh Market. But this morning my boss assigned me to*

take part in one-week training programme in Ha Noi starting on 30th of this July exactly when you arrive in Ho Chi Minh city.

However, I have booked a hotel room for you and have arranged my friend Nam to meet you at the airport. Nam is an English major at Hoa Sen University and he will be on his summer holiday when you are here.

He offers to take you to some tourist resorts that I have mentioned in my letters. I am sure you will find him an excellent guide for his fluent English and profound knowledge.

I sincerely hope that you will kindly accept my apology and that you will have a wonderful stay in Ho Chi Minh city.

Yours, Minh

#### 4. Ngôn ngữ, diễn đạt gợi ý

<p><b>Phần mở đầu</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- I am terribly/ awfully/ very sorry for ...</li> <li>- I owe you an apology for ...</li> <li>- I'm writing to ask you to excuse me for ...</li> <li>- The purpose of this is to convey to you my sincere apologies for ...</li> <li>- Please accept my most sincere apology for ...</li> <li>- Much to my regret, ...</li> <li>- Can you ever forgive me for ...?</li> </ul>
<p><b>Phần thân</b></p>	<p><b>Giải thích và nhắc lại lỗi đã gây ra (Explaining or reporting your mistake)</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Let's not let a little misunderstanding come between us.</li> <li>- I do know that this is very impolite and must have caused you much trouble.</li> <li>- There is simply no excuse for my tardiness.</li> <li>- I realize how much this had inconvenienced you and how angry you must have been.</li> <li>- I feel bad about ...</li> <li>- I was unable to keep my promise owing to the fact that ...</li> <li>- I should(n't) have + P2</li> </ul> <p><b>Đưa ra mong muốn hoặc hành động nhằm bù đắp lỗi lầm (Expressing your wish/ action to rectify the situation)</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- I am sending two 10-euro bills along with my sincerest apology. Hope this will cover the cost of purchasing the same dictionary.</li> <li>- Naturally, I want to replace it or pay you its value. Will you please tell me which you prefer?</li> <li>- I hope the settlement of this matter can meet your wishes.</li> <li>- I accept full responsibility for what happened.</li> <li>- I know this was completely my fault.</li> </ul>
<p><b>Phần kết</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The fault is entirely mine and I deeply regret that it happened.</li> <li>- Please accept my most cordial and humblest apologies for once more</li> <li>- I will try my utmost not to make such a stupid mistake again.</li> <li>- I can understand that it may be difficult for you to accept my apology, but I hope that this letter might help make things better.</li> <li>- I hope this letter will give us both a chance to understand each other better</li> </ul>

#### 5. Đề luyện tập

##### Đề 1:

You said you would attend a friend's dinner party but you did not go.

Write a letter to your friend and in your letter:

- apologize for not attending
- explain why you did not attend
- say what you will do to make up for it

Write at least 150 words.

### Đề 2:

Your neighbours have recently written to you to complain about the noise from your house flat.

Write a letter to your neighbours and in your letter:

- explain the reasons for the noise
- apologise for the noise
- describe what action you will take: to make up for it

Write at least 150 words.

### III. Thư yêu cầu (Letter of request)

#### 1. Định nghĩa

Thư yêu cầu là dạng thư có mục đích đề nghị một tổ chức hay cá nhân nào đó thực hiện một hoặc các yêu cầu được viết trong thư.

#### 2. Bố cục

<b>Phần mở đầu</b>	- Đưa ra lí do tại sao muốn liên hệ với người nhận
<b>Phần thân</b>	- Đưa ra thông tin chi tiết về yêu cầu hay sự nhờ vả
<b>Phần kết</b>	- Đưa ra lời cảm ơn đối với người nhận - Mức độ lịch sự và độ dài của phần kết phụ thuộc vào mức độ khó của sự yêu cầu hay nhờ vả

#### 3. Bài mẫu

**You are accepted as an overseas student by a university. You have a friend who happens to live in the city where you are going. Write to your friend and ask him/her to help you find a place to stay.**

*Dear Alice,*

*How is everything going with you in Southampton? I have been awarded a scholarship study for my master's degree in the University of Southampton for two years and I am planning to leave for the UK at the end of this September. I contacted the school yesterday and was told that they do not have accommodation available for master students. I hope you can help me to find a temporary place to stay for the first few weeks.*

*Preferably, 11 is close to the campus or within minutes' walk to bus stops. I wouldn't mind living in a bedsit or sharing a flat with others, but I would like it to be basically furnished. Please reserve it for three weeks so that I can look for a more suitable one if necessary.*

*If it is too difficult for you at such a short notice, I hope you can help me Doon one week in an inexpensive hostel near the university and I'd like to pay no more than 30 pounds per day for the room. I would like to express my thankfulness and look forward to your early reply.*

*Yours, Sarah*

#### 4. Ngôn ngữ, diễn đạt gợi ý

<b>Phần mở đầu</b>	- I am very interested in ... - I am extremely interested in ... - I take great interest in ... w.) - I would like to obtain some information about/ on ... - I am writing to you in the hope that I may obtain some information about/ on ... - I am writing to enquire about ...
--------------------	---

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- I have been unable to ..., and I would like to seek help from you.</li> <li>- I am writing to let you know that I find it difficult to ...</li> <li>- Because of the difficulty of ..., I have to ask for advice.</li> </ul>
<b>Phần thân</b>	<p><b>Mô tả một vài khó khăn/ vấn đề muốn được giúp đỡ (Describing some of your difficulties/ problems.)</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- I hardly had any idea of what the teacher said in class and almost forgot what I had ever known well.</li> <li>- I contacted the school yesterday and was told that they do not have accommodation available for master students.</li> <li>- I called the human resources department and was told that they don't have any vacant position for accountants.</li> </ul> <p><b>Đưa ra yêu cầu một cách lịch sự (Telling the reader what you want).</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- I wonder if you could ...</li> <li>- Could you possibly ...? 1910 e lyd dibomo un gaib el mo man</li> <li>- Would you please ...?</li> <li>- Would it be possible for you to ...?</li> <li>- I would like you to ...</li> <li>- May I ...? ner forinto</li> <li>- Is it OK if I ...?</li> <li>- Would it be all right if I ...?</li> <li>- I wonder if I could ...</li> <li>- I hope it is OK if I ...</li> <li>- I wish to ...</li> <li>- I would like to ...</li> </ul>
<b>Phần kết</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- I would greatly appreciate your help if you could ...</li> <li>- I would be much obliged to you if you could ...</li> <li>- It would be greatly appreciated if you could ...</li> <li>- I hope you can ... and I will be grateful if you could ...</li> <li>- Would it be possible for you to ...?</li> <li>- Thank you for your time and consideration.</li> <li>- Thank you very much in advance.</li> <li>- Thank you in advance for your help.</li> <li>- Your kind reply will be highly appreciated.</li> <li>- I would like to express my thankfulness and look forward to your early reply.</li> <li>- I am looking forward to a favourable reply at your earliest convenience.</li> </ul>

## 5. Đề luyện tập

### Đề 1:

You are going to another country to study. You would like to do a part-time job while you are studying, so you want to ask a friend who lives there for some help.

Write a letter to your friend and in your letter:

- give details of your study plans
- explain why you want to get a part-time job
- suggest how your friend could help you find a job

Write at least 150 words.

### Đề 2:

You are going on a short course to a training college abroad. It is a college that you have not been to before.

Write a letter to the accommodation officer and in your letter:

- give details of your course and your arrival/departure date
- explain your accommodation needs
- ask for information about getting to and from the college

Write at least 150 words.

#### IV. Thư cảm ơn (Letter of thanks)

##### 1. Định nghĩa

Thư cảm ơn là dạng thư có mục đích bày tỏ sự biết ơn, cảm kích với người nhận thư.

##### 2. Bố cục

<b>Phần mở đầu</b>	- Đưa ra mục đích của bức thư: thể hiện sự cảm ơn, trân trọng đối người nhận
<b>Phần thân</b>	- Mô tả ngắn gọn những gì người nhận đã làm cho mình
<b>Phần kết</b>	- Đưa ra lời cảm ơn chân thành một lần nữa và gợi ý những gì mình muốn làm để đáp trả lại lòng tốt của người nhận

##### 3. Bài mẫu

**You had an operation and stayed in a hospital for two weeks for treatment. Now you recovered and came back to school to continue your study. Write a letter to the hospital to express your appreciation to the doctors and nurses who cared for you.**

*To All Staff of AAA Hospital:*  
*I am writing to express my appreciation for the wonderful treatment and care you all showed to me following my recent operation.*  
*Before I came into the hospital, I was very nervous but you were all so kind, which took away a lot of my anxiety. You demonstrated your great sense of responsibility caring for me when I was helpless in the days immediately following the operation and also gave me the support and encouragement I needed to recover.*  
*I'd like to particularly thank Linda James who provided me with round-the-clock nursing care and to Dr. Jerry Carter for his expertise in the operating theatre. However, I'd also like to thank all the other people, who all played such an important part in my treatment.*  
*Thanks to you all. I'm now able to go back to school and finish my Master's study. Without your help, this would not have been possible. So you can imagine how grateful I am.*  
*Best regards, Peter Stark*

##### 4. Ngôn ngữ, diễn đạt gợi ý (Suggested words and expressions)

<b>Phần mở đầu</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- I want to thank you for/ Thank you so much for ...</li> <li>- I would like to write you and say thanks for ...</li> <li>- I take this opportunity to express my deep appreciation to you for ...</li> <li>- It was most thoughtful and generous of you to ...</li> </ul>
<b>Phần thân</b>	<p><b>Tóm tắt ngắn gọn những gì người nhận đã làm cho mình (Briefly retelling what the recipient has done)</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- You certainly know how to make a guest feel at home.</li> <li>- Your delicious meals were a treat, and your flexibility in adapting to my irregular schedule made many things possible.</li> <li>- The book you suggested was exactly what I needed and it has saved me countless hours.</li> <li>- This information is certain to help our future cooperation.</li> </ul>



	<p><b>Thể hiện cảm xúc của mình (Expressing your emotions)</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Because of you, I was able to relax.</li> <li>- It was a complete surprise for me and a thrill I'll never forget.</li> <li>- I am sure this job would not have come to me without your help.</li> <li>- The party you gave in my honour was quite a surprise and loads of fun.</li> </ul>
<b>Phần kết</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- I really appreciate it.</li> <li>- I appreciate it more than I can say.</li> <li>- It was kind and generous of you to do this for me.</li> <li>- Thank you once again, from the bottom of my heart.</li> <li>- Please accept our most sincere feelings of gratitude.</li> <li>- I hope you know how much I appreciate your hospitality, and your many kindnesses to me.</li> </ul>

### 5. Đề luyện tập

#### Đề 1:

You and some friends ate a meal at a restaurant to celebrate a special occasion, and you were very pleased with the food and service. Write a letter to the restaurant manager and in your letter you should:

- give details of your visit to the restaurant
- explain the reason for the celebration
- say what was good about the food and the service

Write at least 150 words.

#### Đề 2:

After being involved in an accident, you were looked after by a person you did not know before.

Write a special thank you letter to express your gratitude and in your letter you should:

- introduce yourself and let him/her know why you are writing
- express your appreciation
- offer him/her to visit your home with his/her family

Write at least 150 words.

## SAMPLE LETTERS FOR GIFTED STUDENTS

### TEST 1

*You recently received an email from your English-speaking friend, Pat, inviting you to visit and stay with his family.*

*You said you'd like to come and stay for a while in the summer, so I'm writing to ask if you'd like to visit in July. By the way, it's my brother Tim's 18th birthday on 10th July so try to be here then, because there'll be a big special party to go to. Lots of our friends and relatives will be there!*

*I'm on holiday in July too, so perhaps we could go camping for a few days as well? If you're coming, let me know if there's anything else you'd particularly like to do. Then I can make some plans.*

Dear Pat,

Thank you for your email. It's great to hear from your news. I am writing to tell you I am sure I would like to come and stay with you for a while in the summer. I think July seems to be perfect for my visit because I don't go to school and the weather is also fine.

By the way, It's your brother Tim's birthday, so I try to arrive early to help you with the preparation. I know your brother, Tim fancy reading books. I intend to give him a novel of "Harry Potter" series which is popular for teenagers. I think he will love it so much.

Although camping is my favorite activity, I'm afraid I can't go camping with you for a few days as well because I want to visit my old teacher in the countryside instead. He is my English teacher.

During my staying in your country, there are lots of interesting things we could do such as sightseeing, swimming, photography and so on that makes me close to nature and feel healthy after the trip. I'm sure we will have lot of fun. I'm eager for this trip,

I can't wait to see you. I am looking forward to hearing from you soon.

Best wishes,

### TEST 2

*You have received a letter from your English-speaking friend, Sam, asking you about a festival in your country.*

Dear Sam,

Thanks for your letter. It's great to hear from you. You can know that there are many holidays throughout the year in my country, but the most important festival in my country is Tet holiday. For the Vietnamese people, Tet festival is like a combination of Western Saint Sylvester, New Year's Day, Christmas, Easter and Thanksgiving. It is the festival of Purity and Renewal. On this occasion, people stop working and stay at home to clean and decorate the house. Everyone believe that cleaning and decorating the house will get rid of the bad fortunes associated with the old year. People often visit their relatives for New Year's greetings. Children wear new clothes and they usually receive red envelopes from older people. One of the most traditional special foods for New Year (Tet) of Vietnamese is Banh Chung or sticky rice cake. Banh Chung is a must among other foods to be placed on the ancestors' altars during Tet holiday.

What about popular celebration in your country? Can you tell me about it? I am very happy if you come and enjoy with us on this occasion in the next time. I look forward to hearing from you.

Love,

### TEST 3

*You have received the following letter from your English-speaking friend, Sam, asking you about how to get to your apartment from the airport.*

*Thanks for inviting me to stay with you when I visit your country next month. I'm not sure how to get to your apartment from the airport. Could you write back giving me some basic instructions? What would be the best method of transport for me? I'd prefer one that isn't too expensive! Just one other thing - what will the weather be like when I get there? (Just so I'll know what clothes to pack!) .....*

Dear Sam,

I got your letter this morning and it's great to know that you are visiting my country next week. I know this is going to be your first time in Viet nam, so I'll give some useful information. About your questions how to get from the airport to our apartment. Well, it won't be difficult. There are many ways to get to my apartment from the airport. When you arrive at Tan Son Nhat airport, take the bus because it is cheaper, I'm afraid that it takes you much time to get here. So it is better for you to take a taxi motorbike. I think it's not only cheaper but also faster for you.

About the weather, it's always hot here. The days are generally sunny, don't forget about coats and jackets! It's all right if you bring mainly summer clothes such as shorts, T-shirts and sandals. Be sure to bring also some sun block, sunglasses and a swimming suit. I think you will fine with it.

I can't wait to see you. I'm looking forward to your arrival. . If you want to ask me more information or need some advice you can send me a mail or give me a ring. See you in a few weeks.

### TEST 4

*Some English friends, Peter and Sue Hall, have written to you for advice. Their 20 year old son, Tom wants to get a job teaching English in your country.*

*Tom's doing a teacher-training course at the moment, as you know, but he thinks he ought to learn something of the language before he comes, which seems like a good idea. He bought a "Teach Yourself" book on the language, but we were wondering if you had any other suggestions which would help him. It's quite a while since he studied a language at school, so He'd also be really grateful for some general tips on learning a language.*

Dear Peter and Sue,

I'm very glad to hear that Tom wants to be an English teacher in my country. He's going to learn Vietnamese and I think it is necessary for him to teach English here. And so I will give him some advices to help him learn Vietnamese better.

Firstly, Tom doesn't need to care about the grammar. Because the language we speak is mainly based on the meaning of words, and the grammar we use is very irregular. So that he should concentrate more on studying the vocabulary than learning grammar.

Secondly, the book which he bought cannot help him learn Vietnamese. Because our language is very diversified and a book is never able to contain all of it. Tom ought to meet some Vietnamese people or someone who has experience in learning Vietnamese. Native speakers is always a good choice for learning a language. He also may talk to me through the internet. I may teach him whatever I can.

I'm looking forward to news from you soon. It'll be very fantastic if Tom can come here and be a teacher. Your friends,

### TEST 5

*You recently helped organize a college ski trip and you have received this email from a parent of one of a students went.*

*I understand you were one of the organizers of our son's ski trip. I have to say my husband and I were extremely dissatisfied with the arrangements. My son has informed us that the ski slopes were poor, the lessons were fewer than promised and the accommodation was inadequate. Can you please give us a satisfactory explanation?*

Dear Ms White,

First, let me appologise for any disappointment your son experienced on our ski trip. It is true that there were several concerns. Since we had been led to believe by the company that there would be sufficient slopes for both beginners and advanced skiers, we were extremely upset when this turned out to not to be the case. It was also unfortunate that lack of snow meant that artificial snow had to be used instead.

As for the question of lessons, if you look at the letter we sent you, you will see that only five one-hour lessons were included in the price and that extra hours would have to be paid for separately.

In relation to accommodation, I am not quite sure what you are referring to. I know that in one room there were not enough beds but this was not the case in your son's room.

We would like to assure you that we take all complaints seriously. We have already decided that next year we will change the company and the location for our trip and we hope that your son will consider joining us again.

Yours sincerely,

### TEST 6

*You have just received a letter from your English pen friend, accepting your invitation to come and stay with you just after Christmas.*

*Thanks very much for the invitation to stay with your family for a few days after Christmas- of course I'd love to come. I've already found out about flights, and I could arrive at 12:30 midday on the 27th December. As you*

*know, I've never been abroad during the Christmas holidays so I have no idea what to expect. What kind of things do you normally do then? And what's the weather like there at that time of year? Let me know if there are any special clothes I should bring.*

Dear John,

Thank you very much for your letter. It's great to know that you accept my invitation to come and stay with us.

As you can see, everything is very peaceful and quiet here. We normally spend the time just relaxing at home, getting over all the celebrations and finishing off the Christmas food. We either read or play games and occasionally go out for a walk in the snow.

When you come here. We 'd like to take you to the mountain for a few days. It's very beautiful here at this time of the year. We can go skiing during the day. And in the evenings, we can go out to try some special food in local restaurants because the area is famous for it's good food.

The temperature drop to 10 degrees centigrade in December. It's certainly very cold. So make sure to bring some warm clothes, a pair of walking boots would be ideal as well as some waterproof trousers if you have them just in case it becomes cold at midnight.

That's all for now. I will pick you up at the airport on the 27th. I'm looking forward to your arrival. See you soon.

Love,

### TEST 7

*You are studying English in London and you've just received a letter from your friend, Ken, who is a sailing instructor on the south coast.*

*And I'm really enjoying the job.*

*By the way, we're going to run weekend sailing courses for complete beginners. Why don't you come down to Hamble and do one? You're always said you wanted to learn to sail, so this would be an ideal opportunity. And after only a few weekends you could get your certificate*

Dear Ken,

It is my great pleasure to write this letter in replying to your requests and suggestions. I feel very happy when you're really interested in your job. I am studying English in London and in this time, I am trying to live and study there. As you know sailing is one of the most interesting hobbies when I was a child Therefore, I think that I will come down to Hamble to take part in your sailing courses in the first one next month for complete beginners. Because, by joining this course I will study the ways to sail with my friends and get my certificate.

I am looking forward from your news. Please let me know soon more complete information about your course such as fee, studying environment or teachers and so on.

Yours sincerely,

### TEST 8

*You English friend, Tom came to visit you recently and he has just sent you an email and some photos:*

*Thanks for taking me to the airport. I hope your journey home wasn't too long. I really enjoyed staying with you. Here are the photos I took. Which one do you like best? When I got home, I realized I left my watch behind, It's green and gold. You haven't found it, have you? I think we'll have a great time together when you come here in September. We could either spend the whole time in my family's flat in the city or stay on my uncle's farm in the countryside? Which would you like to do?*

Dear Tom,

Thanks for your email. It was great to hear from you. How are you? I hope you're well. First of all, it is that fact that it took me over 3 hours to get home because there was a traffic accident happening on the street that caused the long traffic jams which I meet. How terrible!

I saw all the photos and I like them all because they are beautiful but my favorite is the one in the park which we were together. It looks more attractive and natural.

Don't worry about your watch. When I entered my bed room I found it on the desk next to the computer. Let me send it back to you.

I'm really looking forward to my trip in September. I would prefer to stay at your uncle's house because I like farm life, natural beauties, fresh air. Moreover, we can take part in outdoor activities such as hiking, mountain climbing, swimming in a river. I'm sure we will have a lot of fun.

I can't wait to see you soon. Drop me a line.

Love,

### TEST 9:

*You have just received a letter from your English pen pal, Mark, inviting you to come and stay with him in the summer.*

*I'm sorry I haven't written sooner, but I'm busy helping my parents out on the farm. It's a great fun though I haven't got used to getting up at six every morning to milk the cows. We often have the radio on while we're doing it, so it's not too bad. Then, once we have had breakfast, we tend to spend the rest of the day outside, either in the fields or looking after the sheep. Do you remember Lady, our oldest sheepdog? Well, she has just had puppies! If you are free in the summer, you could come and see them all and help with the harvest as well. Let me know if you can make it- We'd love to see you again.*

Dear Mark,

It's really nice to receive your news. I know that you are busy helping your parents out on the farm so do not worry about writing to me late. Getting up early is not easy for us but I think it will be very interesting when we get up early to milk the cows. I was amazed when you said that you often listen to the radio while milking, I cannot imagine that before but I think it will be very fantastic.

How can I forget that cute old sheepdog, she was always around me when I was there. It's such wonderful news about the puppies, I am so excited to play with them on my next trip.

In fact, I am going to ask you if I can come to stay on your farm this summer, I am so happy when you suggest like that, of course, I really want to have a meaningful holiday by helping your family with the harvest

Looking forward to seeing you in the summer

Love,

### TEST 10

*You have received a letter from your English-speaking friend, Renate, who is planning to visit you. Read part of his letter below.*

*It was great to talk on the phone last week about my visit to your country. I'm sorry that you won't be home when I visit but it's great that your brother can meet me at the airport and let me stay at his house. As I have only 10 days, where would you recommend I visit? And also what is the best way to travel? Is it expensive to hire a car? One other thing, I'd like to bring your brother a present. What do you think he'd like? Maybe he'd like some of my country's chocolate.*

Dear Renate

I'm glad to receive your letter from you. Although I won't be home when you visit my country, my brother will replace you to be a guide for you during your visit so I feel very safe.

There are many beautiful places so that you can have the opportunity to come. For example, you can go Han Mac Tu, Bai Trung, Han Mac Tu, Hoang Hau beach, Life's beach, Nhon Ly and so on. I can be sure that you can have comfortable and relaxed moments with your family or loved friends

there. Indeed, in my opinion, the best way for you to travel is motorbike because traffic in my country is not too busy when compared to other cities including Ho Chi Minh city. Moreover, you can also be interesting to note that you won't have spend too much money to hire a car if you want. On behalf my brother, I thank you of giving a present to him when you come here. One of his hobbies is reading books; therefore, you can give him to some novel books, or short stories and so on. I'm sorry to let me know that my brother is not interested in eating sweet food, so you don't have to bring you your country's chocolate.

I'm looking to forward from hearing your news soon.

## PART II : OVERVIEW OF A PARAGRAPH

### • THEORY

#### A. KHÁI NIỆM

##### 1. Định nghĩa

Đoạn văn (a paragraph) là tập hợp các câu có liên kết chặt chẽ với nhau về nội dung và Hình thức nhằm diễn đạt hoàn chỉnh ý tưởng chính (main idea) về 1 chủ đề (topic). Đoạn văn bắt đầu bằng chữ cái viết hoa, lùi đầu dòng và kết thúc bằng dấu chấm ngắt câu và xuống dòng.

##### 2, Bố cục

Đoạn văn hoàn chỉnh gồm có 1 câu mở đoạn (a topic sentence), các câu thân đoạn (body sentences) và 1 câu kết đoạn (a concluding sentence).

- Câu mở đoạn thường là câu đầu tiên, thể hiện ý chính của đoạn văn.

- Các câu thân đoạn diễn giải câu mở đoạn, cung cấp thêm thông tin chi tiết về chủ đề.

- Câu kết đoạn là câu cuối cùng của đoạn văn, nhắc lại ý chính hoặc đưa ra nhận xét cuối cùng về chủ đề.

##### Indonesia - Something Interesting at Every Turn

*By Ken Jones*

If you dream of travelling to a country with beautiful tropical islands wonderful food, beautiful places to go sightseeing, and very friendly people, you should visit Indonesia. *[If you look at the map, the first thing you notice is that Indonesia is made up of islands - more than 17,000 of non them. Travelling between islands by boat is great fun. Just like the many islands, there are also many different groups of people living in Indonesia. In fact, there are around 300 different groups! Most Indonesians are Malay, but others are Javanese, Balinese, Chinese, or Indian. All these groups together make Indonesian culture very interesting. Finally, Indonesia has many cities and historical sights to see. Jakarta, the capital city, is fast becoming a modern centre of commerce, yet the ancient temples on the island of Bali show that the country's old traditions are still alive.]* **All the people, places, and things to see definitely make Indonesia a great place for a vacation.**

*(College Writing: From Paragraph to Essay)*

→ a topic sentence

→ body sentences

→ a concluding sentence

##### 3. Cách viết một đoạn văn

###### 3.1. Câu mở đoạn

Thường là câu đầu tiên của đoạn văn và cho người đọc biết chủ đề của đoạn văn cũng như thông báo cho người đọc biết người viết sẽ viết gì về chủ đề đó. Trong câu mở đoạn có 2 thành phần chính: chủ đề (topic) và ý tưởng chủ đạo (controlling idea).

**Ví dụ :** *Da Nang is considered the most worth-living cities in Vietnam.*

Topic

controlling idea

Ý tưởng chủ đạo chính là phần giới hạn nội dung của đoạn văn, cho người đọc biết rằng đoạn văn chỉ nói đến những khía cạnh nào đó của chủ đề thôi chứ không phải những khía cạnh khác. Những khía cạnh này sẽ được giải thích, làm rõ, chứng minh ở thân đoạn. Do đó ý tưởng chủ đạo không nên là điều hiển nhiên hoặc là thông tin quá chi tiết.

Ví dụ: - *A laptop is a machine. (điều hiển nhiên)*

- *I bought a new laptop last week. (thông tin quá chi tiết)*

- *A laptop is a useful tool for me to study English, ý tưởng chủ đạo hợp lý)*

### 3.2. Các câu thân đoạn

Các câu thân đoạn nằm sau câu mở đoạn và cung cấp thêm thông tin cho chủ đề cũng như ý tưởng chủ đạo. Người viết có thể nêu định nghĩa, giải thích và đưa ra ví dụ minh họa ở các câu thân đoạn.

**Ví dụ:**

**Câu mở đoạn:** *Young people are too dependent on computers.*

**Thân đoạn:**

- Đưa ra định nghĩa: *Dependency on computers means that young people cannot perform the normal tasks and functions of daily life without them.*

- Giải thích: *In the old days, people memorized important information, but today's youth rely on their computers, cell phones, and PDA's to do assignments, record numbers, and save important information. As a result, they can find themselves unprepared in an emergency such as an electrical blackout. Once their batteries die, these people will not be able to communicate.*

- Đưa ra ví dụ minh họa: *For example, I do all my schoolwork on my computer. When my computer crashed last week, I lost my only draft of an essay that was due the next day. As a result, I got a bad grade.*

*(Effective Academic Writing 1: The Paragraph)*

### 3.3. Câu kết đoạn

Đây là câu cuối cùng trong đoạn. Câu này có thể diễn đạt lại câu mở đoạn bằng từ ngữ, cấu trúc câu khác hoặc tóm tắt các ý chính trình bày ở thân đoạn.

**Ví dụ:**

- Câu mở đoạn: *My favourite class is psychology.*

- Câu kết đoạn: *Learning about how the mind works makes psychology my favourite class. (tóm tắt các ý chính trong thân đoạn)*

- Câu mở đoạn: *For me, a friend is someone who accepts you the way you are.*

- Câu kết đoạn: *Someone who likes me the way I am is a good friend for me. (diễn đạt lại câu mở đoạn)*

Ngoài ra, người viết có thể dùng các cách sau để kết thúc đoạn văn:

- cảnh báo người đọc: *If you do not follow these steps, you may not get the grad that you want.*

- đưa ra dự đoán: *The automotive industry will change, and soon everyone will be driving pollution-free cars.*

- đưa ra ý kiến, quan điểm về chủ đề: *Some people might disagree, but I believe lamb is the best meat for grilling.*

## B. CÁC DẠNG ĐOẠN VĂN

### I. đoạn văn miêu tả (a descriptive paragraph)

#### 1. Định nghĩa

Trong đoạn văn miêu tả, người viết sử dụng từ ngữ để giúp người đọc hình dung về đối tượng được miêu tả. Do đó người đọc có thể hiểu được đối tượng đó trông ra làm sao, mùi vị và âm thanh như thế nào, được đặt ở đâu, khi nào và cảm nhận được cảm xúc của người viết.

#### 2. Bố cục

Câu mở đoạn



- Giới thiệu đối tượng được miêu tả - Thể hiện cảm nhận chung hoặc ý kiến của người viết về đối tượng đó
<b>Thân đoạn</b>
- Cung cấp thêm thông tin về đối tượng - Miêu tả chi tiết về đối tượng (hình thức, tính chất) - Miêu tả chi tiết cảm nhận của người viết
<b>Câu kết đoạn</b>
- Diễn đạt lại câu mở đoạn bằng từ ngữ, cấu trúc câu khác hoặc tóm tắt các ý chính trình bày ở thân đoạn

### 3. Bài mẫu

#### *The Long Life of my Grandfather's Car*

*I own a car that has special meaning for me because it belonged to my grandfather. When he was a young man, he saved money so he could buy a beautiful car to use on trips around the country. He finally bought a Cadillac convertible. It was white and blue with silver trim. There were white circles on the tires, and it had a powerful horn that made people jump out of his way. The seats were also white, but the dashboard was black. The steering wheel had a brown leather cover. The mats were gray and always clean. My grandfather took very good care of the car, and after he died my uncle gave it to me. I am very happy because it still has the original motor, and the body is intact. If it has problems, I will fix it myself. I plan to take very good care of my grandfather's car because someday I will use it to travel to all the states and cities that my grandfather visited when he was a young man.*

*(Effective Academic Writing 1: The Paragraph)*

### 4. Đề luyện tập

Write a paragraph (150-200 words) on the following topics:

1. Describe a firework display.
2. Describe your favourite restaurant.
3. Describe your favourite film/ book.
4. Describe your favourite character.

## II. Đoạn văn tường thuật (a narrative paragraph)

### 1. Khái niệm

Trong đoạn văn tường thuật, người viết kể về những tình tiết, sự kiện, vv. đã xảy ra ở quá khứ, có thể là câu chuyện của bản thân hoặc của một ai đó. Dạng đoạn văn . thường tập trung vào việc trình bày logic và hệ thống theo trình tự thời gian, sự việc diễn ra trước, sự việc nào diễn ra sau. Đoạn văn tường thuật thường bao gồm các vết cần thiết cho sự phát triển của một câu chuyện, ví dụ như: bối cảnh, các nhân vật có hoạt động, nhận xét về sự kiện đó.

### 2. Bố cục

<b>Câu mở đoạn</b>
- Giới thiệu cho người biết câu chuyện về sự việc gì - Có thể giới thiệu thời gian, địa điểm diễn ra câu chuyện - Thu hút được sự chú ý của người đọc
<b>Thân đoạn</b>
- Kể chi tiết về câu chuyện đã diễn ra như thế nào - Bao gồm cảm nhận của người viết, ví dụ như người viết đã nhìn thấy gì, nghe thấy gì, nghĩ thấy gì, cảm thấy gì - Có thể đưa ra cảm xúc của người viết trong suốt câu chuyện
<b>Câu kết đoạn</b>

- “Đóng lại” câu chuyện
- Đưa ra nhận xét hoặc cảm nhận của người viết sau câu chuyện là gì

### 3. Bài mẫu

#### *A Hair-raising Experience*

*One evening, my mom was downstairs doing the laundry. As usual, she was trying to do ten jobs at once when she grabbed the wet clothes from the washer and tossed them into the dryer. She slammed the dryer door, turned the timer, and started to run upstairs. All of a sudden, a whining sound stopped her in her tracks. The sound was coming from the dryer. She yelled for me. As I raced downstairs, the sound grew louder and louder. I flung the dryer door open. There to our surprise was Mica, our cat he looked like someone who had just got off a Tilt-A-Whirl ride. His eyes bugged out, and his hair looked like a cartoon character with a finger in an electric outlet. Mica darted out of the dryer and up the stairs. After that, Mom always checked out the dryer before slamming the door, and Mica stayed clear of the laundry room for a long, long time.*

(Write Source)

### 4. Đề luyện tập

Write a paragraph (150-200 words) on the following topics:

1. Your embarrassing experience
2. A strange or interesting incident that you witnessed
3. Your heartbreaking moment

## II. Đoạn văn miêu tả quá trình (a process paragraph)

### 1. Định nghĩa

Trong đoạn văn miêu tả quá trình, người viết tập trung vào việc giải thích cách thức thực hiện một công việc hoặc nhiệm vụ nào đó bằng cách trả lời câu hỏi làm như thế nào, theo cách nào.

### 2. Bố cục

#### Câu mở đoạn

- Giới thiệu nhiệm vụ hoặc quá trình mà người viết sẽ giải thích ở thân đoạn

#### Thân đoạn

- Miêu tả các bước thực hiện một cách chi tiết
- Có thể cung cấp thông tin về nhiệm vụ/ quá trình để người đọc hiểu được tại sao nhiệm vụ, quá trình này cần thiết hoặc quan trọng
- Có thể bổ sung thông tin về các dụng cụ cần để thực hiện nhiệm vụ quá trình

#### Câu kết đoạn

- Diễn đạt lại câu mở đoạn bằng từ ngữ, cấu trúc khác
- Đưa ra gợi ý hoặc cảnh báo nhằm giúp người đọc thực hiện nhiệm vụ/ quá trình dễ dàng hơn

### 3. Bài mẫu

*Planning a vacation abroad? Here are some suggestions to make your trip successful. First, find out if you need a visa for the country that you want to visit. Make sure you have enough time to apply for it before you buy your ticket. After you have found out about visas, you should research airfares and schedules. Next, look for the best flight for you. Remember, the cheapest flight may stop over in several cities and reduce the amount of time you have to spend at your destination. You might want to fly direct. While you are researching flights, you can also ask your travel agent about getting a good deal on a hotel. It's a good idea to book your flight and hotel early if you are sure of your destination. If you haven't already done it, the next step is to learn about places to visit, the weather, the food, and other details about the country. The Internet can be a very useful source of information. Finally, on the day of your flight, make sure you go to the airport at least two hours before your flight. Now you are ready to start enjoying your vacation!*

(College Writing: From Paragraph to Essay)

#### 4. Đề luyện tập

Write a paragraph (150-200 words) on the following topics:

1. How to create a successful profile?
2. How to use social networks (Facebook, Twitter, Instagram, etc.) sensibly and effectively?
3. How to choose a major in college?

#### IV. Đoạn văn so sánh - đối chiếu (a compare-contrast paragraph)

##### 1. Định nghĩa

Trong đoạn văn so sánh - đối chiếu, người viết trình bày sự giống và khác nhau của hai đối tượng người, vật, sự việc)

##### 2. Bố cục

Ta có thể viết lần lượt điểm giống hoặc khác nhau của cả hai đối tượng (block organization) hay chia nhỏ từng ý rồi chỉ ra điểm giống và khác nhau của hai đối tượng (point-by-point organization).

Câu mở đoạn	
- Giới thiệu hai đối tượng được so sánh - Trình bày sự giống nhau và/ hoặc khác nhau giữa hai đối tượng	
Thân đoạn	
<p><b>Block organization</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Đối tượng 1: những đặc điểm được so sánh</li><li>- Đối tượng 2: những đặc điểm tương ứng được so sánh với đối tượng 1</li></ul> <p><b>Hoặc</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Tất cả điểm giống nhau giữa đối tượng 1 và đối tượng 2</li><li>- Tất cả điểm khác nhau giữa đối tượng 1 và đối tượng 2</li></ul>	<p><b>Point-by-point organization</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>- Điểm giống nhau/ khác nhau 1: đặc điểm: của đối tượng 1 và đối tượng 2</li><li>- Điểm giống nhau/ khác nhau 2: đặc điểm của đối tượng 1, đối tượng 2</li><li>- Điểm giống nhau/ khác nhau 3: đặc điểm của đối tượng 1, đối tượng 2</li></ul>
Câu kết đoạn	
- Tóm tắt lại những điểm giống nhau và/ hoặc khác nhau giữa hai đối tượng - Đưa ra cảm nhận của người viết về hai đối tượng	

##### 3. Bài mẫu

###### Block organization

*Reading a story in a book is often very different from seeing it as a movie. When you read a story, you need to use your imagination. A book usually gives a lot of description about the people, places, and things in the story, so you can create pictures in your mind. In addition, the conversations between people are always written with details that describe how the people look or feel while they are talking. When you read, you use a lot of imagination to help "see" the characters in the story. However, when you see a movie, it is a different experience. When you watch a movie, you do not need to use your imagination. The pictures on the screen give all the details about the people, places and things in the story. The conversations are spoken out loud, so you just listen and watch. The feelings of the people come through their faces, body movements, and voices. Although a book and a movie might tell the same story, reading a book and watching a movie are very different experiences.*

(College Writing: From Paragraph to Essay)

#### 4. Đề luyện tập

Write a paragraph (150-200 words) on the following topics:

1. Compare two historical events
2. Compare two political candidates/ politicians

3. Compare working parents and stay-at-home parents
4. Compare news in a newspaper and news on the Internet

## V. Đoạn văn nguyên nhân – hệ quả (a cause-effect paragraph)

### 1. Định nghĩa

Trong đoạn văn nguyên nhân – hệ quả, người đưa ra nguyên nhân của một sự việc và hoặc ảnh hưởng, tác động của một sự việc.

### 2. Bố cục

Câu mở đoạn
- Giới thiệu nguyên nhân của sự việc và/ hoặc ảnh hưởng, tác động của sự việc
Thân đoạn
- Giải thích nguyên nhân của sự việc một cách chi tiết - Và/ Hoặc nêu ra các ảnh hưởng, tác động của sự việc một cách chi tiết
Câu kết đoạn
Tóm tắt lại những nguyên nhân và/ hoặc tác động của sự việc - Thể hiện cảm nhận của người viết về sự việc

### 3. Bài mẫu Đoạn văn nêu nguyên nhân (A cause paragraph)

#### *Why I Stopped Smoking*

*For one thing, I realized that my cigarette smoke bothered others, irritating people's eyes and causing them to cough and sneeze. They also had to put up with my stinking smoker's reath. Also, cigarettes are a messy habit. Our house was littered with ashtrays piled high with butts, , matchsticks, and ashes, and the children were always knocking them over cigarettes are expensive, and I estimated that the carton a week that I was smoking cost me unout \$2,000 a year. Another reason I stopped was because I felt exploited. I hated the thought of wealthy, greedy corporations making money off my sweat and blood. The rich may keep getting richer, but - at least as regards cigarettes - with no thanks to me. Cigarettes were also inconvenient. Whenever I smoked, I would have to drink something to wet my dry throat, and that meant I had to keep going to the bathroom all the time. I sometimes seemed to spend whole weekends doing nothing but smoking, drinking, and going to the bathroom. Most of all I resolved to stop smoking when the message about cigarettes being harmful to health finally got through to me. I had known they could hurt the smoker - in fact, a heavy smoker I know from work is in Eagleville Hospital now with lung cancer. But when I realized what secondhand smoke could do to my wife and children, causing them bronchial problems and even increasing their risk of cancer, it really bothered me.*

*(Exploring Writing: Sentences and Paragraphs 4th edition)*

### Đoạn văn nêu kết quả (An effect paragraph)

#### *New Puppy in the House*

*Buying a new puppy can have significant effects on a household. For one thing, the puppy keeps the entire family awake for at least two solid weeks. Every night when the puppy is placed in its box, it begins to howl, yip, and whine. Even after the lights go out and the house quiets down, the puppy continues to moan. A second effect is that the puppy tortures the family by destroying material possessions. Every day something different is damaged. Family members find chewed belts and shoes, gnawed table legs, and ripped sofa cushions leaking stuffing. In addition, the puppy often misses the paper during the papertraining stage of life, thus making the house smell like the public restroom at a city bus station. Maybe the most serious problem, though, is that the puppy causes family arguments. Parents argue with children about who is supposed to feed and walk the dog. Children argue about who gets to play with the puppy first. Puppies are adorable, and no child can resist their charm. Everyone argues about who left socks and shoes around for the puppy to find. These continual*

arguments, along with the effects of sleeplessness and the loss of valued possessions, can really disrupt a household. Only when the puppy gets a bit older does the household settle back to normal.

(Exploring Writing: Sentences and Paragraphs 2nd edition)

#### 4. Đề luyện tập Write a paragraph (150-200 words) on the following topics:

1. Causes/ effects of getting a college degree
2. Causes/ effects of not getting enough sleep
3. Causes/ effects of a major change in your life

#### VI. Đoạn văn vấn đề - giải pháp (a problem-solution paragraph)

##### 1. Định nghĩa

Trong đoạn văn vấn đề - giải pháp, người viết giải thích thực trạng của một vấn đề và/ hoặc đưa ra một hoặc nhiều giải pháp cho vấn đề đó.

##### 2. Bố cục

<b>Câu mở đoạn</b>
đi thiệu thực trạng vấn đề và/ hoặc giải pháp
<b>Thân đoạn</b>
Miêu tả thực trạng vấn đề một cách chi tiết Đưa ra các giải pháp cho vấn đề đó.
<b>Câu kết đoạn</b>
Tóm tắt lại những giải pháp cho vấn đề kêu gọi người đọc thực hiện những giải pháp đó

##### 3. Bài mẫu

*Deforestation is a serious problem because forests and trees aren't just pretty to look at, they do an important job making the earth's environment suitable for life. They clean the air, store water, preserve soil, and provide homes for animals. They also supply food, fuel, wood products, and paper products for humans. In the past fifty years, more than half of the world's rain forests have been destroyed. Today, the forests of the world are being cut down at a rate of fifty acres every minute! Scientists say that if deforestation continues, the world's climate may change, floods may become more common, and animals will die. One solution to the problem of deforestation is to use less paper. If you use less paper, fewer trees will be cut for paper making. How can you use less paper? One answer is to reduce your paper use by using both sides of the paper when you photocopy, write a letter, or write a paper for school. A second answer is to reuse old paper when you can, rather than using a new sheet of paper. The backs of old envelopes are perfect for shopping lists or phone messages, and when you write a rough draft of an essay, write it on the back of something else. A final answer is to recycle used paper products instead of throwing them away. Most schools, offices, and neighbourhoods have some kind of recycling centre. If you follow the three Rs - reduce, reuse, and recycle - you can help save the world's forests.*

(College Writing: From Paragraph to Essay)

#### 4. Đề luyện tập Write a paragraph (150-200 words) on the following topics:

1. How can social media bullying be prevented?
2. How has texting affected face-to-face relationships?
3. How can we prevent people from dropping out of high school?

#### VII. Đoạn văn đưa ra ý kiến (an opinion paragraph)

##### 1. Định nghĩa

"trong đoạn văn đưa ra ý kiến, người viết bày tỏ quan điểm, thái độ của mình về một chủ đề hay vấn đề nào đó nhằm thuyết phục người đọc đồng ý với mình với việc đưa ra các lí do thích hợp.

##### 2. Bố cục

<b>Câu mở đoạn</b>
--------------------

- Giới thiệu chủ đề vấn đề - Người viết thể hiện ý kiến, quan điểm của mình về chủ đề/ vấn đề đó.
<b>Thân đoạn</b>
- Đưa ra lí do giải thích cho ý kiến, quan điểm của người viết - người viết dùng số liệu thực tế, kinh nghiệm bản thân, đưa ra cách giải thích giúp cho ý kiến, quan điểm của mình có tính thuyết phục.
<b>Kết đoạn</b>
* Diễn đạt lại ý kiến, quan điểm của người viết bằng từ ngữ, cấu trúc khác - Đưa ra nhận xét về ý kiến đó - Tóm tắt các lý do chính dẫn đến ý kiến đó

### 3. Bài mẫu

#### *Driving and Cell Phones*

*Because cell phones and driving are a deadly mix, I am in favour of a ban on cell phone use by drivers. The most obvious reason for this ban is to save lives. Each year, thousands of drivers are killed because they are talking on cell phones instead of watching the road while they are driving. This first reason should be enough to support a ban on cell phones when driving, but I have two other reasons. My second reason is that these drivers cause accidents that kill other people. Sometimes these drivers kill other drivers; sometimes they kill passengers or even pedestrians. These drivers certainly do not have the right to endanger others' lives! Finally, even in cases where there are no injuries or deaths, damage to cars from these accidents costs us millions of dollars as well as countless hours of lost work. To me, banning cell phones while driving is common sense. In fact, a wide range of countries has already put this ban into effect, including Australia, Brazil, Japan, Russia, and Turkey. Driving a car is a privilege, not a right. We must all be careful drivers, and talking on a cell phone when driving is not safe.*

*(Great Writing 2: Great Paragraphs)*

#### 4. Đề luyện tập Write a paragraph (150-200 words) on the following topics:

1. Do you agree or disagree with the statement: "Young people should decide whether to join the army or not on their own."?
2. Do you agree or disagree with the statement: "Young people should be required to buy health insurance."?
3. Do you agree or disagree with the statement: "People have no right to keep exotic animals as their home pets."?
4. Do you agree or disagree with the statement: "Parents should be more engaged in the educational process and what can they do to help kids with homework more efficiently."?
5. Do you agree or disagree with the statement: "Students should learn only subjects they like."?

#### **SAMPLE SHORT PARAGRAPHS FOR GIFTED STUDENTS COMPUTER**

Nowadays, a computer is very important to everyone. We can use it to find information, play games, store documents, listen to music or chat with friend...

Last year, I bought a laptop in Thanh Hoa city. First, It was very difficult for me to use it. Then, I learnt myself on the internet and some my friends help me to use it. Now I can do various things with my laptop.

Computer is very useful for my job. Every day, I login and check mails from my colleagues. I can finish my job earlier by using my computer.

Computer helps me to find information such as news, inform of your favorite stars or find a job. I can read many kinds of newspapers such as Dantri, vietnamnet, vnexpress, 24h ...etc.

Computer is a source of entertainment. Whenever we feel tired or stressed, we can play games on computer. I can listen to music and watch a lot of films.

I usually use my computer for communicating. I can send and get emails. I have a good friend but she is in Ho Chi Minh City, so I can't visit her. Thanks to computer, we can chat together and exchange our documents. She can talk about her life, her school, her friend in Ho Chi Minh and I can too.

In my opinion without the computer, my life would be very dull. I love my computer.

### **A RESTAURANT THAT YOU LIKE**

I have eaten in many restaurants so far. My favorite restaurant is Dalan. It is located at the center in Thanh Hoa city. In my opinion, the restaurant "DA LAN" is the best place to eat in Thanh Hoa cities.

The facilities in Dalan are very good. There are a lot of large rooms with modern equipment, so we can celebrate various events such as weddings, birthdays, parties.... The waiters and waitress here are very helpful and friendly. They are willing to answer your questions and help you if you need. When you order your food they service very quickly.

Besides it has a very interesting and varied cuisine. It is also a bar. The dishes here are very delicious. The price is very reasonable. Most of the people who have ever eaten Dalan are satisfied with it.

I think Dalan restaurant is getting more and more famous. I hope I will have more chances to eat there.

### **LOTTERY WIN.**

Yesterday, I won the lottery. I got 100 million. I am very happy now and I'm wondering what to do with that money. I think I will do a variety of things.

First, I will buy presents for my wife and my son. I think I will buy a new motorbike. Now my family has only a motorbike. We have to share it every day. I remember buying it ten years ago when we had just got married. We want to buy a new one but we do not have enough money. I intend to buy some comics and many toys for my son. Second, I will buy a misting fan and a LCD television for my parents. These things will certainly make them happy. The weather in Vietnam is very hot in the summer, so the misting fan will make my parents feel more comfortable. Besides that, they can watch their favorite films on that new television.

Third, I will send a small part of my money to help the poor children in my village. I will buy some new clothes and some new books for them. I think my gifts will alleviate their difficulties.

A hundred million is not a large amount, but I can do many things if I know how to spend sensibly.

### **ACCIDENT**

Last week, while I was going to Thanh Hoa city, I saw a horrible accident on the road in Dong Son. I stopped and looked around. A man lying on the road and his wife was crying besides. His head was bleeding a lot. He was unconscious. Someone was covering his head with a long bandage. I thought his head hit on the road. Some people standing around said that he was over drunk but he still controlled his motorbike and his wife sitting behind. I thought that he should be taken to hospital as soon as possible, so I called 115 and asked the hospital to send an ambulance and a nurse here.

5 minutes later, an ambulance appeared and took him to hospital. I continued my journey to the city with a real worry for that injured man.

It's very dangerous to drive after drinking alcohol. People had better obey traffic rules so we will have a happier life.

## **FESTIVAL**

Mid Autumn is a special Festival in some countries of Asia in general and Vietnam in particular. In fact, Mid Autumn is the festival which is for children. In Vietnam, this festival originated from the legend: The moon and a kid. The legend explains why the moon is shiniest in mid autumn and why people see a banyan tree and a kid on the moon. The moon is called Sister Moon and the kid is Cuoi.

Mid Autumn Festival begins from 14 to 15 in the August in Vietnamese lunar calendar. In these days, children are going to pick the lantern up and go around streets or towns. Children will be given gifts such as pies, candies , star lanterns... They often see lion dance or musical concert. They also join in the mid-autumn lantern parade at night .

However, mid autumn festival is also festival for business. The streets have many stores that sell pies, cakes, toys..etc. This is an opportunity for many people to enjoy many kinds of cake. Pie mid autumn is a kind of special cake that is only in mid autumn festival. The Pie mid autumn has special taste. It is sweet smelling and very delicious. Almost Vietnamese people love pie mid autumn and buy it for family.

Mid Autumn became a tradition festival in Vietnam. It is a part of Vietnamese culture. Anyone who grown up in Vietnam is regular knowing and joining in this festival.

## **FREETIME ACTIVITIES**

As a student, I am quite busy on weekdays. However, at weekends, I have much free time, so I usually spend it on relaxing to prepare for a coming busy week.

First of all, in my free time, I like playing some sports, such as soccer, badminton or basketball, with my friends. Sport not only makes me stronger but also connects me with my friends who have the same hobbies. We sometimes go riding in order that we can combine sporting activity and sightseeing.

If the weather is not fine enough for me to go out with my friends, I like reading books. I have a big bookshelf with many kinds of books but I prefer science books. Through these books, my knowledge is gradually widened.

Thirdly, I also love to listen to music from pop, dance,rock 'n roll to rap or melody. I can listen to music at any place with a small but modern Ipod which is my father's gift for my 12th birthday. Sometimes, I dance freely when listening to my favorite songs. Music really paints my life.

Last but not least, I spend my free time on surfing on Internet. I can chat with my friends from very far distance or I read online news. With Internet, I update many things without having to go anywhere. I can also study English through some interesting websites. In conclusion, I want to use all of my free time to relax and connect with other people.

## **THE MID- AUTUMN FESTIVAL**

There are many festivals in a year in Viet Nam .Today I want to talk about one of them.It's the mid-autumn festival

By tradition the Vietnamese people love their children so much that they organize Mid-Autumn festival for themselves but mainly for their children

This festival is celebrated on the 15th of the eighth month in the lunar calendar .It's called Mid-Autumn festival because this festival takes place exactly in the middle of Autumn when the moon is full.

The preparations for the festival are made a month before .The moon cakes and toys as well as the lanterns of various designs are sold at the market or on the street .People buy moon cake either for themselves or for their children .Some people buy moon cakes as gifts for their friends and relatives .



On that day adults eat moon cakes over their tea while children are served moon cakes, Mid-Autumn festival food and fruit. Children are very keen on marching in a procession of lanterns in shapes of various things and animals too. They are excited and amused by Mid-Autumn toys and lanterns.

It's very interesting to celebrate the Mid-Autumn festival by tradition.

How delighted we feel watching the bright full moon on a cool and breezy evening of Mid-Autumn.

## **DEFORESTATION**

As we know, forests cover approximately one fifth of the world's land surface and play an important role in our everyday lives. They are one of the most necessary natural resources that have been gifted to mankind. They not only have a major role in enhancing the quality of our environment but also influence local and global climate. Forests are also our nation's wealth.

Can you picture our earth without forests, we can't, but the problem is that "deforestation". It is a major concern in today's society.

Each year, millions of woodlands are destroyed, the varied species of animals and insects from the forests are extinct. Moreover, the uncontrollable wildfires fueled by weather, wind and dry underwood not only consume our beautiful forests but also the wildlife, our homes and the lives of those who fight the wildfires.

Deforestation is causing many social, economic and ecological problems. One ecological problem is global warming that changes the climate of the whole world. With deforestation we are basically cutting our own lungs. We take away an ecosystem that produces major oxygen and filters our carbon dioxide, destroying forests products influences nation's wealth, too.

Direct causes of deforestation are agricultural expansion, wood extraction, infrastructural expansion such as road, building and urbanization.

Such activities result in flash floods, land slides and soil erosion, wild animals are robbed of their natural habitats, with fewer trees there is an increase in carbon dioxide but a decrease in oxygen production.

If forests are destroyed, there is no way that human can survive. From oxygen that we breathe in, the food that we eat, to the clothes we wear, we owe it to the trees. We won't have fuel, fodder, timber, medicine and other products from the trees.

So what we should do immediately to change it and solve it. Forests can be protected by things we do everyday.

Firstly, we can use recycled paper to help save trees. We avoid destroying paper by consuming less paper and recycling them because one ton of recycled papers save approximately 15 big trees.

Secondly, we need to conserve the old forests, rainforests and plant more forests to make place for wild animals to live. Where deforestation has taken it should be followed by reforestation. I suggest that everyone should sow seeds to grow at least one tree every year.

Thirdly, every citizen from the young to the old especially students in schools should be educated on the benefits of forests and ways of reusing and recycling papers. Everyone should know that man is really trying to destroy forests and directly cutting his life span, actually cutting one tree is equal to subtracting one day of his life. So everyone should protect our forests, prevent wildfires and remind each other to carry out. I think that any act of kindness, no matter how small is never wasted. Beside that our government needs to promulgate effective laws to punish offenders.

In conclusion, I would like to say that forests are our life. So please take care of our forests as well as our earth. I hope that our planet will be more and more green.

## READING

Of course, reading is one area you in how to learn English well, but this is something you can learn on your own quite effectively, outside of the classroom or even around other people. Keep a dictionary with you so that you can look up unfamiliar words. Then, you can write these words down in a notebook and use them in a conversation so that when you try to use them again, they will come to you much more easily.

Newspapers, magazines and books all help you learn English well. If you're just starting out, try reading children's books to start. This is especially helpful for people just starting to learn English. There are some books specifically written for people just starting to learn English; the words are quite simple and yet effective enough that if you use them, you can learn to speak simple English quite quickly.

If your English is more advanced, you can try reading from magazines books and newspapers. With these sources, English is more difficult, but they will challenge you if your English is advanced enough that you need more interesting things to read.

When you first begin to read English, don't try to understand every word. Instead, simply try to get a general idea of what you are reading; other words in the sentence will help you do this. If you don't understand the first time you read something, you can always go back later and use your dictionary to look up the words you don't quite know.

## WRITING

Another idea in how to learn English well is with writing. When you write, you can practice your English as effectively as you do when you read, only more so. This is because you reinforce your understanding of the language by writing it, which is a physical movement. For best practice, write something every day in English, even if it's a letter to a friend, or a simple message. You can also keep a diary, and use your English skills to write down what happened to you during your day. Start with simple sentences and as you get better, make sentences longer and more complicated.

You can also use the Internet this way, because the Internet will let you "talk" with other people simply by writing. You can visit chat rooms, or write a blog. All of these things help you learn English through writing. When you write, you can also take another look at words you have learned in the past, and use them in sentences to make sure you know them well.

As you learn, you can also look at a variety of writing topics that help you improve your writing skill with graphics and sound. For those who are advanced, I highly recommend a whole range of tools to help both students and teachers improve their writing skills online. This will also help you continue to refine your English and become even more effective in the language. —

## PART III : ESSAY WRITING OVERVIEW

### • THEORY

#### DẠNG 1: DISCUSSION

##### • Hướng dẫn viết mẫu.

In recent years, .....**CHỦ ĐỀ**.....has become a broad issue to the general public. Some people believe that....**QUAN ĐIỂM 1**.... However, others think that....**QUAN ĐIỂM 2**..... In my opinion, I agree with the **FORMER/ LATER** idea. Discussed below are several reasons supporting my perspective.

##### • Cách 1 dòng

First and foremost, people should recognize that **QUAN ĐIỂM 1**. A very important point to consider is that..... **LÍ DO 1**..... This means that **GIẢI THÍCH 1**..... To illustrate this point, I would like to mention that.... **VÍ DỤ 1**.....Another point I would like to make is that.... **LÍ DO 2**..... This because of the fact that .....**GIẢI THÍCH 2**..... For example,...**VÍ DỤ 2**.....

##### • Xuống dòng nhưng không cách dòng

On the other hand, there are several arguments in support of the idea that...**QUAN ĐIỂM 2**... It is also convincing to realise that... **LÍ DO**... This means that ... **GIẢI THÍCH**... A specific example of this is that... **VÍ DỤ**.

##### • Cách 1 dòng

In conclusion, the above mentioned facts have created a dilemma when people evaluate the impact of this issue, and it is still a controversial issue. As far as I am concerned, I put more highlight on the idea that..... People should have further consideration on this issue.

#### DẠNG 2: AGREE- DISAGREE

##### • Hướng dẫn viết mẫu.

In recent years, .....**CHỦ ĐỀ**.....has become a broad issue to the general public. Some people believe that....**QUAN ĐIỂM** .... In my opinion, I partly agree with this idea. Discussed below are several reasons in favor of my perspectives.

##### • Cách 1 dòng

First and foremost, people should recognize that **QUAN ĐIỂM**. A very important point to consider is that..... **LÍ DO 1**..... This means that.....**GIẢI THÍCH 1**.....To illustrate this point, I would like to mention that.... **VÍ DỤ 1**..... Another point I would like to make is that.... **LÍ DO 2**..... This because of the fact that **GIẢI THÍCH 2**..... For example,...**VÍ DỤ 2**.....

##### • Xuống dòng nhưng không cách dòng

On the other hand, there are several arguments against the statement that...**QUAN ĐIỂM** ... In fact, people have this opinion because.... **LÍ DO KHÔNG ĐỒNG Ý 1**.... This means that ...**GIẢI THÍCH**... This can be shown by the example that... **VÍ DỤ**

##### • Cách 1 dòng

In conclusion, the above mentioned facts have created a dilemma when people evaluate the impact of this issue, and it is still a controversial issue. As far as I am concerned, it could have both positive and negative impacts. People should have further consideration on this issue.

#### DẠNG 3: ADVANTAGES – DISAVANTAGES

##### • Hướng dẫn viết mẫu.

In recent years, .....**CHỦ ĐỀ**.....has become a broad issue to the general public. Some people believe that.... **QUAN ĐIỂM/ CHỦ ĐỀ**.....has many advantages. However, others think that it could also have some negative effects. In my opinion, its cons could never overshadow its pros. Discussed below are several benefits as well as drawbacks of this issue.

##### • Cách 1 dòng

First and foremost, people should recognize that there are many advantages of **CHỦ ĐỀ**. A very important point to consider is that **THUẬN LỢI 1** This means that.....**GIẢI THÍCH CHO THUẬN LỢI 1** To illustrate this point, I would like to mention that.... **VÍ DỤ 1**..... Another point I would like to make

is that.... **THUẬN LỢI 2**..... This because of the fact that ..... **GIẢI THÍCH CHO THUẬN LỢI 2**..... For example,... **VÍ DỤ 2**.....

- **Xuống dòng nhưng không cách dòng**

On the other hand, in addition to the important advantages of this problem, it has some disadvantages. In fact, people have this opinion because.... **BẤT LỢI** This means that.... **GIẢI THÍCH**..... This can be shown by the example that..... **VÍ DỤ**....

- **Cách 1 dòng**

In conclusion, the above mentioned facts have outlined the benefits as well as the drawbacks of this issue. Its advantages should be taken into account. People should take advantage of the pros and minimize the cons of this issue.

#### **DẠNG 4: CAUSES- EFFECTS (NGUYÊN NHÂN VÀ HỆ QUẢ)**

- **Hướng dẫn viết mẫu.**

In recent years, ..... **CHỦ ĐỀ**.....has become a broad issue to the general public. Some people believe that.... **QUAN ĐIỂM 1** Although noticeable, the impact of this issue has not been realised by many residents. Discussed below are several causes as well as effects of this issue.

- **Cách 1 dòng**

First and foremost, people should recognize that there are several main reasons supporting the idea that .... **QUAN ĐIỂM** ..... A very important point to consider is that..... **NGUYÊN NHÂN 1**..... This means that..... **GIẢI THÍCH 1** To illustrate this point, I would like to mention that.... **VÍ DỤ 1** Another point I would like to make is that.... **NGUYÊN NHÂN 2**..... This because of the fact that **GIẢI THÍCH 2**..... For example,... **VÍ DỤ 2**.....

- **Xuống dòng nhưng không cách dòng**

There are many serious effects of this issue. one primary effect would be that..... **HẬU QUẢ 1**..... In addition, ..... **HẬU QUẢ 2**.....

- **Cách 1 dòng**

In conclusion, the above - mentioned facts have outlined the reasons as well as the measures of this issue. Its causes and effects should be taken into account. People should have further consideration on this issue.

#### **DẠNG 5: CAUSES – SOLUTIONS (NGUYÊN NHÂN VÀ GIẢI PHÁP)**

- **Hướng dẫn viết mẫu.**

In recent years, ..... **CHỦ ĐỀ**.....has become a broad issue to the general public. Some people believe that.... **QUAN ĐIỂM 1** Although noticeable, the impact of this issue has not been realised by many residents. Discussed below are several causes as well as solutions of this issue.

- **Cách 1 dòng**

First and foremost, people should recognize that there are several main reasons supporting the idea that .... **QUAN ĐIỂM** ..... A very important point to consider is that..... **NGUYÊN NHÂN 1**..... This means that..... **GIẢI THÍCH 1** To illustrate this point, I would like to mention that.... **VÍ DỤ 1** Another point I would like to make is that.... **NGUYÊN NHÂN 2**..... This because of the fact that **GIẢI THÍCH 2**..... For example,... **VÍ DỤ 2**.....

- **Xuống dòng nhưng không cách dòng**

In order to resolve such problems, people should take some concerted measures. One primary solution would be that.... **GIẢI PHÁP 1**.... In addition, .... **GIẢI PHÁP 2**..... However, education is the main way to tackle this issue. People need to be aware of the effects so that they can avoid this problem.

- **Cách 1 dòng**

In conclusion, the above - mentioned facts have outlined the reasons as well as the measures of this issue. The presented suggestions would be very good steps towards solving them. People should have further consideration on this issue.

#### **SAMPLE ESSAYS FOR GIFTED STUDENTS**

#### **TEST 1**

As children grow older, they become increasingly involved with their peer group, a group whose members are

about the same age and have similar interests. The peer group-along with the family and the school- is the one of the three main socializing agents. The peer groups is both a positive and negative influence in our life.

*Write an essay to discuss the effects of peer group on children*

As children grow older, they become increasingly involved with their peer group, a group whose members are about the same age and have similar interests. The peer group - along with the family and the school - is one of the three main socializing agents. However, the peer group is very different from the family and the school. Whereas parents and teachers have more power than children and students, the peer group is made up of equals.

The adolescent peer group teaches its members several important things. Firstly, it teaches them to be independent from adult. Secondly, it teaches social skills that are how to get along with other people and they can handle any difficult in their life. Thirdly, the peer group teaches its members the values of friendship among equals. For example, they can share hobbies together and learn many good things from others.

Beside its positive effects, the peer group including some negative things. To begin with, they imitate bad behaviors of their friends. For example, smoking or drinking and taking part in fighting groups. In addition to, they will also neglect their studying. Moreover, this group also increases the distance of teenagers and their parents because they like joining social activities more than concentrating on learning in school.

In conclusion, the peer group is good or bad depending on themselves. Doing what everyone else is doing is more important than being independent and individual. However, they should adopt adult values, such as wanting to get good grades and good jobs.

**TEST 2**

*Write an essay to discuss both advantages and disadvantages of advertizing*

Owing to the development of the mass media, in general, the advertising industry in all over the world has been booming. Although most people agree that this offers tremendous benefits, some say that it may cause negative effect.

It cannot be denied that advertising has a great number of advantages. Firstly, all companies must make people know their brands by means of media when selling items. Secondly, advertisements suggest people what they demand to lead a more convenient life and where to purchase products with best quality. As a result, customers find themselves have more choices on the outlet. Finally, advertising is a creative industry that employs a wide range of people and most jobs related to advertising are now considered well-paying most.

The advertisement, on the other hand, shows many drawbacks. One of them is that they persuade people to buy a product without telling them the disadvantages of it. This has led to the overstatement and even false information of an item's use that we see in advertising industry nowadays. Furthermore, advertising also encourages people to follow the latest trend and causes them to shop lavishly. In addition, many commercials aim at children's interest thus they probably put pressure on their parents to buy the items advertised.

In conclusion, advertising is a form of modern business that every company needs in order to inform people about their products. However, it may be disadvantageous when it stimulates or even deceives people to buy them things a great deal.

**TEST 3**

*Write an essay to discuss negative effects of the Internet*

**Write an essay to an educated reader to discuss the negative effects of the Internet. Include reasons and any relevant examples to support your answer.**

With the development of science and technology, internet is one of the greatest invention of mankind in our modern society. It is widely used on global system. It not only becomes a useful and indispensable tool for us but also influences nearly every aspect of our life. It is certain that internet has brought to us many disadvantages.

Firstly, Internet is the most popular source of spreading viruses. These viruses create different problems in your computer. Viruses that can attack your privacy and get some information about you. It's hard to predict what will happen if you were hacked the account information.

Secondly, internet can have a bad effect to our health risks. We can suffer from many health problems such as optic disease, backache, even obesity and many other diseases due to using the internet for long hours.

The worse of all, it directly or indirectly influences to forming and developing of children's manner. It is widely seen bad programs on internet like pornographic scenes violent, sexual and action films, they are very harmful to children's mind and soul therefore juvenile crimes can't be inevitable and that can ruin all young generation.

In conclusion, it can be observed from the above arguments that the internet it's drawbacks. It has an extremely wide influence on our life. It is very useful to us when we know how to use it. Therefore, we should choose suitable internet programs and duration to use

#### TEST 4

#### *Write an essay to discuss the benefits of staying single*

Single lifestyle is more and more popular in our modern life. Many women choose to be single because of some reasons. Some of them have not met their Mr. Right while others prefer single lifestyle because of its benefits. Indeed, single life gives you many advantages.

Firstly, you can enjoy your life more when you are single. Being single, you have more time for yourself. You can spend all your time to work with your passion and to do your hobbies. Moreover, you also have time to take care of yourself better. When you get marriage, you have to spend your time to do housework, to look after your children and your husband. Some married women said that they even do not have enough time for making up or doing their individual hobbies.

Secondly, when you are single, you are not tied up by responsibilities with your husband or your children. There are no commitments with your husband about how to take care and educate your children or even how to live together happily. You will be more freedom when being single. You can do whatever you like; go wherever you want without any worries about your children and husband.

On the other hand, you will not be upset when your marriage is broken up. When you are single you can avoid this risk, therefore your life will be more wonderful.

In conclusion, being single is clearly a better lifestyle for women in such a modern life because of its mentioned above benefits. However, you should be an intelligent woman to choose rightly which one is better for you whether getting marriage or being a single woman.

#### TEST 5

Some people think that young people should be required to work for a year before they go to university. Such work gives young people valuable knowledge of the world, which in turns helps them to appreciate their studies and decide what they want to do in life. However, there are those argue that going to university immediately after school is a .....

#### *Write an essay to discuss what choice in your opinion is better for young people in preparing them for the future career*

While some nurture their belief that young people should be required to work for a year before they go to university, I strongly argue that going to university immediately after school is a much better option because of the rationale in the following essay.

A university education can be seen as a process of improving students' analytical thinking. The variety of courses offered at university inspires students in various ways, therefore improving their analytical ability. For example, science courses such as math and biology help students develop a rational way of thinking whereas arts courses such as literature have to let students ponder over issues from a logical, multi-dimensional perspective; and courses in social sciences force students to recognize the ideas that have been traditionally assumed to be acceptable and unproblematic. With the development of these types of analytical thinking, graduates can face future challenges with more confidence and enthusiasm.

Also, university education is expected to improve students' moral standards. This is rooted in universities' belief that students' awareness of responsibility towards their community and their country is of high importance. In this society and civilization, students are encouraged to actively participate in improving the local community. A university that provides care and facilities for physically disadvantaged students may inspire the graduates to better handle situations in the future where they may have to interact with the disabled community. A successful university education is supposed to produce morally sound graduates, therefore increasing their employability.

In conclusion, university education not only helps students locate a decent job but will also develop other qualities. Thus, I believe students should be encouraged to enter university to broaden their knowledge first.

### TEST 6

**In modern society, fashion is becoming more highly valued in people's choice of clothes. Nowadays, it is not uncommon to see people walking around in brand-name clothes and sunglasses like celebrities. While some people think it is a positive development, others blame for negative aspects of fashion obsession.**

*Write an essay to discuss your opinion about fashion consciousness.*

Nowadays, fashion plays an important role of our modern life. While people think it is a positive development, others criticize the fashion obsession.

Fashion is mainly about clothes. Clothes today are not only for covering your body, they represent for many aspects relating to one person such as personality, hobby, social class. Your clothes can show who you are, what you like, what you tend to be, etc. Therefore, choosing what to wear is an essential part of daily life. Brand-name clothes, sunglasses and other things can make you more stylish in people's eyes. That is why people say that: "Clothes make the man".

However, some people are blaming for negative aspect of fashion obsession. What is fashion obsession? It's a kind of obsession that people who have it always think about fashion. They can spend all time just to think about what to wear today or what clothes to buy when they are shopping. In their point of view, fashion is all. It is absolutely not good. Fashion is an important part, but it is not all of our lives. This kind of obsession makes people deeply sink into fashion and they cannot care about anything except clothes.

Although the fashion obsession brings disadvantages, people should also care about fashion. Polite and suitable wearing is the best way to show your fashion awareness. Moreover, fashion is a big industry in the world and it more and more meets people's demand for wearing now. In short, paying attention to fashionable clothes is good, but don't let it obsesses you.

### TEST 7

**Some people think governments should spend as much money as possible exploring outer space ( for example travelling to the Moon and to other planets). Other people disagree and think governments should spend this money for our basic needs on the Earth.**

Whether governments should subsidize outer-space exploration is a subject of

debate. While some people expect that amount of budget should be for improving humans' quality of life, I would contend that this branch of science should be given as much financial assistance as possible.

To begin with, that many aspects of our life are quite improved is partly attributed to the development of necessary technologies like satellites and rockets in recent years. For example, we can communicate with each other in a more convenient way thanks to achievements in the aerospace science. A great number of jobs and research fields in universities are also created since that science has become popular.

In addition, the Earth is being overcrowded, which means we no longer have sufficient space and resources for next generations. Exploring outer space provided us with a chance to find out another planet that is suitable for most creatures on Earth, including humans, to live on. It is as well an opportunity to discover certain huge resources or elements on other planets to be the substitution for some exhausted ones on our planet. As the root of poor living standards is the shortage of living space and resources on Earth, it is rational to have more sponsorship for the space science to deal with those difficulties and fulfill humans' basic needs

To conclude, although the improvement of humans' living standards is an important task for any administration, it seems to me that it is a right thing for governments to spend more money on space programs to resolve the urgent issue on Earth.

### TEST 8

#### *Discuss what ages in your opinion are more suitable to begin learning a foreign language*

In modern world, language plays an indispensable role in both studies and jobs as well as during socializing. Many believe that students at primary schools should start learning a new foreign language and should not wait till secondary school level, while others hold the opposite point of view. As for me, I side with the first one.

On the one hand, children at young age are fast learners. Because children are more flexible and they can grasp any language very easily. Moreover, there is a fact that little kids approximately between five and nine years have a capacity to remember things twice as fast and effectively than another aged people. For example, some children can even start three different languages, such English, French and German together when they are six years old.

On the other hand, more subjects open in secondary school is the other main reason that a new foreign language should be started at younger age. Children start to learn some new subjects, such as Chemistry, Biology and History. The more classes they have, the more homework they need to do after school. Obviously, they would spend little time on a foreign language. There is no doubt that it takes time to master a foreign language, especially the pronunciation. If they spend enough time on practicing their speaking ability, they can speak English more fluently. Therefore, children should learn a foreign language at primary school, instead of secondary school.

In conclusion, in order to learn a foreign language, it is better to start it at primary school rather than secondary school for children. It is also the better way to make the future secured by further studies and applying for the good jobs as well.

### TEST 9

#### *Discuss the effects of technology in the classroom*

There is a significantly increasing use of technology, such as tablets and laptops, in the classroom. It is often argued that this is a positive development, whilst others disagree and think it will lead to adverse consequence. It is agreed that an increase in technology is beneficial to students and teachers. This essay will take a closer look at this issue.



It is clear that the internet has provided students with access to more information than ever before. Moreover, learners have the ability to research and learn about any subject at the touch of a button. It is therefore agreed that technology is a very useful tool for education. Wikipedia is a prime example, where students can simply type in any keyword and gain access to in-depth knowledge quickly and easily.

However, many disagree and feel that technology deprives people of real human interaction. Human interaction teaches people valuable skills such as discourse, debate and empathy. Despite this, human interaction is still possible through the internet and this essay disagrees technology should be dismissed for this reason. For instance, Skype and Facebook make it possible for people to interact in ways that were never before possible.

In conclusion, while the benefits of technology, particularly the internet, allow students search limitless sources of information, some still feel that people should be wary of this new phenomenon and not allow it to curb face to face interaction. However, as long as we are careful to keep in mind the importance of human interaction in education, the educational benefits are clearly positive.

### TEST 10

#### *Effects of media on society*

The media plays a big role in society that has both positive and negative effects. Yet, some wonder if the negative effects trump the positive ones. It is true people want to know what is going on in the world around them from their neighborhood to state, federal and international interests. But the media may have more of an effect on society that many are tired to being reminded of on a daily basis.

The media has an important job in providing informative information about things that may have an effect on you or how you live your life. The positive side includes learning about breakthroughs in health, technology, and other areas that can help make a difference now and in the future. At the same time you know what is going on in other places you may have connections with such as family, friends and so forth. The media can be a useful tool in helping you be aware of things that could be harmful or detrimental to you or your loved ones.

On the other hand, the media is known for taking things out of context and even causing panic when it is not necessary. There are certain networks and outlets that people realize they cater to certain audiences or provide information that may not be seem fair or correct. There are times in which too much information is shared or details could have been left to the imagination. There are events that happen in which the media is known for taking things too far such as mass shootings, terrorist attacks, and political controversies to name a few.

In conclusion, the media can help a consumer get the word out about something useful. Nowadays, it seems you have to be more careful about what you learn through the media since some sources are known to provide bogus information. Others see media as a form of entertainment since it can be interesting following stories you find hard to believe that actually happened.

### TEST 11

#### *Read the following text from an educational magazine.*

*Compulsory attendance in university has always been a highly debated subject. Professors view class attendance as an individual student responsibility. However, many students want to be given the freedom to decide which classes to attend. Due to the difficulty of regulating a school-wide attendance policy, most colleges and universities give professors the authority to set their own attendance rules. Some people believe that university students should be required to attend classes. Others believe that going to classes should be optional for students.*

**Write an essay to an educated reader to tell which point of view you agree with. Include specific reasons and any relevant examples to support your answer**

Still universities have options for their students to attend class. In my case, I do believe that class attendance should be required seriously since it would help students gain lectures from professors, interact with others to learn teamwork skills, improve relationships and keep away from distractions.

First of all, appearing at class brings students opportunities to meet professors and gets practical advices from them. Professors' lectures summarize ideas on a subject so that students could save a great deal of time and efforts in figuring out general concepts. Moreover, professors with deep knowledge and experiences would provide students many expertises. Lacks of teachers' guidance possibly lead to shortage of understanding or even the opposite to primary thoughts. Therefore, attending class should be strictly mandatory.

Secondly, at classes, students could learn how to co-operate with the others. It would be worthy for them since the fact that almost nowadays employers consider their applicant's teamwork skills as a decisive factor. By going to class and interacting with other people, students are able to gain these experiences. Students who often stay at home would face up with troubles when trying to join a public group in the future.

Another reason for students to appear at class is that they could improve their relationship with the others. While study is the primary purpose of universities, meeting and making friend, in my opinion, should be considered as the following task. It is reasonable because students always spend much time on campus and the improvement of relationships has a lot of advantageous conditions, working and playing together for instance. Reality has shown that friends at schools are essential for not only a person's ordinary life but also his career.

Finally, attending class could keep student away from distractions. A huge number of possible causes might interrupt students from study, for example entertain games, parties, camping trips or even society evil. In contrast, universities provide students with academic environment that help them focus on doing research as well as motivate their thoughts about career.

To sum up, tremendous critical benefits obtained from compulsory class attendance are obvious. Students studying at class could get severely essential directions from their teachers, train teamwork skills, enhance relationships with other people and avoid negative effects on study. Therefore, I strongly recommend that universities should considered attending class an indispensable part of their courses.

## TEST 12

*Read the following text from a health magazine.*

*Stress is the feeling of being under too much mental or emotional pressure. Pressure becomes stress when you feel unable to cope. Stress can affect how you feel, think, and behave and even how your body functions. It is worth taking the time to learn different strategies and techniques for managing your stress before there are serious consequences for your mental and physical well-being. People have different ways of escaping the stress and difficulties of modern life. Some read; some exercise; others work in their gardens.*

**Write an essay to an educated reader to tell what you think is the best way of reducing stress.**

In modern life, stress is quite popular problem to everyone. Stress causes negative effects on both physical and mental health. Therefore, it has become a hot topic for many discussions to find solutions for stress. People may get stress when they suffer too much mental and emotional pressure. It is necessary to have suitable ways to manage these pressures before they cause an extremely stressful. In my views, I suggest 2 ways to reduce stress: talking with your friend and have a hobby

First of all, you may feel better if you talk with your friends at a coffee station. I think spending time with friends is a good way to get everything that bothers you out of your mind and also it is a good way to have good friendships. For example, I hang out with my friends when I have some stress in studying. When hanging out with friends, we talk about funny stories like travelling, shopping and so on. Therefore, I can forget all my study and projects.

Next, a great hobby will make you reduce stress effectively. There are a large number of things you can do such as exercise, yoga, reading, painting and so on. Listening music is my favorite hobby. When I have sadness or emotional pressure, I often open English songs. After listening music, I can relieve all stress from working or life.

To sum up, there are various ways that may help you to deal with stress such as talking with your friends and having a hobby. It would be great for you if you know how to balance everything in life because it is worthy to have happy life without stress.

### TEST 13

*Read the following text from a business magazine.*

*Success is the most aspired by everyone. Success comes in all shapes and colors. You can be successful in your job and career but you can equally be successful in your marriage, at sports or a hobby. However, success is not easy to achieve. The road leading to the achievement has obstacles that are to be crossed over. Some people believe that success in life comes from taking risks or chances. Others believe that success results from careful planning.*

“Success” is the word that urges people to try hard to get no matter how hard things in life are. Some people think that success in life comes from taking risks or chances. Others believe that success results from careful planning. This essay will take a closer look at the issue.

On the one hand, for many people, success is the result of taking risks or chances in life. First, risks bring about valuable experience for people. Even if they cannot manage to overcome the problems, they consider themselves to be successful as they learnt a lot from the failure. Second, some people believe that chances also provide them with success. They claim that with an individual, opportunities are not always there for them to take and make plans with. There are sometimes once-in-a-lifetime chances that people may regret if these are not taken. Therefore, once people take advantages of these opportunities, their success is much more meaningful.

On the other hand, others argue that there will be no success if people do not make careful plans. First of all, it is believed that planning helps things better. A person provided with a chance may find it easier to perform if s/he makes schedules thoroughly. On the contrary, even the person could get stuck in the middle of the process without a plan and s/he may fail. In addition, they demonstrate that a person, especially a businessperson is regarded to be careful if s/he has a clear plan to conduct steps. They ask to imagine a businessman required to take risks or chances who cannot make a careful planning of what and how to do. This person cannot be successful in his business.

In conclusion, success is not easy to achieve. How successful a person is may depend on both risks or chances taken and careful planning. For me, to succeed in life, people should take full advantages of risks and find ways to schedule for the risks so that we can achieve successfully.

### TEST 14

*Read the following text from an education magazine.*

*While compulsory education in some countries such as England begins at the age of five (with many children actually starting at four), in countries such as Sweden, Denmark and Finland, school does not begin until the age of seven.*

*There are two different points of view regarding this. Some people think that children should begin their formal education at a very early age and should spend most of their time on school studies. Others believe that young children should spend most of their time playing.*

**Write an essay to an educated reader to tell which point of view you agree with.**

Childhood is one of the most important and memorable periods of our lives. We come into the world innocent and unaware and in just a few short years make great physical and mental progress. Although play is an important component of our young lives, in my view, there are significant benefits to be gained from beginning formal education at an early age. My view is based on intellectual and social reasons.

Intellectually, the period from birth to six years is the most significant for brain growth. A child who is surrounded by a rich multi-sensory environment develops infinitely more connection between brain cells, which are the basis of what we call "intelligence". In this connection, the process of learning to read is of particular significance because it has such a strong positive influence on neural development. Although parents can provide this early intellectual stimulation, in most cases working parents find it difficult to do so. This strengthens the case for enrolling children in a formal education system, which can provide the necessary resources and trained personnel to bring out the best in the child.

Socially, being in a school environment teaches children both how to behave themselves and also how to get along with other children and adults. These lessons in human behaviour are as important as the formal subjects a child must study. By learning how to follow rules, take turns and be respectful a child becomes a part of the social nexus to which we all belong. The formal academic experience, in an objective context, away from the family structure, also satisfies the child's growing sense of independence. Most children often "play school" in any case, particularly if they have older siblings.

In conclusion, early education offers children a host of benefits at different levels. A child can always play after coming home; in the meantime, the school experience sets the child on a path to success and self-confidence in a competitive, demanding world.

### TEST 15

*Write an essay to an educated reader to discuss your opinions about the positive and negative aspects of online shopping. Include reasons and any relevant examples to support your answer. You should write at least 250 words.*

In this 21st century the growth of internet has changed our way of life, these days nothing is hard, we can do everything online such as watching movies, reading books, paying bills, shopping online, etc.. These days online shopping is becoming very popular and has become the best choice for many people who do shopping regularly. However, shopping online has some of positive and negative aspects in life.

First and foremost it is the best, easiest and safest shopping in the history. Even at midnight we can do our shopping since it is open 24/7 days and perhaps you can purchase any item from online store without going to the store physically. Secondly, it is affordable and convenient to do shopping online. And moreover we need not have to wait in heavy traffic to reach the store in our area. Lastly, this shopping helps us in keeping our friends and family together all the time, by sending special gifts on behalf of us that ranges from flowers to perfumes, from chocolate to jewellery items, etc, on their special occasions even if we are far away from them.

However, there are some negative impacts of shopping online. Online shopping has not been the safest place to shop. Even in traditional malls there are shoplifters, thieves, and bullies. But online

shopping is one of the places where identity theft occurs most frequently. Privacy and security on the Internet is not as secure as it should be. Online shopping sites have tried to take precautions to minimize these issues. Web sites are improving their security and surveillance on a daily basis.

To conclude, as we have found out there is no easy answer to this question. Nevertheless, shopping online makes a huge difference to people's lives in terms of time saving and I believe that this is a positive impact in our society.

# CHAPTER VII : LISTENING SKILLS

## PART I : OVERVIEW OF LISTENING SKILLS

### • THEORY

#### PHƯƠNG PHÁP HOÀN THÀNH BÀI NGHE TRONG KỲ THI

1. Phải nghe thường xuyên tập thói quen và hình thành 1 phản xạ nghe hiểu tự nhiên.
2. Đọc lướt qua yêu cầu đề bài và nội dung bên dưới đề.
3. Với dạng bài nghe Gap-Filling các em nên ghi chú các từ, cụm từ quan trọng nhất liên quan đến nội dung cần hoàn tất bên dưới ( trước hoặc sau chỗ trống cần điền)
4. Dạng bài nghe hiểu chọn đáp án đúng nhất áp dụng phương pháp loại trừ đáp án. Cần nghe kỹ và gạch chân các ý đã xuất hiện để áp dụng phương án loại trừ.

#### CÁC DẠNG NGHE THƯỜNG KIỂM TRA

##### *Form 1. Listen and answer the questions*

#### **Part I :**

*Listen to the conversation between Cindy and Bob, then answer the following questions using NO MORE THAN THREE WORDS AND/OR A NUMBER for each answer.*

How many people are Cindy and Bob planning the picnic for?

(1)

On which date will the picnic be held?

(2)

What is the total budget for food and drink per person?

(3) £

Which food does Bob specifically say is unsuitable?

(4)

##### *Form 2. Listen and fill in words or numbers*

*Complete the following notes about the three catering companies Bob and Cindy discuss.*

*Write NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS AND/OR A NUMBER.*

#### **Paris Kitchen**

- lack of variety of food
- poor quality (5) \_\_\_\_\_

#### **Company Caterers**

- expensive
- (6) \_\_\_\_\_ discount for groups of 30 or more

#### **Celebrations**

- new company
- only (7) \_\_\_\_\_ for picnics
- vegetarian dishes offers free samples

#### **Part II :**

*You will hear part of a radio tribute to a writer and zoologist who has recently died. Complete the notes which summarise what the speaker says. You will need to write a word or a short phrase in each blank.*

1. Gerald Durrell wrote about his life in more than \_\_\_\_\_.
2. He was born \_\_\_\_\_.
3. After his father died, his family moved to both \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The first word he spoke was \_\_\_\_\_.

5. His book about his boyhood in Greece became a best seller and \_\_\_\_\_.
6. He wanted his books to attract \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Gerald's books are full \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Unfortunately he became easily frustrated and on these occasions he had \_\_\_\_\_.

*Form 3. Listen and choose True or False statement.*

**Part III :**

*You will hear part of a talk about the protection of animals. Answer the questions by writing T (for True), F (for False) in the boxes provided.*

1. Few people attended the talk.	1.	
2. Over population is threatening animal species.	2.	
3. The zoo does not receive money from the government.	3.	
4. There is no entrance fee for "friend" of the zoo.	4.	
5. Adopting small animals cost £ 3,000 per year.	5.	

*Form 4. Listen and choose the best answer*

**Part IV :**

*You will hear a radio interview with a ghost hunter called Carlene Belfort. Choose the correct answers.*

1. How did Carlene become a ghost hunter?
  - A. She wanted to contact her dead grandmother.
  - B. She grew up in a haunted house.
  - C. Her parents encouraged her.
  - D. She had special power.
2. What, according to Carlene, do ghost hunters need most?
  - A. a special gift                      B. equipment
  - C. an adventurous mind            D. psychic power
3. Who does Carlene mostly work for?
  - A. People who want reassurance      B. People who want to contact loved ones
  - C. People who want to find a ghost    D. People who do research about ghost
4. What does Carlene think about people who don't believe her?
  - A. She doesn't understand why they think that.
  - B. She thinks they don't have enough evidence.
  - C. She wants them to experience it for themselves.
  - D. She doesn't care about them.
5. What does Carlene feel about her business?
  - A. She realises she is taking advantage of customers.
  - B. She feels she is providing a service.
  - C. She wants to expand and make more money.
  - D. She thinks it's her responsibility to help people.

*Form 5. Listen and circle the best answer (Look and choose the appropriate pictures)*

**Part V :**

*Listen and circle the best answer .*

- 1 - When will the man go to England



A
B
C

2 - What did Fred do yesterday?



A
B
C

3 - What was the weather like on Saturday?



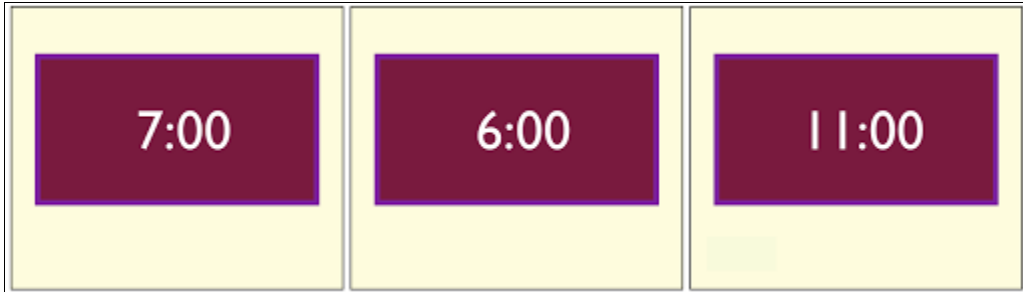
A
B
C

4 - What does Jack want for his birthday?



A
B
C

5 - When does the next train to Rome leave?



A
B
C

## PART II : PRACTICES

CÁC BÀI NGHE CƠ BẢN



**LISTENING TEST 1**

*I. You will hear five short conversations. Listen and circle the correct answer.*

1. What time will the taxi arrive at the woman's house?  
A. at 7.30    B. at 6.30    C. at 5.30
2. What will they give George?  
A. a bicycle    B. some videos    C. a guitar
3. Where will they sit?  
A. under a tree    B. in the sun.    C. in the car
4. What size does the woman buy?  
A. 42.    B. 40.    C. 38.
5. Which ice cream will they have ?  
A. chocolate    B. coffee    C. banana

*II. You will hear a woman telephone to a garage about her car. Listen and complete questions 1 to 5. You will hear the conversation TWICE.*

**JACKSON'S GARAGE**

- |                             |
|-----------------------------|
| 1. Customer's name:         |
| 2. Trouble with car:        |
| 3. Office address:          |
| 4. Customer's phone number: |
| 5. Type of car:             |

*III. You will hear some information about a farm. Listen and complete the questions given. You will hear the conversation TWICE.*

**PARK FARM**

- |                                      |
|--------------------------------------|
| 1. To see: .....                     |
| 2. Open at: .....                    |
| 3. Family ticket costs: .....pounds. |
| 4. Don't bring: .....                |
| 5. Not far from: .....               |

*IV. Listen to Sarah talking to her friend, Jane, about a new job. Choose the best answer (A, B, C or D). You will hear the conversation TWICE.*

1. Sarah's boss wants a new .....  
A. manager    B. shop assistant    C. worker    D. secretary
2. Sarah usually starts work at .....  
A. 6.00    B. 7.15    C. 8.30    D. 9.00
3. Sarah has lunch .....  
A. in a café    B. in a park    C. at home    D. in a hotel
4. In the new job, Jane can have .....  
A. 2 weeks' holiday    B. 3 weeks' holiday  
C. 4 weeks' holiday    D. 5 weeks' holiday
5. The manager's name is Mr .....  
A. Fawset    B. Fawcett    C. Fauceet    D. Faucett

**LISTENING TEST 2**

*I. Listen to the conversation about living in the countryside in Japan. Circle A, B or C to answer each question.*

1. Where is Sam living now?

- A. in England      B. in Japan      C. in Europe
2. What does he like about the village?  
A. the mountains      B. the ocean      C. the pollution
3. How does he feel about the people in the village?  
A. difficult      B. friendly      C. easy
4. Which among these is true about Sam's attitude towards the weather in the village?  
A. He likes it very much.      B. He thinks it is comfortable  
C. He hates it.
5. What is the most unusual about the village in Sam's opinion?  
A. There are many snakes.      B. All snakes are green.  
C. Snakes like to stay in his office.

*II. Listen and fill in the blanks with the information you hear (Write no more than one word).*

Favorite subject:	1. _____
Favorite sport:	2. _____
Usual transport:	3. _____
On:	4 : _____ Young Farmer Group
Future Job:	5. _____

*III. You will hear a telephone conversation between a travel consultant and a customer. Listen carefully and fill in the missing information*

<b>Dreamtime travel agency</b>	
<b>Tour information</b>	
Example	Answer
Holiday name	Whale Watch Experience
Holiday length:	1. _____
Type of transportation:	2. _____
Maximum group size:	3. _____
Next tour date:	4. _____
Hotel name:	5. The _____

*IV. Listen to Philip talking to a friend about his photography course.*

*Choose the best answer (A, B or C) for each space .*

- 1 - Where does Philip do the photography classes?  
A. Park College      B. City College      C. South College
- 2- What time do the photography classes begin?  
A. 5.15 pm      B. 6.00 pm      C. 6.45 pm
- 3 - How much does Philip pay for the photography course?  
A. 55 pounds      B. 75 pounds      C. 95 pounds
- 4 - Philip's happy with the course because he's  
A. learning about famous photographers  
B. using a new camera  
C. getting better at photography
- 5- Philip thinks it's easy to take photographs of  
A. trees      B. animals      C. children

### LISTENING TEST 3

*I. You will hear five short conversations. You will hear each conversation twice. There is one question for each conversation.*

1. What colour is Kathy's bedroom now?  
A. pink                      B. blue                      C. green
2. Which platform does the woman's train leave from?  
A. Platform 2              B. Platform 6              C. Platform 10
3. How is Susan going to get to the airport?  
A. by coach              B. by taxi                      C. by train
4. Her father is tall with dark hair, her mother is \_\_\_\_\_, her brother is 5 years \_\_\_\_\_ than her.  
A. tall ..... younger      B. tall ..... older.              C. short ..... younger
5. When is Kim's birthday party?  
A. On July 11<sup>th</sup>              B. On June 11<sup>th</sup>              C. On May 11<sup>th</sup>

*II. You will hear a man asking for information about the Westwood English School. Listen and complete questions. You will hear the conversation twice.*

WESTWOOD ENGLISH SCHOOL.	
Evening classes on	: Thursday
Next course starts on	: (1) _____
Speaking class with	: (2) _____
Cost for 12 classes	: (3) _____
Address	: (4) _____ Fitzroy Square.
School is next to the	: (5) _____

*III. You will hear an English woman called Britta talking to an interviewer about her life in Berlin. For each question, circle the correct answer.*

1. How long has Britta lived in Berlin?  
A. four years              B. six years              C. twenty years
2. What does Britta say about living in Berlin?  
A. She can't sleep at night because of the traffic noise.  
B. She misses the museums and theatres in Bonn.  
C. She likes living in a big, busy city like Berlin.
3. The area of Berlin where Britta lives is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. a rather expensive place to live  
B. a good place to eat out  
C. a long way from the city centre
4. Britta says that her nephew, Philippe, likes going \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. to the park with her  
B. to the shop with his parents  
C. to a gallery with her
5. Britta has a lot of friends who \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. live near her  
B. work with her  
C. are still in England

*IV. Listen to a passage and fill in the blanks with correct words/phrases.*

#### **Life Is Good**

I am happy. I have many (1) \_\_\_\_\_. I have a large family. I have four brothers and four sisters. I am in the middle. Four brothers are older than me. Four sisters are younger than me. I go to school. I am in the sixth grade. I like my teachers. My teachers like me. I have friends in every class. My favorite class is history. I like to read about (2) \_\_\_\_\_. History is a story about our past. Soon we will all be history. Then kids in school will read about us. I hope they like our stories. My best friend is Bobby. Bobby and I do many things together. We (3) \_\_\_\_\_ together. We play (4) \_\_\_\_\_ together. We ride our bikes together. I have many other friends. We all go to the mall on weekends. We go to movies. We go to (5) \_\_\_\_\_. We tell jokes. We laugh. We have fun. Life is great!

### LISTENING TEST 4

*Part 1: You will hear FIVE short conversations. You will hear each conversation twice. There is ONE question for each conversation. Listen and put a tick (☑) under the right answer.*

0. What time is it?

06.00	08.00	09.00
A <input type="checkbox"/>	B <input type="checkbox"/>	C <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

1. What was the weather like on Wednesday?

 A <input type="checkbox"/>	 B <input type="checkbox"/>	 C <input type="checkbox"/>
--------------------------------	--------------------------------	--------------------------------

2. How much did Mark's pullover cost?

£14.99	£40.99	£44.99
A <input type="checkbox"/>	B <input type="checkbox"/>	C <input type="checkbox"/>

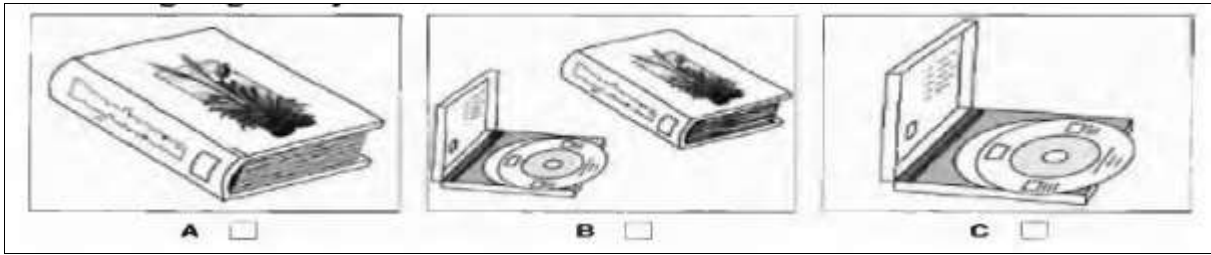
3. What did Raquel buy today?

 A <input type="checkbox"/>	 B <input type="checkbox"/>	 C <input type="checkbox"/>
--------------------------------	--------------------------------	--------------------------------

4. How many students are there at the college?

300	600	750
A <input type="checkbox"/>	B <input type="checkbox"/>	C <input type="checkbox"/>

5. What is David going to buy?



Part 2: Listen to Chloe talking to a man about a sailing holiday. Listen and tick () A, B or C. There is ONE example (0).

0. Chloe wants to go to \_\_\_\_\_ .  
 A. Italy                      B. Sweden                      C. Switzerland
6. How many times has Chloe been sailing before ?  
 A. never                      B. once                      C. twice
7. How much can Chloe spend?  
 A. £300                      B. £380                      C. £450
8. Chloe will go in \_\_\_\_\_ .  
 A. August                      B. September                      C. October
9. Chloe would like to sail on \_\_\_\_\_ .  
 A. a lake                      B. the sea                      C. a river
10. How does Chloe want to pay?  
 A. by cheque                      B. with cash                      C. by credit card

Part 3: You will hear some information about a cinema. Listen and complete questions 1-5. You will hear the information twice.

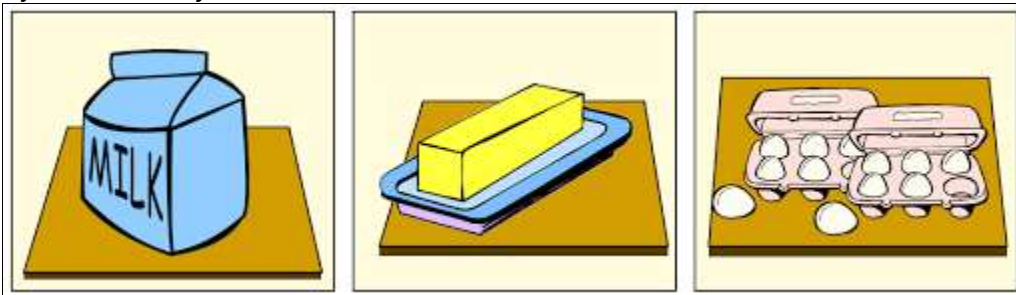
**CINEMA**

Name of cinema:	North London Arts Cinema
Next week's film:	(11).....Meeting
From	Monday to (12).....
Times:	6:45 p.m and (13).....
Student ticket costs:	(14) £.....
Nearest car park:	(15).....Street.

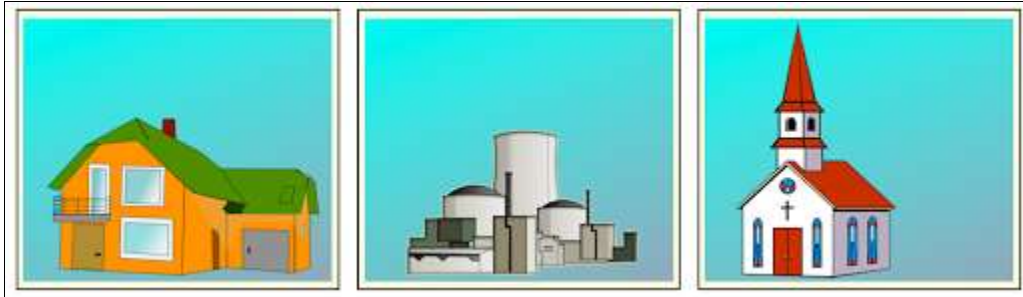
**LISTENING TEST 5**

I. Listen to five short recordings and for each recording you have to choose the best of three pictures (A, B or C).

1 - What do they need to buy?



2 - Where do they do their activity?



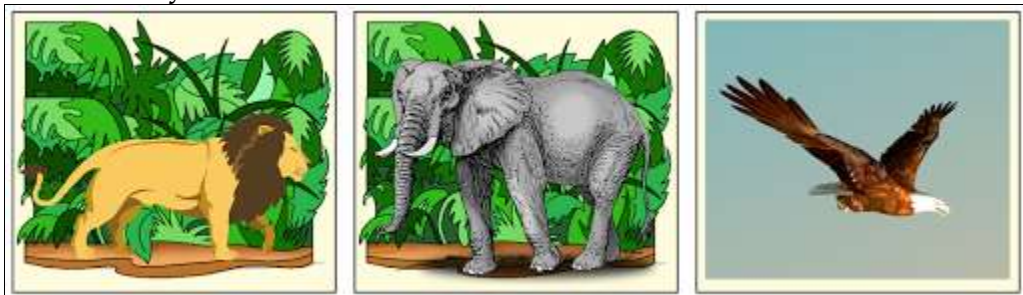
3 - What cannot the speaker borrow?



4 - Which shirt does the speaker prefer?



5 - Which animal were they able to visit?



II. You will hear a girl, Mollie, asking a friend about Hong Kong. Listen and complete questions 1 to 5

### HONG KONG

Airport	:Chek Lap Kok
Transport	:(1)_____
Child ticket	:(2)_____pence
Must visit	:
Museum of	:(3)_____
Open	:(4)_____ am
Bus stop	:(5) _____ Road South.

III. Listen and Fill in the blank with NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS/NUMBERS from the talk.

- The Mid-autumn festival is held on(1)\_\_\_\_\_of the eighth lunar month.
- The Mid-autumn festival is especially joyful to(2)\_\_\_\_\_
- Fruit is prepared in fun(3)\_\_\_\_\_designs on the festival.
- (4)\_\_\_\_\_are the special food on the Mid-autumn festival.

5. The traditional food of the Mid-autumn festival symbolizes Luck, (5) \_\_\_\_\_, Health and Wealth.

*IV. Listen to Diane talking to a friend about a trip to London. Choose the best answer (A, B or C)*

- 1 - Diane went to London yesterday  
A. morning    B. afternoon    C. evening
- 2 - Diane went to London by  
A. car    B. bus    C. underground
- 3 - Diane and her friends ate  
A. Mexican food    B. Chinese food    C. Spanish food
- 4 - Diane says the restaurant was  
A. full    B. expensive    C. quiet
- 5 - During Diane's trip to London  
A. it rained    B. it snowed    C. it was windy

**LISTENING TEST 6**

*I. Listen to the recording and circle the appropriate answer A, B or C.*

1. What did Richard buy at the shop?  
A. envelopes    B. papers    C. dictionary
2. What homework has Richard got tonight?  
A. Math    B. Art    C. Geography
3. Which of these is clean?  
A. Shorts    B. Football shirt    C. Socks
4. How is Richard going to get to the football game?  
A. By car    B. By bike    C. By bus
5. What job does Richard want to do?  
A. Photographer    B. Footballer    C. Pilot

*II. You will hear a man asking about theatre tickets. Listen and complete questions 6 to 10. You will hear the conversation TWICE.*

PLAYHOUSE THEATRE	
EVENING SHOW:	The White Room
Time:	(6) _____
AFTERNOON SHOW:	(7) The School _____
Time:	3 o'clock
Ticket prices:	(8) £ 15 and £ _____
All tickets £6 on:	(9) _____
Car park in :	(10) _____ Street.

*III. You will hear a young woman who has applied for an office job talking about her jobs abroad. For each question, fill in the missing information in the numbered space. You will hear the recording TWICE.*

Name : **Vicky Brownlo**

Age : **22 years old**

Position applied for : Office Manager

Two years' experience abroad:

- \* **First job** - worked for (11)  
- length of time stayed (12)
- \* **Second job** - worked as (13) in a hotel.
- \* **Third job** - worked for (14)

- got up at (15)

**Bank International: worked in foreign department desk.**

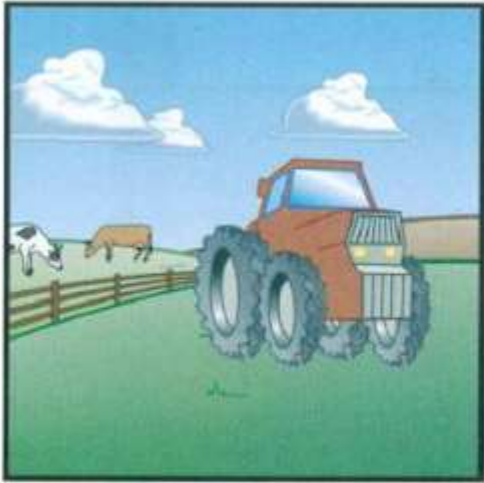

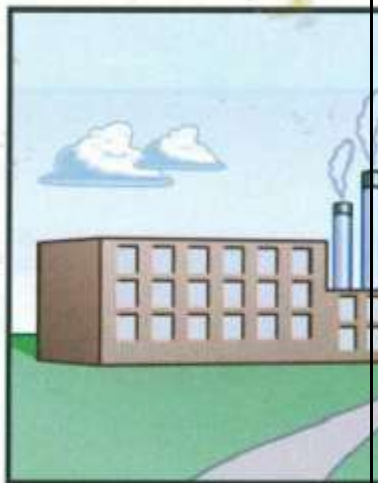
*IV. Two overseas students called Spiros and Hiroko have just finished the first semester of the university course. They are discussing with their English language teacher how they coped with the course. Choose the best word (A, B, C or D) for each space.*

16. One reason why Spiros felt happy about his marketing presentation was that  
A. he was not nervous.    B. his style was good.  
C. the presentation was the best in his group.    D. the presentation was worst in his group.
17. What surprised Hiroko about the other students' presentations?  
A. Their presentations were not interesting.    B. They found their presentations stressful.  
C. They didn't look at the audience enough.    D. The audience did not clap their hands.
18. After she gave her presentation, Hiroko felt  
A. delighted.    B. hungry.    C. embarrassed.    D. dissatisfied.
19. How does Spiros feel about his performance in tutorials?  
A. not very happy.    B. really pleased.    C. fairly confident.    D. lucky.
20. Why can the other students participate so easily in discussions?  
A. They are polite to each other.    B. They agree to take turns in speaking.  
C. They know each other well.    D. They have good preparations.

**LISTENING TEST 7**

*Part I: Listen and tick(v) the box.*

**1. Where does her brother work ?**

		
A <input type="checkbox"/>	B <input type="checkbox"/>	C <input type="checkbox"/>

**2. How does he go to work ?**





A



B



C

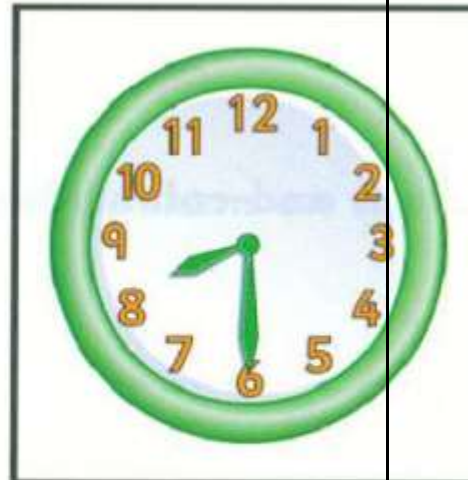
3. When does he start work ?



A



B



C

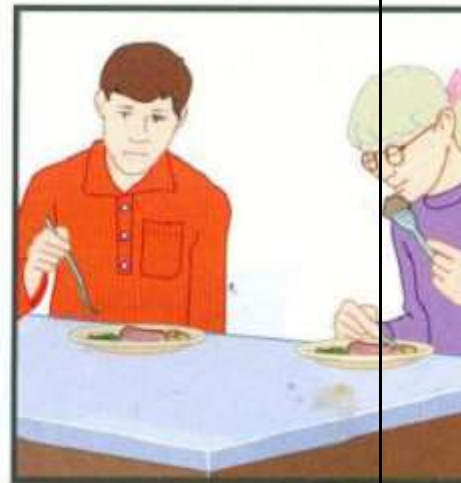
4. What does he do for lunch ?



A



B

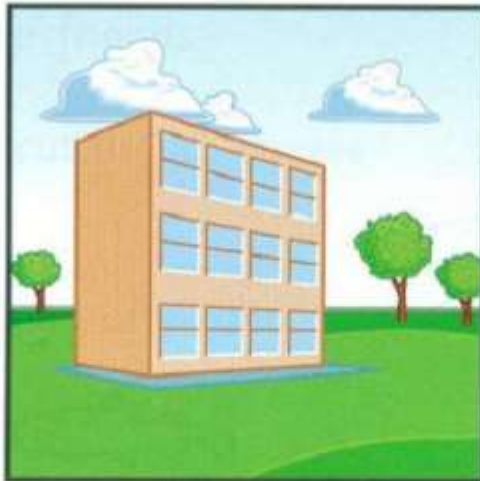


C

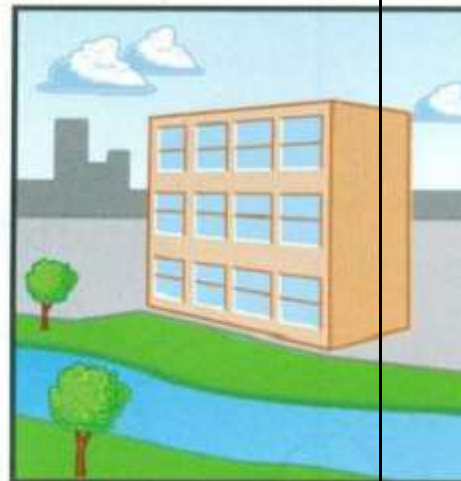
5. What did he do before he started this job ?



A



B



C

**Part II.**

**Part 1. Cindy's father is taking phone for her. Listen and complete the forms.**

**HERE'S WHO CALL**

Name : (1)

Message : Nancy wants (2) to call her as soon as (3) gets back.

Telephone : (4)

Taken by : (5)

**Part 2: Listen again. Circle the correct answer.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ is the person who answers the phone.  
A. Tom    B. Cindy    C. Nancy
2. Cindy can't take the phone because she is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. busy    B. asleep    C. not home
3. \_\_\_\_\_ wants Cindy to call her as soon as she gets back.  
A. Tom    B. Cindy    C. Nancy
4. The caller is Cindy's \_\_\_\_\_.

A. friend    B. teacher    C. boss

**Part III. Listen and fill in the blanks.**

Mr. Doe is at home tonight. He is reading a newspaper while his wife is tidying up the cupboard. Freddy, their son is helping her with the chore.

**Freddy** : Mum, (6) \_\_\_\_\_ should I put this chemical stuff?

**Mrs. Doe** : Well, put it on the (7) \_\_\_\_\_ over there so that the baby cannot reach it.

**Freddy** : How about these (8) \_\_\_\_\_ ?

**Mrs. Doe** : All right. Put them in the locked cupboard in the (9) \_\_\_\_\_ .

**Freddy** : I'll do it right now. Anything else I can help you in the kitchen ?

**Mrs. Doe** : Well, unplug the (10) \_\_\_\_\_ kettle, dear.

**Freddy** : OK, mum.

**LISTENING TEST 8**

**I. Listen to Max asking Tony about a concert. Tick A, B or C. You will hear the conversation twice.**

1. What kind of music do they play?

A. modern rock    B. jazz    C. old rock

2. What time does the show begin?

A. 9.00    B. 10.30    C. 11.00

3. Where is the show?

A. next to the museum    B. next to the music center  
C. in Bell Street

4. How much do the tickets cost for students?

A. £4    B. £8    C. £12

5. What is the Seagulls?

A. a restaurant    B. a farm    C. a cafe'

**II. You will hear some information about a painting contest. Listen and complete questions.**

<b>Wellbrooke School Painting Contest</b>	
<b>Registration: Main Hall</b>	
<b>Sports Hall:</b>	
Age Group	: (1) _____ to _____ year-olds
Display	: photographs of (2) _____ sights
<b>Dining room:</b>	
Age Group	: (3) _____ to _____ year-olds
Price of sculptures	: (4) _____.
Winner announced	: (5) _____ pm.

**III. You will hear a tour guide talking about a day trip. Listen and complete the questions.**

<b>TRIP TO CHESTER</b>	
Coach leaves	: 9.15 a.m
Arrives Chester	: (1) _____
Morning visit	: (2) _____
Price of family ticket	: (3) _____
Lunch in	: (4) _____
Afternoon visit	: (5) _____

**IV. Listen to the recording and choose the best answer to the questions below.**

1. What does the speaker say about apes?

A. Apes can learn even a few words.    B. Apes can join words and make sentences.  
C. Apes can think as we do.    D. Apes think about the past but not the future.

2. Why are men different from animals according to scientists?

- A. Because men can learn.  
 B. Because men can talk in many different languages.  
 C. Because men cannot talk about the past or the future.  
 D. Because men have learnt to use language.
3. Why can men speak according to the scientists?  
 A. Because they have a big brain.  
 B. Because they teach their children.  
 C. Because they know how animals learn to speak.  
 D. Because they can make sounds and noises.
4. How can apes understand some things according to the scientists?  
 A. They can't do as well as men do.      B. They can do better than men do.  
 C. They can do faster than men do.      D. They hardly ever do faster than men.
5. What do men have to develop civilization?  
 A. They have a big brain.      B. They have language.  
 C. They have a lot of children.      D. They have a wonderful view about the future.

### LISTENING TEST 9

*I. Listen to five short conversations. You will hear each conversation twice. For 1-5, put a tick (✓) under the right answer.*

1. When is the party?  
 A. Tuesday      B. Wednesday      C. Thursday      D. Sunday
2. Where are the glasses?  
 A. on the floor      B. on the table      C. On the chair      D. on the bed
3. How much are those shoes?  
 A. £10      B. £16.50      C. £ 15.60      D. £ 16
4. What will the weather like in the afternoon?  
 A. rainy      B. sunny      C. cloudy      D. wet
5. What time will she take the train?  
 A. five fifty      B. a quarter to four      C. five ten      D. five past five

*II. You will hear a man leaving a message. Listen and complete questions. You will hear the information twice.*

#### PHONE MESSAGE

**From** : Bike shop  
**Colour of bike** :(1) \_\_\_\_\_  
**Bike costs** :(2) £ \_\_\_\_\_  
**Shop has also got** :(3) \_\_\_\_\_ bicycle  
**Come tonight before** :(4) \_\_\_\_\_ p.m  
**Address to go to** :(5) \_\_\_\_\_ King Street.

*III. Listen and write in the missing words.*

There were many whales swimming in the (1) \_\_\_\_\_ a long time ago. Then they were hunted and killed by Native American hunters. They hunted whales for food, oil, and other items. Seventy years ago, they were told to stop killing whales because the number of whales was so small. But the Native Americans were (2) \_\_\_\_\_ that they could start hunting whales again afterwards. The (3) \_\_\_\_\_ was that some people did not want the whales to be killed but the Native Americans wanted to do what ancestors had done for many years and to (4) \_\_\_\_\_ their children about their past. They also think that it helps the group to stay together. Moreover, they are still allowed to

hunt a limited number of whales to feed their (5)\_\_\_\_\_.If people kept hunting whales, there would not be these wonderful animals any longer.

*IV. You will hear a program talking about Health Problems Caused by Smoking. For each question, circle the best answer among A, B, C or D*

- Smoking is the leading cause of \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. mumps                      B. cancer                      C. heart disease                      D. sorethroat
- Who is talked in the program this week ?  
A. Barack Obama president                      B. Bush president  
C. Bill Clinton president                      D. Trump president
- What did doctors give the president suggestions so that he can stay healthy ?  
A. stopping smoking                      B. doing more exercise  
C. moderate working                      D. stop working
- How many people are skilled by smoking worldwide every year?  
A. five million people                      B. about five million people  
C. more five million people                      D. nine million people
- Which disease does smoking causes frequently?  
A. circulatory disease.                      B. digestive disease  
C. respiratory disease                      D. cancer disease

### LISTENING TEST 10

*I. You will hear five short conversations (twice for each). There is one question for each conversation. Choose the right answer A, B, C or D.*

- What doesn't the girl like about her photo?  
A. her eyes      B. her nose      C. her dress
- Which is the boy's next lesson?  
A. Math      B. Music      C. Geography
- What will the woman do first?  
A. Paint the walls      B. Clean the floor      C. Clean the window
- What do they need to buy for dinner?  
A. Some pasta      B. Some fish      C. Some tomatoes
- What did Joe get for her birthday?  
A. The CD player      B. The bike      C. The CD

*II. You will hear a man called Ben, from a young people's organization telling a youth group about a course they can do on Saturdays. For each question, fill in the missing information in the numbered space. You will hear the information twice.*

**(NO MORE THAN THREE WORDS)**

Saturday Course	
Name of Ben's organization:	(6) _____
Aim of course: Discovering	(7) _____
Closest course location for this group:	(8) _____
Length of course:	(9) _____ weeks.
Examples of activities we will do:	
- Learn how to climb	
- Cut up wood	
- Make a	(10) _____
- Design a bird house	

III. You will hear a school teacher talking to a group of students about a national poetry competition. For each question, fill in the missing information in the numbered space. You will hear the information twice. (NO MORE THAN THREE WORDS)

POETRY COMPETITION FOR SCHOOL	
The competition for 11-14s is called the	(11) _____ Prize
The topic for this year is:	(12) _____
The title of last year's winning poem was:	(13) _____
This year the prize money available is :	(14) _____ euros
For further help, see the :	(15) _____

IV. You will hear an interview with a singer called Nick Parker who plays in a band called Krispy with his sister Mel. For each question, choose the right answer A, B, C or D.

16. When Nick and Mel were younger, \_\_\_\_\_
- A. they played music in a band with his father.
  - B. like their mother, their father never took them to live concerts.
  - C. their mother discouraged them from playing music professionally.
  - D. they studied music together in a band at school.
17. When Nick and Mel started writing music together, \_\_\_\_\_
- A. they knew how to mix the styles effectively.
  - B. they had the same influence on music.
  - C. they didn't want to work together in a band at first.
  - D. they both loved international music especially bands from Africa.
18. The band Krispy started after \_\_\_\_\_
- A. Nick and Mel began studying music at a music school for the gifted.
  - B. Nick and Mel wanted to join a band after watching them play live.
  - C. Nick and Mel advertised for band members when they gave live concerts.
  - D. They received a request to play music together with two other students.
19. In the band's first year, \_\_\_\_\_
- A. they only wrote and practised playing music at Nick's home.
  - B. the local audiences loved the music they played.
  - C. their parents helped them to sign a music contract.
  - D. they started to tour around the country after two successful songs.
20. What does Nick say about life in the band today?
- A. The older members look after Nick and Mel.
  - B. There's no opportunity for them to relax together.
  - C. Their brother and sister give great care to them.
  - D. Sometimes they stay in one place more than a fortnight to relax.

## CÁC BÀI NGHE NÂNG CAO

### LISTENING TEST 11

Part 1. (Questions 1 – 5) You will hear five students who are studying away from home. They are talking about their accommodation. Choose from the list of letters (A-F) what each speaker says about their accommodation. Use the letters only once. There is one extra letter that you do not need to use.

1. Speaker 1: _____	A There were few chances for me to socialize there.
2. Speaker 2: _____	B I have recommended it to others.
3. Speaker 3: _____	C I should have thought more about being independent.
4. Speaker 4: _____	D I got on well with my roommate despite a few disagreements.
5. Speaker 5: _____	E I made a mistake there at first.
	F I was able to settle into a new area.

**Part 2. (Questions 6 – 10) You will hear an interview with someone who has started a magazine for children. Listen and choose the best answer (A, B, or C).**

6. When talking about her job as a primary school teacher, Kate emphasizes
  - A. how good she was as a teacher.
  - B. how difficult the children could be.
  - C. how much effort the job required.
7. What does Kate say about enthusiasm?
  - A. Children can not maintain it for long.
  - B. Children respond positively to it.
  - C. Children experience it more than adults.
8. Kate says that she learned from her research that children
  - A. don't like texts that have too much serious content.
  - B. don't know some words that she had expected them to know.
  - C. don't want to feel that they are being considered inferior.
9. Kate says that the magazine makes use of the Internet because
  - A. some children prefer using it to learn about subjects.
  - B. some subjects can not be covered fully in the magazine.
  - C. It is used a great deal in connection with some school work.
10. Kate says that one of her aims for the magazine is to
  - A. include subjects that children don't normally read about.
  - B. encourage children to choose what they want as a career.
  - C. create an interest in subjects some children consider boring.

**Part 3.**

**(Questions 11 – 14) Complete the sentences below. Write NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS for each answer.**

11. The coach is comfortable because it is \_\_\_\_\_.
12. After all passengers are abroad, the coach will make its first stop at \_\_\_\_\_ Island.
13. The 'tree top walk' is above a \_\_\_\_\_.
14. Passengers will have a \_\_\_\_\_ with the alpacas before boarding the bus for home.

**(Questions 15 – 20). Complete the table below. Write NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS AND/OR A NUMBER for each answer.**

DREAMTIME TOURS			
Booking at 15. .... or Tel: 07 5562 4402			
16. .... TOUR			
SUNDAY, MONDAY, FRIDAY			
COSTS:		FULL-DAY TOUR 280km	DEPARTS:
Adult	\$37.00	Coolangatta	7:50 a.m.
17. ....	\$33.00	Bruleigh	8:10 a.m.

Child (4 – 14 years)	\$10.00	Surfers Paradise	18. ....
Family (2 Adults, 2 Children)	\$94.00	Labrador	8:45 a.m.
Prices include 19. .... only*			
Free pick-up at your resort, hotel, or motel			
*Not included in the fare: Optional tours, luncheons, morning or afternoon tea (unless otherwise specified), 20. ....			
Meals and refreshments are available at all stops (at your own cost)			

## LISTENING TEST 12

### Part 1. Listen and choose the correct letter, A, B or C.

#### Global Design Competition

1. Students entering the design competition have to
  - A. produce an energy-efficient design.
  - B. adapt an existing energy-saving appliance.
  - C. develop a new user for current technology.
2. John chose a dishwasher because he wanted to make dishwashers.
  - A. more appealing
  - B. more common
  - C. more economical
3. The stone in John's "Rockpool" design is used
  - A. for decoration
  - B. to switch it on
  - C. to stop water escaping
4. In the holding chamber, the carbon dioxide
  - A. changes back to a gas.
  - B. dries the dishes.
  - C. is allowed to cool.
5. At the end of the cleaning process, the carbon dioxide
  - A. is released into the air.
  - B. is disposed of with the waste.
  - C. is collected ready to be re-used.

**Part 2. You will hear five different students talking about their first year at university. Choose from the list (A-F) what each student says about the course they took. Use the letters only once. There is one extra letter which you do not need to use.**

- |  |                    |
|--|--------------------|
| A. I had to face some criticism when I chose a subject to study. | 1. Speaker 1 _____ |
| B. I was able to change an earlier decision about my studies.    | 2. Speaker 2 _____ |
| C. I'm pleased that I'm able to combine studying with a job.     | 3. Speaker 3 _____ |
| D. I had to be careful when choosing which college to study at.  | 4. Speaker 4 _____ |
| E. I had to give up a good job to concentrate on my studies.     | 5. Speaker 5 _____ |
| F. I'm happy to have an active social life while at college.     |                    |

**Part 3. Complete the note below. Write ONE WORD ONLY for each answer.**

#### History of fireworks in Europe

##### 13<sup>th</sup>-16<sup>th</sup> centuries

- Fireworks were introduced from China.
- Their use was mainly to do with:
  - War



- 1. .... ( in plays and festivals)

### 17<sup>th</sup> century

- Various features of 2. .... were shown in fireworks displays.
- Scientists were interested in using ideas from fireworks displays:
  - To make human 3. .... possible
  - To show the formation of 4. ....
- **London:**
  - Scientists were distrustful at first
  - Later, they investigated 5. .... uses of fireworks (e.g. for sailors)
- **St Petersburg:**
  - Fireworks were seen as a method of 6. .... for people
- **Paris:**
  - Displays emphasized the power of the 7. ....
  - Scientists aimed to provide 8. ....

### 18<sup>th</sup> century

- Italian fireworks specialists became influential.
- Sevandoni's fireworks display followed the same patterns as an 9. ....
- The appeal of fireworks extended to the middle classes.
- Some displays demonstrated new scientific discoveries such as 10. ....

## LISTENING TEST 13

### I. Questions 1-10.

Listen to an interview with Mick Davidson, an animal rights activist, and complete the sentences. Write NO MORE THAN THREE WORDS AND/ OR A NUMBER for each answer. Write your answers in the correspondent numbered boxes.

- \* Animal rights protesters destroyed expensive \_\_\_\_\_ (1) at a research laboratory.
- \* Davidson believes that using animals in experiments is a \_\_\_\_\_ (2).
- \* Firms need a lot of money to set up \_\_\_\_\_ (3).
- \* Davidson hasn't got any shoes that are made of \_\_\_\_\_ (4).
- \* Newspapers publish \_\_\_\_\_ (5) that Mick Davidson has written.
- \* Davidson damaged a fur coat in a shop in \_\_\_\_\_ (6).
- \* In one illegal action, Davidson removed video \_\_\_\_\_ (7) from a laboratory, which halted the research.
- \* In the attack on a laboratory, Davidson and his ADG colleagues took thirty \_\_\_\_\_ (8) away with them.
- \* Davidson doesn't support the use of \_\_\_\_\_ (9), except against property.
- \* The ADG has apologized to people that they have harmed without \_\_\_\_\_ (10).

### II. Questions 1-5.

You are going to listen to a conversation with a woman who wants to join an international social club. Listen and complete the form. Write NO MORE THAN THREE WORDS AND/ OR A NUMBER for each answer. Write your answers in the correspondent numbered boxes.

**International Social Club**

**APPLICATION FORM**

Name: Jenny Foo  
Age: 21  
Nationality: (1) \_\_\_\_\_  
Address: (2) \_\_\_\_\_ Road, Bondi  
Mobile phone: (3) \_\_\_\_\_  
Occupation: (4) \_\_\_\_\_  
Free time interests: (5) \_\_\_\_\_

**III. Questions 1-5**

You will hear a radio with a road safety expert on the topic of road rage then choose the best answer. Write your answers in the correspondent numbered boxes.

1. James says that drivers become angry if \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. they think they will be delayed.    B. other drivers threaten them.  
C. other people don't drive as well as they do.    D. they lose control of their car.
2. Revenge rage can lead motorists to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. chase after dangerous drivers.    B. become distracted whilst driving.  
C. deliberately damage another car.    D. take unnecessary risks.
3. Most 'revenge ragers' are \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. young male drivers.    B. drivers of large vehicles.  
C. inexperienced drivers.    D. people who drive little.
4. What, according to James, does the experiment with grass show?  
A. people living in country areas are better drivers.  
B. strong smells help us drive more safely.  
C. our surroundings can affect the way we drive.  
D. regular breaks on a journey keep drivers calm.
5. James thinks the hi-tech car \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. sounds less irritating than a passenger.    B. is not very reliable.  
C. could cause further anger.    D. would be difficult to control.

**LISTENING TEST 14**

Part 1: Complete the form below. Write NO MORE THAN THREE WORDS AND/OR A NUMBER for each answer.

**Cycle tour leader: Applicant enquiry**

**Example:**

**Name:** Margaret .....Smith.....

About the applicant:

- wants a (1) \_\_\_\_\_ job
- will soon start work as a doctor
- has led cycle trips in (2) \_\_\_\_\_
- interested in being a leader of a cycling trip for families
- is currently doing voluntary work with members of a (3) \_\_\_\_\_ club
- available for five months from the 1st of May
- can't eat (4) \_\_\_\_\_

Contact details:

- address: 27 (5) \_\_\_\_\_ Place, Dumfries

- postcode: (6) \_\_\_\_\_

Interview:

- interview at 2.30 pm on Tuesday
- will plan a short (7) \_\_\_\_\_ about being a tour guide

**Part 2: You will hear a radio programme about a bird called a peacock. For questions 8 15, complete the sentences.**

### The Peacock

People say that the peacock's tail looks similar to a (8) \_\_\_\_\_ .

The original home of the blue peacock is in India.

Peacocks were first kept by people as long as (9) \_\_\_\_\_ years ago .

The peacock's (10) \_\_\_\_\_ is long and thin.

The coloured spots on the peacock's tail are known as (11) \_\_\_\_\_ .

The female peahen is mostly (12) \_\_\_\_\_ in colour.

In English, some people are described as being as (13) \_\_\_\_\_ as a peacock.

In the wild, peacocks usually live close to (14) \_\_\_\_\_ in the forest.

Peacocks usually spend time in trees when they want to sleep.

At Peacock Paradise in Malaysia, you can see (15) \_\_\_\_\_ as well as birds.

**Part 3: Listen to the extract of a television travel program, and then decide whether each of the following statements is true or false.**

Statements	T	F
16. A British passport holder has to pay \$10 for a visa at the border of Guatemala.		
17. A new limit of seven days will be imposed on tourist visas to visit Burma.		
18. Tourists arriving in Burma will not be allowed to visit the capital, Rangoon.		
19. At the moment, the only place you can obtain a visa to visit Burma is in Bangkok.		
20. Not all resorts on the Costa del Sol will be offering reductions for children next year.		

**Part 4: You will hear an interview with an architect called Lucy Collett who designs small buildings. Choose the answer (A, B, C or D) which fits best according to what you hear.**

**21.** Lucy enjoyed building the tree-house because it \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. gave her children somewhere to play
- B. presented an interesting design problem
- C. demonstrated the type of work she does
- D. allowed her to fulfil a childhood ambition

**22.** What fascinated Lucy about the historical phone boxes?

- A. their international character
- B. their luxurious interiors
- C. their range of styles
- D. the quality of their construction

**23.** At college, Lucy designed small buildings so that they \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. could be assembled in a shorter time
- B. would comply better with safety rules
- C. would have a wider range of uses

- D. could be built in a simpler style
24. Lucy got the idea for a folding market stall \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. from her parents                      B. from travelling salesmen
- C. while she was at a trade fair      D. while she was on an overseas trip
25. The hotel phone booths which Lucy worked on were \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. developed with mobile phone users in mind
- B. designed for countries with relatively few mobile phones
- C. placed at the entrance to the hotel lobby
- D. intended to be the largest feature of the lobby

### LISTENING TEST 15

#### SECTION I.

Complete the notes below: Write ONE WORD for each answer(Question 1 – 6)

SELF-DRIVE TOURS IN THE USA	
<b>Example:</b>	
Name: Andrea <u>    <b>Brown</b>    </u> a	
Address: 24 <b>(1)</b> _____ Road	
Postcode: BH5 2OP	
Phone: (mobile) 077 8664 3091	
Heard about company from: <b>(2)</b> _____.	
Possible self-drive tours:	
Trip 1:	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Los Angeles customer wants to visit: <b>(3)</b> _____ parks with her children.</li> <li>• Yosemite Park customer wants to stay in a lodge, not a <b>(4)</b> _____.</li> </ul>	
Trip 2:	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Customer wants to see the <b>(5)</b> _____ on the way to Cambria.</li> <li>• At Santa Minoca: not interested in shopping.</li> <li>• At San Diego, wants to spend time on the <b>(6)</b> _____.</li> </ul>	

Complete the notes below(Question 7-10)

Write ONE WORD AND/OR A NUMBER for each answer.

	Number of days	Total distance	Price (per person)	Includes
Trip 1	12 days	<b>(7)</b> _____	£ 525	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• accommodation</li> <li>• car</li> <li>• one <b>(8)</b> _____</li> </ul>
Trip 2	9 days	980 km	<b>(9)</b> £ _____	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• accommodation</li> <li>• car</li> <li>• <b>(10)</b> _____</li> </ul>

#### SECTION II.

Choose the best correct letter A, B, or C (Question 11-15)

#### MANHAM PORT

11. Why did a port originally develop at Manham?
- A. It was safe from enemy attack.
- B. It was convenient for river transport.
- C. It had a good position on the sea coast.
12. What caused Manham's sudden expansion during the Industrial Revolution?
- A. the improvement in mining technologies.

- B. the increase in demand for metals.
  - C. the discovery of tin in the sea.
13. Why did rocks have to be sent away from Manham to be processed?
- A. shortage of fuel
  - B. poor transport systems
  - C. lack of skills among local people
14. What happened when the port declined in the twentieth century?
- A. The workers went away.
  - B. Traditional skills were lost.
  - C. Buildings were used for new purposes.
15. What did the Manham Trust hope to do?
- A. discover the location of the original port
  - B. provide jobs for the unemployed
  - C. rebuild the port complex

**Answer the following questions (Question 16-20)**

16. Where should visitors start their visit?

\_\_\_\_\_

17. Who shouldn't be taken into the mine?

\_\_\_\_\_

18. Where should visitors visit next?

\_\_\_\_\_

19. What is the name of the beautiful old sailing ketch near the school?

\_\_\_\_\_

20. By whom was the ship's wheel dredged out of the silt?

\_\_\_\_\_

**Write NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS for each answer (Question 21-25)**

TOURSIT ATTRACTIONS IN MANHAM		
Place	Features and activities	Advice
Copper mine	especially adapted miners' (21) _____ take visitors into the mountain	the mine is (22) _____ and enclosed – unsuitable for children and animals
Village school	classroom and a special exhibition of (23) _____	a (24) _____ is recommended
'The George' (old sailing ship)	the ship's wheel (was lost but has now been restored)	children shouldn't use the (25) _____

**LISTENING TEST 16**

**Question 1: Complete the notes below by writing NO MORE THAN THREE WORDS in the spaces provided.**

CAR INSURANCE	
Example	Answer
Name:	Patrick Jones
Address:	(1)....., Greendale
Contact number:	730453

Occupation: (2) .....

Size of car engine: 1200cc

Type of car:

Manufacturer: Hewton

Model: Sable

Year: 1997

Previous insurance company:

Any insurance claims in the last five

years?

(3) .....

Yes

No

If yes, give brief details:

Car was (4) .....in 1999

Name(s) of other driver(s):

Uses of car: - social

Simon (5) .....

- traveling to work

Relationship to main driver:

(6) .....

Start date: 31 January

Recommended Insurance arrangement

Name of company: (7) .....

Annual cost: \$450

**Question 2: You will hear a photographer called Ian Gerrard talking about his career. For question 1 – 8, complete the sentences with a word or short phrase.**

### Ian Gerrard – photographer

The subject that Ian studied at university was (1)\_\_\_\_\_.

Ian did a presentation on (2)\_\_\_\_\_as part of his final year.

Ian worked for a (3)\_\_\_\_\_in the USA for a year after leaving university.

When he travelled around the USA, Ian choose (4) \_\_\_\_\_as the theme for his photographs.

Ian says that (5)\_\_\_\_\_in the season when he takes the best photographs.

Ian says he was surprised by how few photographers specialize in shots of

(6)\_\_\_\_\_communities.

The title of Ian's book is (7)\_\_\_\_\_

Ian has chosen (8)\_\_\_\_\_as the theme for his next tour.

**Question 3: Indicate whether the following statements are true or false by writing T for true, F for false and (?) if there is insufficient information.**

1. Now some people still take a risk when the police officer is away on Newland Street.

2. The police officer there doesn't get any pay for the work.

3. Officer Springirth is a real man and he is a volunteer there.

4. Officer Springirth helps the police to reduce the crime rate in Chase Village.

5. The police department will put more mannequins on other roads.

**Question 4: Listen to the recording and circle the appropriate letter.**

1. What does Peter want to drink?

A. tea    B. coffee    C. a cold drink

2. What caused Peter problems at the bank?

A. The exchange rate was down.

B. He was late.

C. The computers weren't working.

3. Who did Peter talk to at the bank?

A. an old friend    B. an American man    C. a German man

4. Henry gave Peter a map of

A. the city.    B. the bus routes.    C. the train system.

5. What do Peter and Sally decide to order?

A. food and drinks    B. just food    C. just drinks

### LISTENING TEST 17

**I. Listen and choose the correct letter A, B, or C. You are going to listen to the recording twice.** 1. 1. What does the charity *Forward thinking* do?

A. It funds and art exhibitions in hospitals.

B. It produces affordable materials for art therapy.

C. It encourages the use of arts projects in healthcare.

2. What benefit of *Forward thinking's* work does Jasmine mention?

A. People avoid going to hospital.

B. Patients require fewer drugs.

C. Medical students do better in tests.

3. When did the organization become known as *Forward thinking*?

A. 1986    B. in the 1990's    C. 2005

4. Where does *Forward thinking* operate?

A. within Clifton city

B. in all parts of London

C. in several towns and villages near Clifton

5. Jasmine explains that the Colvin Centre is

A. a school for people with health problems.

B. a venue for a range of different activities.

C. a building which needs repairing.

**II. Listen and mark each of the following statements TRUE (T) or FALSE (F). You are going to listen to the recording twice.**

6. Stan Leach is a member of a sport club specializing in adventure sports

7. Walking is the most popular outdoors activity in Britain

8. Climbing is a terrifying sport even when you are experienced.

9. Stan went on a day- climb on his own in Scotland.

10. You do not need to pay a huge amount of money if you want to take up mountain biking.

**III. Complete the notes below. Write ONE WORD for each answer. You are going to listen to the recording twice.**

Questions 11-15:

#### Manufacturing in the English Midlands

- In the eighteenth century, the (11) \_\_\_\_\_ still determined how most people made a living
- In the ground were minerals which supported the many (12) \_\_\_\_\_ of the region.
- Since the late sixteenth century the French settlers had made (13) \_\_\_\_\_.

- In Cheshire (14) \_\_\_\_\_ was mined and transported on the river Mersey.
- Potters worked in a few (15) \_\_\_\_\_ situated on the small hills of the North Staffordshire.

**Questions 16-20:**

<b>Pottery notes</b>	
<b>Earthenware</b>	
<i>Advantages:</i>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• potters used (16) _____ clay</li> <li>• saved money on (17) _____</li> </ul>	
<i>Disadvantages:</i>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• needed two firings in the kiln to be (18) _____</li> <li>• fragile led to high (19) _____ during manufacturing</li> </ul>	
<b>Stoneware</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• more expensive but better.</li> <li>• made from a (20) _____ of clay and flint</li> </ul>	

**LISTENING TEST 18**

**Part 1. In this part, you will hear a radio interview with a ghost hunter called Carlene Belfort. For questions 1-5, choose the best answer. You should listen to the audio twice**

- How did Carlene become a ghost hunter?
  - she wanted to contact her dead grandmother
  - she grew up in a haunted house
  - her parents encouraged her
- What, according to Carlene, do ghost hunters need most?
  - a special gift
  - equipment
  - an adventurous mind
- Who does Carlene mostly work for?
  - people who want reassurance
  - people who want to contact loved ones
  - people who want to find a ghost
- How does Carlene detect when ghosts are present?
  - She feels cold.
  - She gets evidence from her equipment.
  - She feels them touching her hair.
- What does Carlene think about people who don't believe her?
  - She doesn't understand why they think that.
  - She thinks they don't have enough evidence.
  - She wants them to experience it for themselves.

**Part 2. You will listen to a piece of news about cycling. For questions 1-5, decide whether the statements are true or false.**

- Mr Jones is travelling on his own. True / False
- Mr Jones only stays in hotels. True / False
- Edward Genochio completed a 41.000km trip to China and back. True / False
- Cycling is becoming more popular in the UK. True / False



5. Boris Johnson cycles to show people that he cares about the environment True /

False

**Part 3. You will hear the head teacher of a school talking to a group of parents about an international student exchange programme. Complete the table below. Write NO MORE THAN THREE WORD for each answer.**

#### INTERNATIONAL EXCHANGE PROGRAMME

- The school's exchange programme is called 1. \_\_\_\_\_
- A return visit is then arranged 2. \_\_\_\_\_ later
- Children first get to know their exchange partners by taking part in a 3. \_\_\_\_\_ scheme.
- The programme is not only intended for students who enjoy using 4. \_\_\_\_\_
- The two countries most often visited on the programme are 5. \_\_\_\_\_
- Some students suffer from problems such as homesickness and 6. \_\_\_\_\_
- To help students who have problems, a qualified 7. \_\_\_\_\_ is always available.
- Local visits are described as being 8. \_\_\_\_\_ and also 9. \_\_\_\_\_
- Students enjoy visiting 10. \_\_\_\_\_ parks most of all.

#### LISTENING TEST 19

**Part 1: Listen carefully to the short conversation and question in the recording and then choose the best answer to the question.**

1. WHERE DOES THIS CONVERSATION PROBABLY TAKE PLACE?

- A. In a photograph studio.
- B. In a biology.
- C. In an office.
- D. In the library.

2. WHO IS THE MAN?

- A. He's a pilot.
- B. He's a flight attendant.
- C. He's a member of the ground crew.
- D. He works clearing land.

3. WHAT WILL THE MAN PROBABLY DO?

- A. Wash the dishes immediately.
- B. Use as many dishes as possible.
- C. Wash the dishes for as long as possible.
- D. Wait until later to clean up.

4. WHERE DOES THIS CONVERSATION PROBABLY TAKE PLACE?

- A. In a bank.
- B. In a restaurant.
- C. At a service station.
- D. In a beauty salon.

5. WHO IS THE MAN?

- A. A salesclerk in a shoe store.
- B. A shoe repairperson.
- C. A party caterer.
- D. A salesclerk in a fixtures department.

**Part 2: Listen and decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).**

## New inventions

		True	False
1.	Wing-suits are getting cheaper.		
2.	Gabriele Diamanti's water distiller is powered by the sun.		
3.	The "enable talk gloves" help people to use sign language in really cold conditions.		
4.	James Cameron invented a new underwater camera.		
5.	The last invention is a way of producing clouds indoors.		

### Part 3: Listen and fill in the missing information.

1. Some of you are probably fantastic at studying, really organized and \_\_\_\_\_.
2. It's a good idea to have some kind of plan or \_\_\_\_\_.
3. If you're studying for an important exam, it's important to think \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Make sure the place where you're going to study is comfortable, with no distracting \_\_\_\_\_.
5. If you have to work near a TV, you might have to use \_\_\_\_\_ to drown out the sound of the TV.
6. While you're studying, you should \_\_\_\_\_ the internet, text message, Facebook, etc.
7. You should plan your studying and take regular \_\_\_\_\_.
8. It is better to write notes, so your mind is \_\_\_\_\_ the information more.
9. Mind maps seem to work in the same way the \_\_\_\_\_ works.
10. Which study method you choose all depends on your personal \_\_\_\_\_.

## LISTENING TEST 20

### PART 1.

**You are going to listen a journalist called Max Wilson talking about a book about luck in sport by Matthew Syed. Listen to the whole interview and choose the best answer A, B, or C.**

1. Max says that top sportspeople usually believe their success is due to
  - A. good fortune
  - B. hard work
  - C. natural skill
2. According to Max, the examples of recent sporting achievements prove
  - A. that people in general have become stronger and fitter
  - B. that standards are getting higher
  - C. that technology is responsible for improved performance
3. In the book Matthew Syed says he had a greater chance of success because of
  - A. his parents' love of table tennis.
  - B. his competitive brother.
  - C. his own ambition.
4. That advantage is mentioned of the Omega Club when Matthew joined?
  - A. It was open all the time.
  - B. It had a lot of good players.
  - C. It had great facilities.
5. Max says that a ten-year investigation has shown that lucky people
  - A. believe they will succeed.
  - B. look for good opportunities.
  - C. depend less on talent.

## PART 2.

Listen to a nutritionist called Penny Flack talking about the effects of health and diet in some countries around the world. Are these statements True (T) or False (F)?

### EATING FOR HEALTH

1. A quarter of Europeans and Americans are now said to be obese.
2. American politicians have been discussing how to tackle the causes and consequences of obesity.
3. High-fat cheese and meat is causing the French to become obese.
4. Heart disease is becoming more common in Japan and Greenland.
5. Scientists have discovered that a number of spices used in Indian cooking can improve brain health.

## PART 3.

Listen to a talk on insomnia – the inability to sleep properly. Complete the following notes on the talk about insomnia. Write NO MORE THAN TWO WORDS AND/OR A NUMBER for each answer.

### • CAUSES

People may have trouble falling asleep due to worries about exams or a (1) \_\_\_\_\_

It can be due to (2) \_\_\_\_\_ factors: noise, light, no privacy.

It can be due to occupational factors: working irregular hours, overworking, too much (3) \_\_\_\_\_, high stress.

### • SOLUTIONS

In situations where the patient is suffering from illness and physical discomfort, a doctor may give them (4) \_\_\_\_\_ or (5) \_\_\_\_\_

(6) \_\_\_\_\_ before going to bed.

Watch your diet. Don't eat a large meal in the evening. Avoid alcohol, cola and coffee.

Drink herbal tea (e.g. camomile) or (7) \_\_\_\_\_

Don't take naps during (8) \_\_\_\_\_

Take a (9) \_\_\_\_\_ before bed or after exercise.

Cut down on (10) \_\_\_\_\_ in the evening.